HP P63x0/P65x0 Enterprise Virtual Array User Guide

Abstract

This document describes the hardware and general operation of the P63x0/P65x0 EVA.

HP Part Number: 5697-2486
Published: September 2013
Edition: 5

Warranty

To obtain a copy of the warranty for this product, see the warranty information website:

http://www.hp.com/go/storagewarranty

Acknowledgments

Microsoft® and Windows® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Java® and Oracle® are registered U.S. trademark of Oracle Corporation or its affiliates.

Intel® and Itanium® are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Contents

1 P63x0/P65x0 EVA hardware

The P63x0/P65x0 EVA contains the following components:

- EVA controller enclosure — Contains HSV controllers, power supplies, cache batteries, and fans. Available in FC and iSCSI options

  NOTE: Compared to older models, the HP P6350 and P6550 employ newer batteries and a performance enhanced management module. They require XCS Version 11000000 or later on the P6350 and P6550 and HP P6000 Command View Version 10.1 or later on the management module. The P6300 and P6350 use the HSV340 controller while the P6500 and P6550 use the HSV360 controller.

- SAS disk enclosure — Contains disk drives, power supplies, fans, midplane, and I/O modules.
- Y-cables — Provides dual-port connectivity to the EVA controller.
- Rack — Several free standing racks are available.

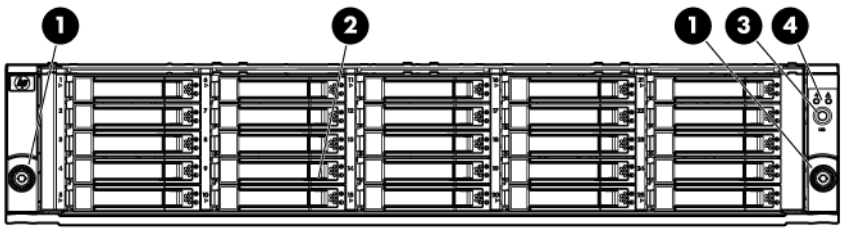
SAS disk enclosures

6 Gb SAS disk enclosures are available in two models:

- Small Form Factor (SFF): Supports 25 SFF (2.5 inch) disk drives
- Large Form Factor (LFF): Supports 12 LFF (3.5 inch) disk drives
- The SFF model is M6625; the LFF model is M6612.

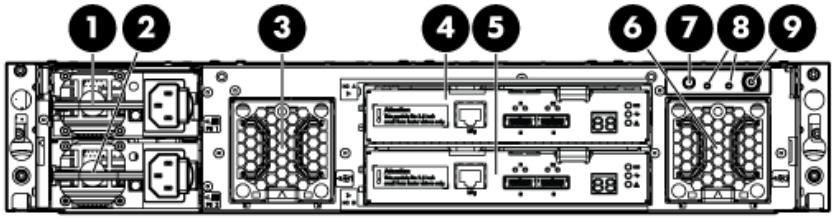
Small Form Factor disk enclosure chassis

Front view



1. Rack-mounting thumbscrew
2. Disk drive in bay 9
3. UID push button and LED
4. Enclosure status LEDs

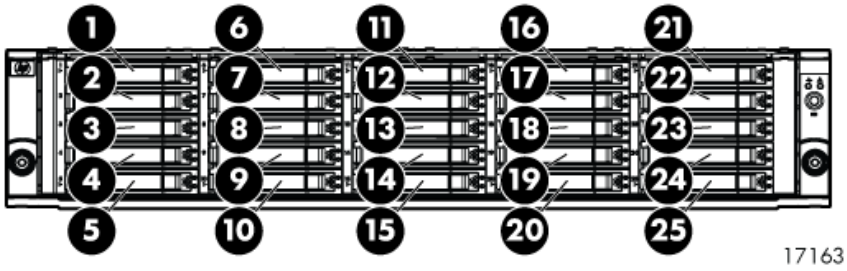
Rear view



1. Power supply 1
2. Power supply 2
3. Fan 1
4. I/O module A
5. I/O module B
6. Fan 2
7. UID push button and LED
8. Enclosure status LEDs
9. Power push button and LED

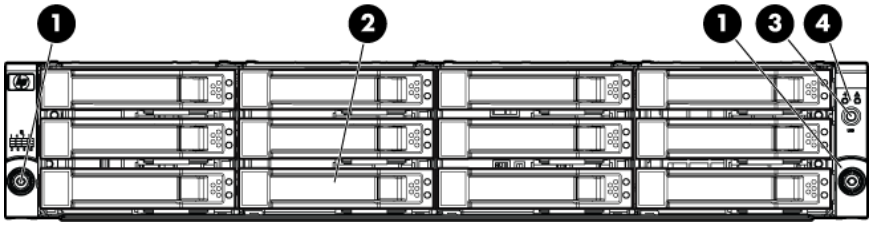
Drive bay numbering

Disk drives mount in bays on the front of the enclosure. Bays are numbered sequentially from top to bottom and left to right. Bay numbers are indicated on the left side of each drive bay.



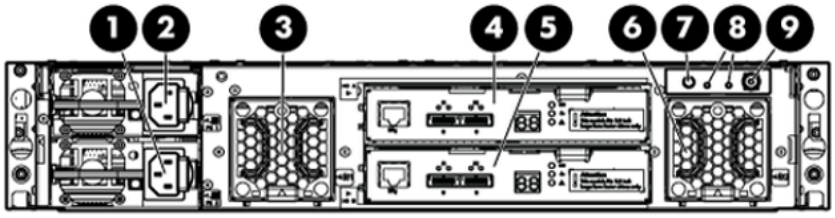
Large Form Factor disk enclosure chassis

Front view



1. Rack-mounting thumbscrew
2. Disk drive in bay 6
3. UID push button and LED
4. Enclosure status LEDs

Rear view

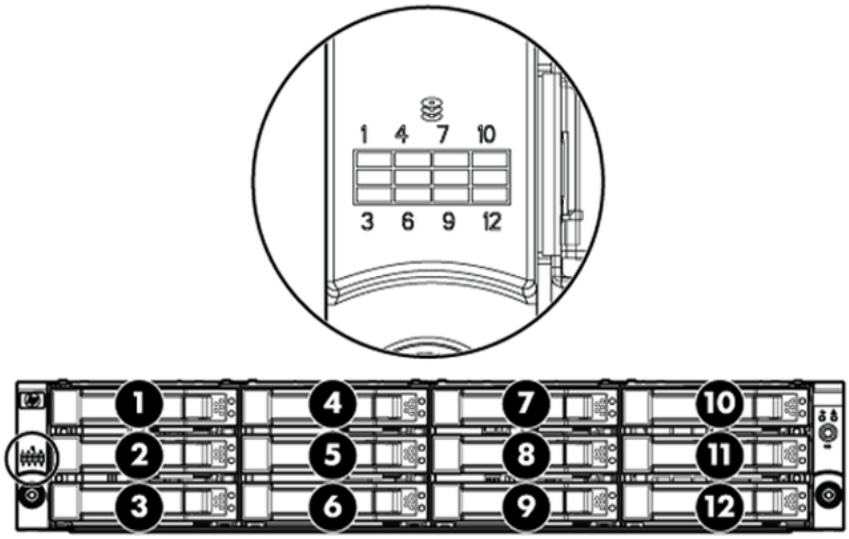


17149

1. Power supply 1
2. Power supply 2
3. Fan 1
4. I/O module A
5. I/O module B
6. Fan 2
7. UID push button and LED
8. Enclosure status LEDs
9. Power push button and LED

Drive bay numbering

Disk drives mount in bays on the front of the enclosure. Bays are numbered sequentially from top to bottom and left to right. A drive-bay legend is included on the left bezel.



17158

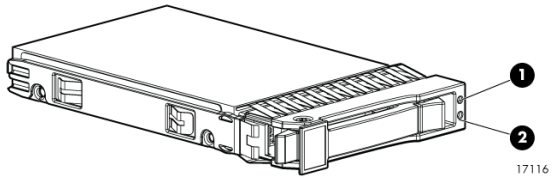
Disk drives

Disk drives are hot-pluggable. A variety of disk drive models are supported for use.

Disk drive LEDs

Two LEDs indicate drive status.

NOTE: The following image shows a Small Form Factor (SFF) disk drive. LED patterns are the same for SFF and LFF disk drives.



LED	LED color	LED status	Description
1. Locate/Fault	Blue	Slow blinking (0.5 Hz)	Locate drive
	Amber	Solid	Drive fault
2. Status	Green	Blinking (1 Hz)	Drive is spinning up or down and is not ready
		Fast blinking (4 Hz)	Drive activity
		Solid	Ready for activity

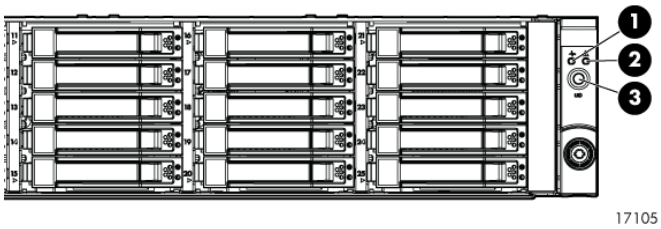
Disk drive blanks

To maintain the proper enclosure air flow, a disk drive or a disk drive blank must be installed in each drive bay. The disk drive blank maintains proper airflow within the disk enclosure.

Front status and UID module

The front status and UID module includes status LEDs and a unit identification (UID) button.

Front UID module LEDs



LED	LED icon	LED color	LED status	Description
1. Health		Green	Off	No power
			Blinking	Enclosure is starting up and not ready, performing POST
			Solid	Normal, power is on
2. Fault	⚠	Amber	Off	Normal, no fault conditions
			Blinking	A fault of lesser importance was detected in the enclosure chassis or modules
			Solid	A fault of greater importance was detected in the enclosure chassis or modules
3. UID	UID	Blue	Off	Not being identified or power is off
			Blinking	Unit is being identified from the management utility
			Solid	Unit is being identified from the UID button being pushed

Unit identification (UID) button

The unit identification (UID) button helps locate an enclosure and its components. When the UID button is activated, the UID on the front and rear of the enclosure are illuminated.

NOTE: A remote session from the management utility can also illuminate the UID.

- *To turn on the UID light,* press the UID button. The UID light on the front and the rear of the enclosure will illuminate solid blue. (The UID on cascaded storage enclosures are not illuminated.)
- *To turn off an illuminated UID light,* press the UID button. The UID light on the front and the rear of the enclosure will turn off.

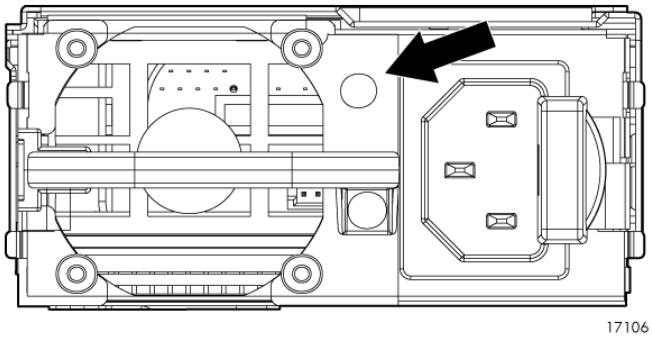
Power supply module

Two power supplies provide the necessary operating voltages to all controller enclosure components. If one power supply fails, the remaining power supply is capable of operating the enclosure. (Replace any failed component as soon as possible.)

NOTE: If one of the two power supply modules fails, it can be hot-replaced.

Power supply LED

One LED provides module status information.



LED status	Description
Off	No power
On	Normal, no fault conditions

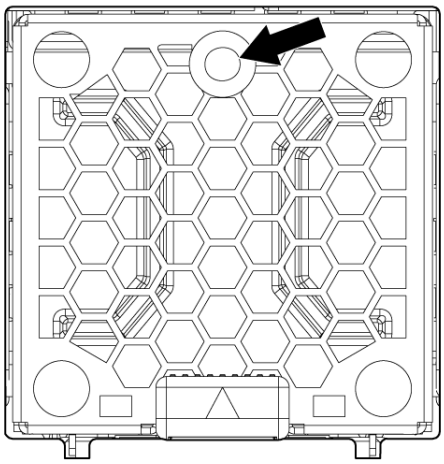
Fan module

Fan modules provide cooling necessary to maintain proper operating temperature within the disk enclosure. If one fan fails, the remaining fan is capable of cooling the enclosure. (Replace any failed component as soon as possible.)

NOTE: If one of the two fan modules fail, it can be hot-replaced.

Fan module LED

One bi-color LED provides module status information.

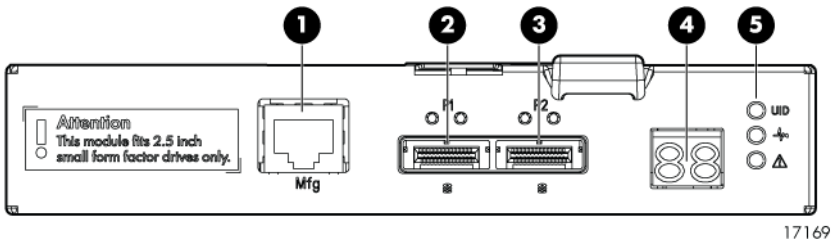


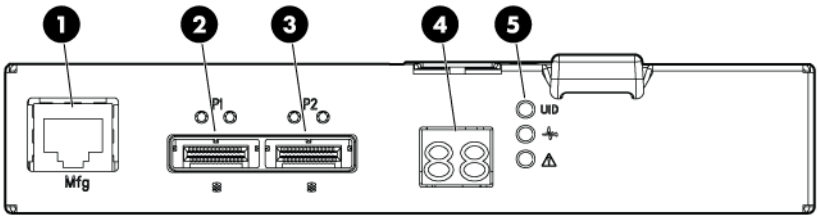
LED color	LED status	Description
Off	Off	No power
Green	Blinking	The module is being identified
	Solid	Normal, no fault conditions
Amber	Blinking	Fault conditions detected
	Solid	Problems detecting the module

I/O module

The I/O module provides the interface between the disk enclosure and the host.

Each I/O module has two ports that can transmit and receive data for bidirectional operation.



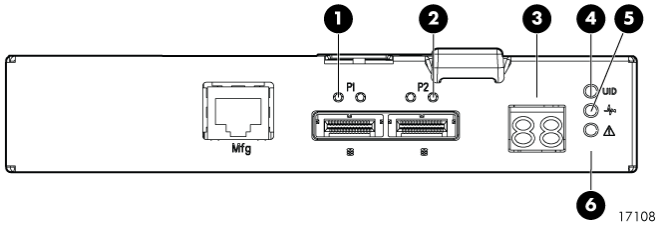


1. Manufacturing diagnostic port
2. SAS Port 1
3. SAS Port 2
4. Double 7–segment display
5. I/O module LEDs

I/O module LEDs

LEDs on the I/O module provide status information about each I/O port and the entire module.

NOTE: The following image illustrates LEDs on the Small Form Factor I/O module.

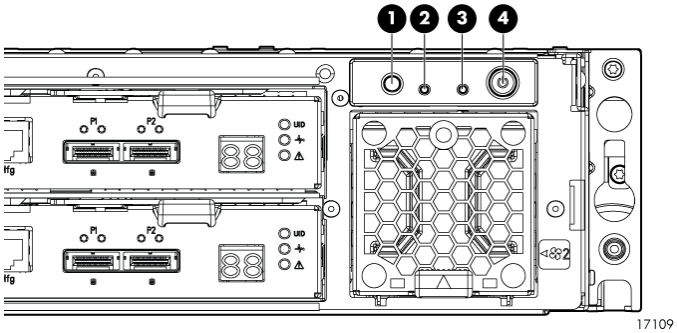


LED	LED icon	LED color	LED status	Description
1. SAS Port Link	n/a	Green	Off	No cable, no power, or port not connected
			Blinking	The port is being identified by an application client
			Solid	Healthy, active link
2. SAS Port Error	n/a	Amber	Off	Normal, no errors detected
			Blinking	Error detected by application client
			Solid	Error, fault conditions detected on the port by the I/O module
3. 7–segment display	n/a	n/a	Off	No cable, no power, enclosure not detected
			Number	The enclosure box number
4. UID	UID	Blue	Off	Not being identified or no power
			Solid	Module is being identified, from the management utility
5. Health		Green	Off	No power or firmware malfunction
			Blinking	Enclosure is starting up and not ready, performing POST
			Solid	Normal, power is on
6. Fault	⚠	Amber	Off	Normal, no fault conditions
			Blinking	A fault of lesser importance
			Solid	A fault of greater importance, I/O failed to start

Rear power and UID module

The rear power and UID module includes status LEDs, a unit identification (UID) button, and the power on/standby button.

Rear power and UID module LEDs



LED	LED icon	LED color	Status	Description
1. UID	UID	Blue	Off	Not being identified or no power
			On	Unit is being identified, either from the UID button being pushed or from the management utility
2. Health		Green	Off	No power
			Blinking	Enclosure is starting up and not ready, performing POST
			Solid	Normal, power is on
3. Fault		Amber	Off	Normal, no fault conditions
			Blinking	A fault of lesser importance
			Solid	A fault of greater importance
4. On/Standby		Green	Solid	Power is on
		Amber	Solid	Standby power

Unit identification (UID) button

The unit identification (UID) button helps locate an enclosure and its components. When the UID button is activated, the UID on the front and rear of the enclosure are illuminated.

NOTE: A remote session from the management utility can also illuminate the UID.

- *To turn on the UID light,* press the UID button. The UID light on the front and the rear of the enclosure will illuminate solid blue. (The UID on cascaded storage enclosures are not illuminated.)
- *To turn off an illuminated UID light,* press the UID button. The UID light on the front and the rear of the enclosure will turn off.

Power on/standby button

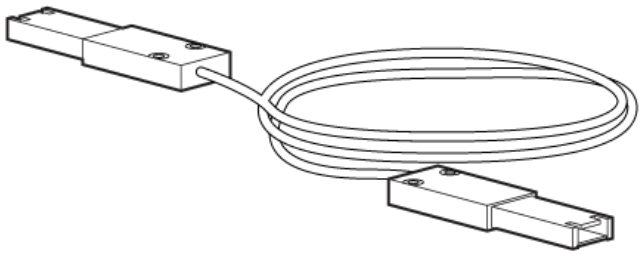
The power on/standby button applies either full or partial power to the enclosure chassis.

- *To initially power on the enclosure,* press and hold the on/standby button for a few seconds, until the LEDs begin to illuminate.
- *To place an enclosure in standby,* press and hold the on standby button for a few seconds, until the on/standby LED changes to amber.

NOTE: System power to the disk enclosure does not completely shut off with the power on/standby button. The standby position removes power from most of the electronics and components, but portions of the power supply and some internal circuitry remain active. To completely remove power from the system, disconnect all power cords from the device.

SAS cables

These disk enclosures use cables with mini-SAS connectors for connections to the controller and cascaded disk enclosures.



Controller enclosure

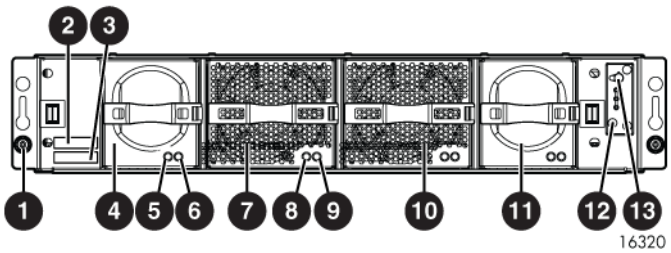
For both the P63x0 EVA and P65x0 EVA, a single enclosure contains a management module and two controllers. Two interconnected controllers ensure that the failure of a controller component does not disable the system. One controller can fully support an entire system until the defective controller, or controller component, is repaired. The controllers have an 8 Gb host port capability. The P63x0 and P65x0 EVA controllers are available in FC, FC-iSCSI, and iSCSI/FCoE versions. The controller models are HSV340 (for the P63x0) and HSV360 (for the P65x0).

Figure 1 (page 22) shows the bezel of the controller enclosure. Figure 2 (page 22) shows the front of the controller enclosure with the bezel removed.

Figure 1 Controller enclosure (front bezel)

1. Enclosure status LEDs
2. Front UID push button

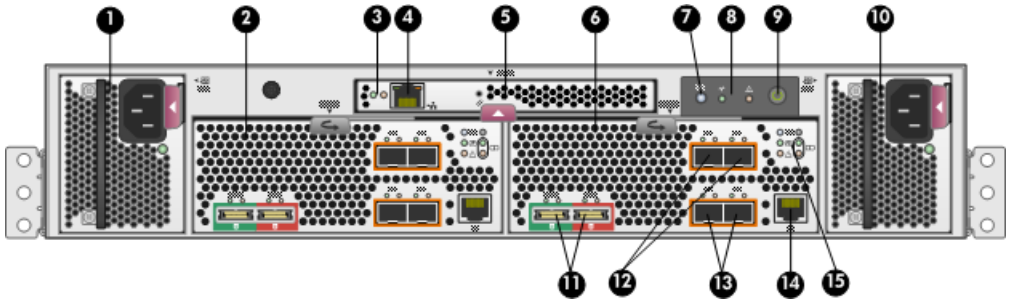
Figure 2 Controller enclosure (front view with bezel removed)



1. Rack-mounting thumbscrew
2. Enclosure product number (PN) and serial number
3. World Wide Number (WWN)
4. Battery 1
5. Battery normal operation LED
6. Battery fault LED
7. Fan 1
8. Fan 1 normal operation LED
9. Fan 1 fault LED
10. Fan 2
11. Battery 2
12. Enclosure status LEDs
13. Front UID push button

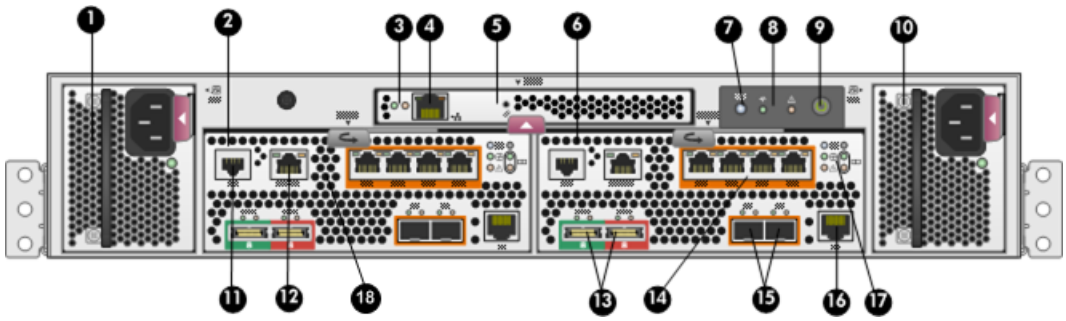
Each P63x0 controller contains two SAS data ports. Each P65x0 controller contains four SAS data ports (made possible using Y-cables—one cable with two outputs). For both the P63x0 and P65x0 EVA, the FC controller adds four 8 Gb FC ports (Figure 3 (page 23)); the FC-iSCSI controller adds two 8 Gb FC ports and four 1 GbE iSCSI ports (Figure 4 (page 23)); and the iSCSI/FCoE controller adds two 8 Gb FC ports and two10 GbE iSCSI/FCoE ports (Figure 5 (page 24)).

Figure 3 P6000 EVA FC controller enclosure (rear view)



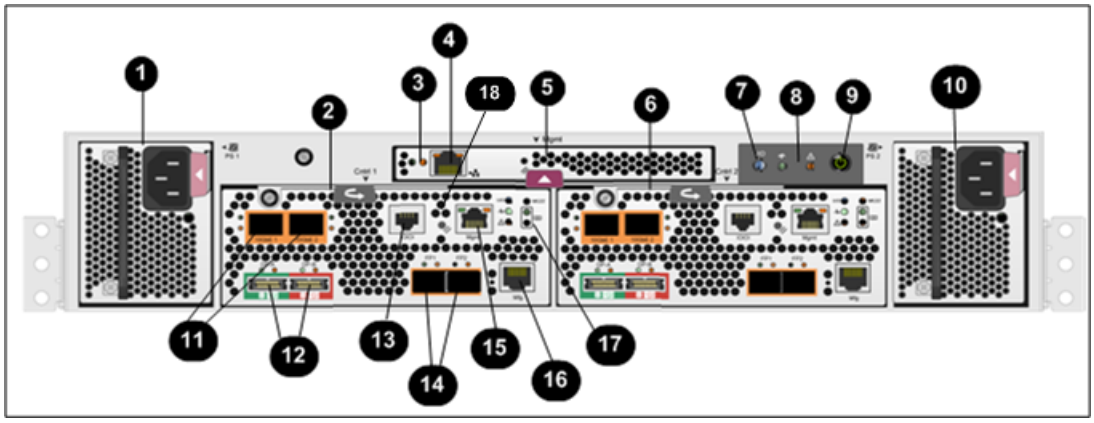
1. Power supply 1
2. Controller 1
3. Management module status LEDs
4. Ethernet port
5. Management module
6. Controller 2
7. Rear UID push button
8. Enclosure status LEDs
9. Enclosure power push button
10. Power supply 2
11. DP-A and DP-B, connection to back end (storage)
12. FP1 and FP2, connection to front end (host or SAN)
13. FP3 and FP4, connection to front end (host or SAN)
14. Manufacturing diagnostic port
15. Controller status and fault LEDs

Figure 4 P6000 EVA FC-iSCSI controller enclosure (rear view)



1. Power supply 1
2. Controller 1
3. Management module status LEDs
4. Ethernet port
5. Management module
6. Controller 2
7. Rear UID push button
8. Enclosure status LEDs
9. Enclosure power push button
10. Power supply 2
11. Serial port
12. SW Management port
13. DP-A and DP-B, connection to back-end (storage)
14. 1GbE ports 1–4
15. FP3 and FP4, connection to front end (host or SAN)
16. Manufacturing diagnostic port
17. Controller status and fault LEDs
18. iSCSI module recessed maintenance button

Figure 5 P6000 EVA iSCSI/FCoE controller enclosure (rear view)



1. Power supply 1
2. Controller 1
3. Management module status LEDs
4. Ethernet port
5. Management module
6. Controller 2
7. Rear UID push button
8. Enclosure status LEDs
9. Enclosure power push button
10. Power supply 2
11. 10GbE ports 1–2
12. DP-A and DP-B, connection to back-end (storage)
13. Serial port
14. FP3 and FP4, connection to front end (host or SAN)
15. SW Management port
16. Manufacturing diagnostic port
17. Controller status and fault LEDs
18. iSCSI/FCoE recessed maintenance button

NOTE: The only difference between the P63x0 and P65x0 controllers is the number indicated below the SAS data ports (`DP-A` and `DP-B`). On the P63x0, `1` is displayed (Figure 6 (page 24)). On the P65x0, `1 | 2`is displayed (Figure 7 (page 24)).

Figure 6 P63x0 data port numbering

Figure 7 P65x0 data port numbering

Controller status indicators

The status indicators display the operational status of the controller. The function of each indicator is described in Table 3 (page 25). During initial setup, the status indicators might not be fully operational.

Each port on the rear of the controller has an associated status indicator located directly above it. Table 1 (page 25) lists the port and its status description for the HSV340. Table 2 (page 25) lists the port and its status descriptions for the HSV340 FC-iSCSI.

Table 1 HSV340/360 controller port status indicators

Port	Description
Fibre Channel host ports	• Green — Normal operation • Amber — No signal detected • Off — No SFP[1] detected or the Direct Connect HP P6000 Control Panel setting is incorrect
Fibre Channel device ports	• Green — Normal operation • Amber — No signal detected or the controller has failed the port • Off — No SFP[1] detected

[1] On copper Fibre Channel cables, the SFP is integrated into the cable connector.

Table 2 HSV340/360 FC-iSCSI controller port status indicators

Port	Description
Fibre Channel switch ports	• Green on — Normal operation or loopback port • Green flashing — Normal online I/O activity • Amber on — Faulted port, disabled due to diagnostics or `Portdisable` command • Amber flashing — Port with no synchronization, receiving light but not yet online or segmented port • Off — No SFP[1], no cable, no license detected.
Fibre Channel device ports	• Green — Normal operation • Amber — No signal detected or the controller has failed the port • Off — No SFP[1] detected

[1] On copper Fibre Channel cables, the SFP is integrated into the cable connector.

Controller status LEDs

Figure 8 (page 25) shows the location of the controller status LEDs; Table 3 (page 25) describes them.

NOTE: Figure 8 (page 25) shows an FC-iSCSI controller, however the LEDs for the FC, FC-iSCSI, and iSCSI/FCoE controllers are identical, unless specifically noted.

Figure 8 Controller status LEDs

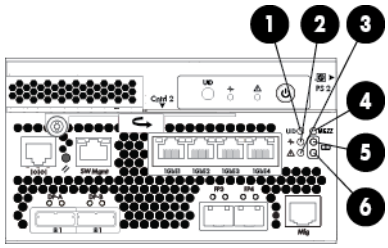


Table 3 Controller status LEDs

Item	LED	Indication
1	UID	Blue LED identifies a specific controller within the enclosure or identifies the FC-iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module within the controller.
2		Green LED indicates controller health. LED flashes green during boot and becomes solid green after boot.

Table 3 Controller status LEDs *(continued)*

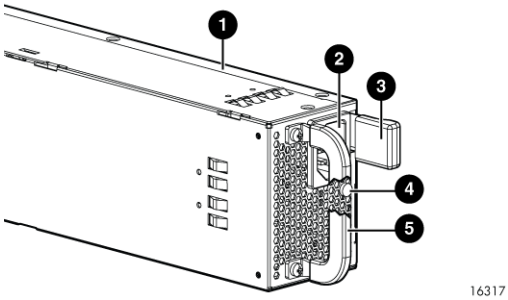
Item	LED	Indication
3	⚠	Flashing amber indicates a controller termination, or the system is inoperative and attention is required. Solid amber indicates that the controller cannot reboot, and that the controller should be replaced. If both the solid amber and solid blue LEDs are lit, the controller has completed a warm removal procedure, and can be safely swapped.
4	**MEZZ**	Only used on the FC-iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE controllers (not on the FC controller). Amber LED indicates the FC-iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module status that is communicated to the array controller. Slow flashing amber LED indicates an IP address conflict on the management port. Solid amber indicates an FC-iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module critical error, or shutdown.
5		Green LED indicates write-back cache status. Slow flashing green LED indicates standby power. Solid green LED indicates cache is good with normal AC power applied.
6		Amber LED indicates DIMM status. The LED is off when DIMM status is good. Slow flashing amber indicates DIMMs are being powered by battery (during AC power loss). Flashing amber with the chassis powered up indicates a degraded battery. Solid amber with the chassis powered up indicates a failed battery.

Power supply module

Two power supplies provide the necessary operating voltages to all controller enclosure components. If one power supply fails, the remaining power supply is capable of operating the enclosure. (Replace any failed component as soon as possible.)

NOTE: If one of the two power supply modules fails, it can be hot-replaced.

Figure 9 Power supply



1. Power supply
2. AC input connector
3. Latch
4. Status indicator (dual-color: amber and green)
5. Handle

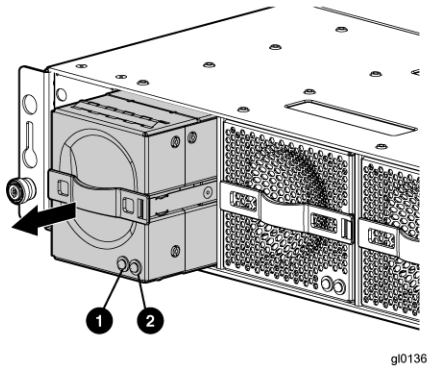
Table 4 Power supply LED status

LED color	Description
Amber	• The power supply is powered up but not providing output power. • The power supply is plugged into a running chassis, but is not receiving AC input power (the fan and LED on the supply receive power from the other power supply in this situation).
Green	Normal, no fault conditions

Battery module

Battery modules provide power to the controllers in the enclosure.

Figure 10 Battery module pulled out



1. Green—Normal operation LED
2. Amber—Fault LED

Each battery module provides power to the controller directly across from it in the enclosure.

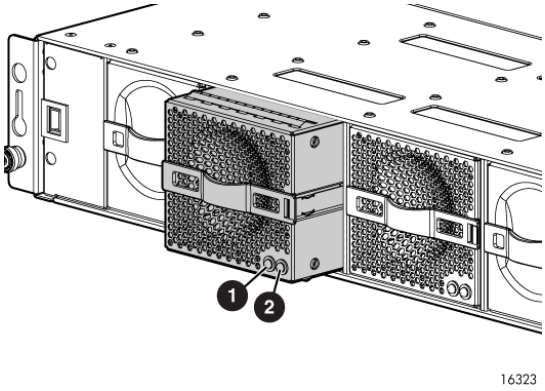
Table 5 Battery status indicators

Status indicator	Fault indicator	Description
On left—Green	Solid green	Normal operation.
	Blinking	Maintenance in progress.
	Off	Amber is on or blinking, or the enclosure is powered down.
On right—Amber	Solid amber	Battery failure; no cache hold-up. Green will be off.
	Blinking amber	Battery degraded; replace soon. Green will be off. (Green and amber are not on simultaneously except for a few seconds after power-up.)

Fan module

Fan modules provide the cooling necessary to maintain the proper operating temperature within the controller enclosure. If one fan fails, the remaining fan is capable of cooling the enclosure.

Figure 11 Fan module pulled out



1. Green—Fan normal operation LED
2. Amber—Fan fault LED

Table 6 Fan status indicators

Status indicator	Fault indicator	Description
On left—Green	Solid green	Normal operation.
	Blinking	Maintenance in progress.
	Off	Amber is on or blinking, or the enclosure is powered down.
On right—Amber	On	Fan failure. Green will be off. (Green and amber are not on simultaneously except for a few seconds after power-up.)

Management module

The HP P6000 Control Panel provides a direct interface to the management module within each controller. From the HP P6000 Control Panel you can display storage system status and configuration information, shut down the storage system, and manage the password. For tasks to perform with the HP P6000 Control Panel, see the *HP P6000 Control Panel online help*.

The HP P6000 Control Panel provides two levels of administrator access and an interface for software updates to the management module. For additional details about the HP P6000 Control Panel, see the *HP P6000 Control Panel online help*.

NOTE: The HP P6350 and P6550 employ a performance-enhanced management module as well as new batteries. This requires HP P6000 Command View 10.1 or later on the management module and XCS 11000000 or later on the P6350 and P6550.

iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE recessed maintenance button

The iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE recessed maintenance button is the only manual user-accessible control for the module. It is used to reset or to recover a module. This maintenance button is a multifunction momentary switch and provides the following functions, each of which causes a reboot that completes in less than one minute:

- Reset the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module and boot the primary image
- Reset the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE MGMT port IP address
- Enable iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE MGMT port DHCP address
- Reset the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module to factory defaults

Reset the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module and boot the primary image

Use a pointed nonmetallic tool to briefly press the maintenance button for a duration of two seconds and release it. The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module responds as follows:

1. The amber MEZZ status LED illuminates once.

   NOTE: Holding the maintenance button for more than two seconds but less than six seconds or until the MEZZ status LED illuminates twice, boots a secondary image, and is not recommended for field use.

2. After approximately two seconds, the power-on self-test begins, and the MEZZ status LED is turned off.
3. When the power-on self test is complete, the MEZZ status LED illuminates and flashes once per second.

Reset iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE MGMT port IP address

Reset and restore the MGMT port IP address to the default of `192.168.0.76` or `192.168.0.82` depending on the controller 1 or 2 position.

NOTE: Setting the IP address by this method is not persistent. To make the change persistent, use the command line interface (CLI).

1. Use a pointed nonmetallic tool to briefly press the maintenance button. Release the button after six seconds and observe six extended flashes of the MEZZ status LED.
2. The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module boots and sets the MGMT port to IP address `192.168.0.76` or `192.168.0.82` depending on the controller 1 or 2 position.

Enable iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE MGMT port DHCP address

Resets the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module and configure the MGMT port to use DHCP to access its IP address. Enabling DHCP by this method is not persistent. To make the change persistent, use the CLI .

1. Use a pointed nonmetallic tool to briefly press the maintenance button. Release the button after seven seconds and observe seven extended flashes of the MEZZ status LED.
2. The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module boots and configures the MGMT port for DHCP.

Reset the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module to factory defaults

This resets the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module and restores it to the factory default configuration, with reset passwords, MGMT port IP address set to either `192.168.0.76` or `192.168.0.82` depending on the controller 1 or 2 position, Disables iSCSI ports with no IP address, erases presentations, and erases discovered initiators and targets).

1. Use a pointed nonmetallic tool to press the maintenance button. Release the button after twenty seconds and observe twenty extended flashes of the MEZZ status LED.
2. The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module boots and is restored to factory defaults.

HSV controller cabling

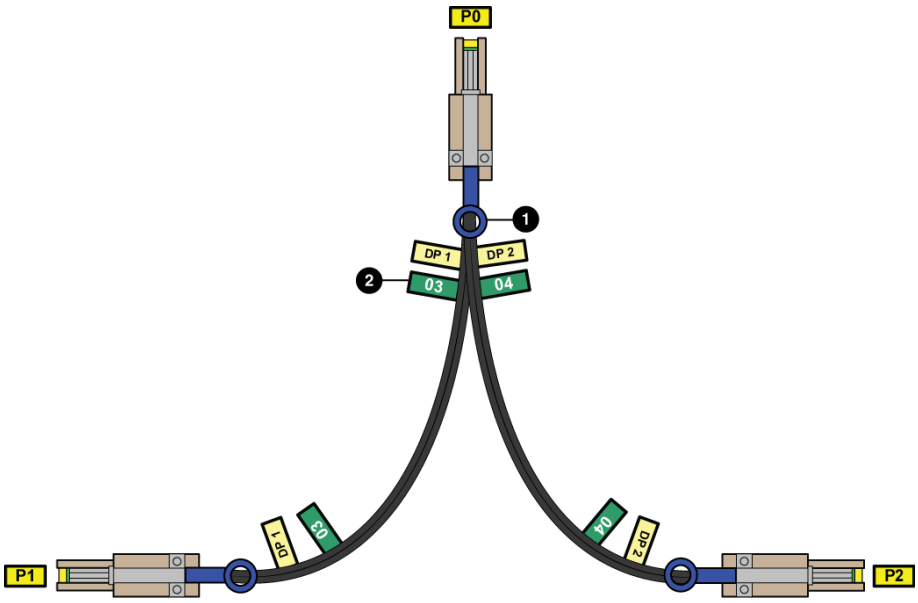
All data cables and power cables attach to the rear of the controller. Adjacent to each data connector is a two-colored link status indicator. Table 1 (page 25) identifies the status conditions presented by these indicators.

NOTE: These indicators do not indicate whether there is communication on the link, only whether the link can transmit and receive data.

The data connections are the interfaces to the disk drive enclosures, the other controller, and the fabric. Fiber optic cables link the controllers to the fabric, and, if an expansion cabinet is part of the configuration, link the expansion cabinet drive enclosures to the loops in the main cabinet.

Y-cables (Figure 12 (page 30)) are used to connect the P6500 EVA and enable each controller data port to act as two ports.

Figure 12 P6500 Y-cable



1. Pull tab (may also be a release bar)
2. Port number label

Storage system racks

All storage system components are mounted in a rack. Each configuration includes one controller enclosure holding both controllers (the controller pair) and the disk enclosures. Each controller pair and all associated disk enclosures form a single storage system.

The rack provides the capability for mounting standard 483 mm (19 in) wide controller and disk enclosures.

NOTE: Racks and rack-mountable components are typically described using "U" measurements. "U" measurements are used to designate panel or enclosure heights. The "U" measurement is a standard of 41mm (1.6 in).

The racks provide the following:

- Unique frame and rail design—Allows fast assembly, easy mounting, and outstanding structural integrity.
- Thermal integrity—Front-to-back natural convection cooling is greatly enhanced by the innovative multi-angled design of the front door.
- Security provisions—The front and rear door are lockable, which prevents unauthorized entry.
- Flexibility—Provides easy access to hardware components for operation monitoring.
- Custom expandability—Several options allow for quick and easy expansion of the racks to create a custom solution.

Rack configurations

The standard rack for the P63x0/P65x0 EVA is the 42U HP 10000 Intelligent Series rack. The P63x0/P65x0 EVA is also supported with 22U, 36U, 42U 5642, and 47U racks. The 42U 5642 is a field-installed option. The 47U rack must be assembled on site because the cabinet height creates shipping difficulties.

For more information on HP rack offerings for the P63x0/P65x0 EVA see:

http://h18004.www1.hp.com/products/servers/proliantstorage/racks/index.html

Power distribution units

AC power is distributed to the rack through a dual Power Distribution Unit (PDU) assembly mounted at the bottom rear of the rack (modular PDU) or on the rack (monitored PDU). The modular PDU may be mounted back-to-back either vertically (AC receptacles facing down and circuit breaker switches facing up) or horizontally (AC receptacles facing front and circuit breaker switches facing rear). For information about PDU support with the P63x0/P65x0 EVA, see the HP P6300/P6500 Enterprise Virtual Arrays QuickSpecs. For details and specifications about specific PDU models, see the HP Power Distribution Units website:

http://h18004.www1.hp.com/products/servers/proliantstorage/power-protection/pdu.html

The standard power configuration for any HP Enterprise Virtual Array rack is the fully redundant configuration. Implementing this configuration requires:

- Two separate circuit breaker-protected, 30-A site power sources with a compatible wall receptacle.
- One dual PDU assembly. Each PDU connects to a different wall receptacle.
- Four to eight (depending on the rack) Power Distribution Modules (PDMs) per rack. All PDMs are located (side by side in pairs) on the left side of the rack. Each set of PDMs connects to a different PDU.
  - Eight PDMs for 42U, 47 U, and 42U 5642 racks
  - Six PDMs for 36U racks
  - Four PDMs for 22U racks
- Each controller enclosure has two power supplies:
  - Controller PS 1 connects to the left PDM in a PDM pair with a black, 66 cm (26 inch) power cord.
  - Controller PS 2 connects to the right PDM in a PDM pair with a gray, 152 cm (60 inch) power cord.

NOTE: Drive enclosures, when purchased separately, include one 50 cm black cable and one 50 cm gray cable.

The configuration provides complete power redundancy and eliminates all single points of failure for both the AC and DC power distribution.

PDU 1

PDU 1connects to AC PDM 1–1 to 1–4.

A PDU 1failure:

- Disables the power distribution circuit
- Removes power from the left side of the PDM pairs
- Disables drive enclosures PS 1
- Disables the controller PS 1

PDU 2

PDU 2connects to AC PDM 2-1 to 2–4.

A PDU 2 failure:

- Disables the power distribution circuit
- Removes power from the right side of the PDM pairs
- Disables drive enclosures PS 2
- Disables the controller PS 2

PDMs

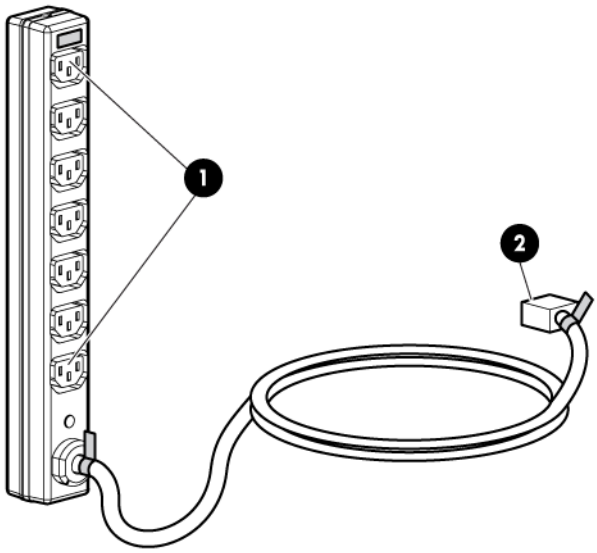
Depending on the rack, there can be up to eight PDMs mounted in the rear of the rack:

- The PDMs on the left side of the PDM pairs connect to PDU 1.
- The PDMs on the right side of the PDM pairs connect to PDU 2.

Each PDM has seven AC receptacles. The PDMs distribute the AC power from the PDUs to the enclosures. Two power sources exist for each controller pair and disk enclosure. If a PDU fails, the system will remain operational.

CAUTION: The AC power distribution within a rack ensures a balanced load to each PDU and reduces the possibility of an overload condition. Changing the cabling to or from a PDM could cause an overload condition. HP supports only the AC power distributions defined in this user guide.

Figure 13 Rack PDM



1. Power receptacles
2. AC power connector

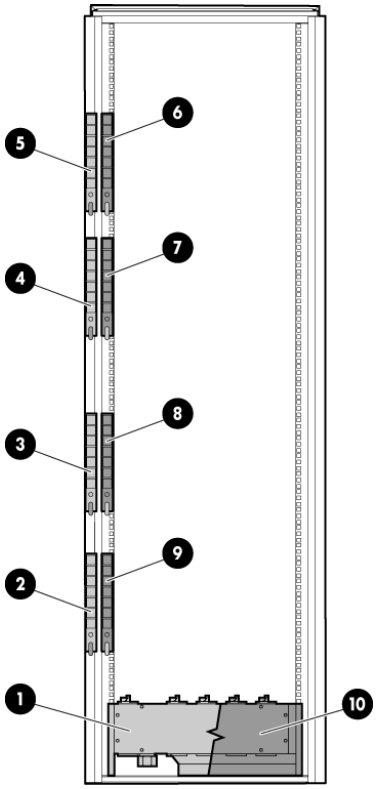
Rack AC power distribution

The power distribution in a rack is the same for all variants. The site AC input voltage is routed to the dual PDU assembly mounted in the bottom rear of the rack. Each PDU distributes AC to a maximum of four PDMs mounted in pairs on the left vertical rail (see Figure 14 (page 33)).

- PDMs 1–1 through 1–4 connect to receptacles A through D on PDU A. Power cords connect these PDMs to the left power supplies on the disk enclosures (disk PS 1) and to the left power supply on the controller enclosure (controller PS 1).
- PDMs 2–1 through 2–4 connect to receptacles A through D on PDU B. Power cords connect these PDMs to the right power supplies on the disk enclosures (disk PS 2) and to the right power supply on the controller enclosure (controller PS 2).

NOTE: The locations of the PDUs and the PDMs are the same in all racks.

Figure 14 Rack AC power distribution



1. PDU 1
2. PDM 1–1
3. PDM 1–2
4. PDM 1–3
5. PDM 1–4
6. PDM 2–1
7. PDM 2–2
8. PDM 2–3
9. PDM 2–4
10. PDU 2

Moving and stabilizing a rack

⚠ **WARNING!** The physical size and weight of the rack requires a minimum of two people to move. If one person tries to move the rack, injury may occur.

To ensure stability of the rack, always push on the lower half of the rack. Be especially careful when moving the rack over any bump (e.g., door sills, ramp edges, carpet edges, or elevator openings). When the rack is moved over a bump, there is a potential for it to tip over.

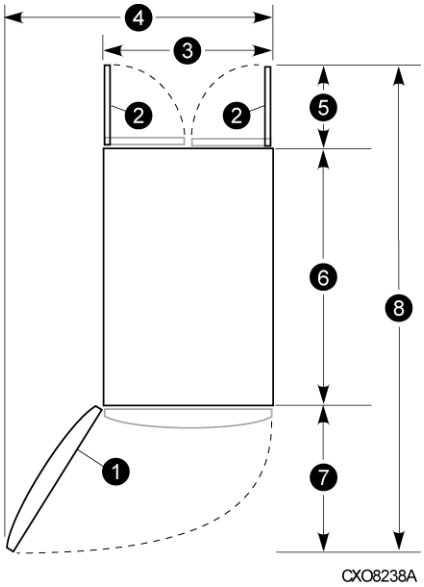
Moving the rack requires a clear, uncarpeted pathway that is at least 80 cm (31.5 in) wide for the 60.3 cm (23.7 in) wide, 42U rack. A vertical clearance of 203.2 cm (80 in) should ensure sufficient clearance for the 200 cm (78.7 in) high, 42U rack.

CAUTION: Ensure that no vertical or horizontal restrictions exist that would prevent rack movement without damaging the rack.

Make sure that all four leveler feet are in the fully raised position. This process will ensure that the casters support the rack weight and the feet do not impede movement.

Each rack requires an area 600 mm (23.62 in) wide and 1000 mm (39.37 in) deep (see Figure 15 (page 34)).

Figure 15 Single rack configuration floor space requirements

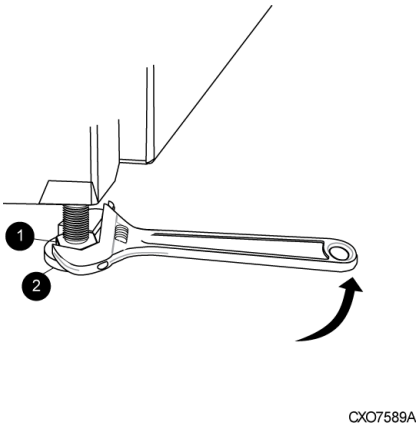


1. Front door
2. Rear door
3. Rack width 600 mm
4. Service area width 813 mm
5. Rear service area depth 300 mm
6. Rack depth 1000 mm
7. Front service area depth 406 mm
8. Total rack depth 1706 mm

If the feet are not fully raised, complete the following procedure:

1. Raise one foot by turning the leveler foot hex nut counterclockwise until the weight of the rack is fully on the caster (see Figure 16 (page 35)).
2. Repeat Step 1 for the other feet.

Figure 16 Raising a leveler foot



1. Hex nut
2. Leveler foot

3. Carefully move the rack to the installation area and position it to provide the necessary service areas (see Figure 15 (page 34)).

To stabilize the rack when it is in the final installation location:

1. Use a wrench to lower the foot by turning the leveler foot hex nut clockwise until the caster does not touch the floor. Repeat for the other feet.
2. After lowering the feet, check the rack to ensure it is stable and level.
3. Adjust the feet as necessary to ensure the rack is stable and level.

2 P63x0/P65x0 EVA operation

Best practices

For useful information on managing and configuring your storage system, see the *HP P6300/P6500 Enterprise Virtual Array configuration best practices* white paper available at:

http://h18006.www1.hp.com/storage/arraywhitepapers.html

Operating tips and information

Reserving adequate free space

To ensure efficient storage system operation, reserve some unallocated capacity, or free space, in each disk group. The recommended amount of free space is influenced by your system configuration. For guidance on how much free space to reserve, see the *HP P6300/P6500 Enterprise Virtual Array configuration best practices* white paper.

Using SAS-midline disk drives

SAS-midline drives are designed for lower duty cycle applications such as near online data replication for backup. Do not use these drives as a replacement for EVA's high performance, standard duty cycle, Fibre Channel drives. This practice could shorten the life of the drive.

Failback preference setting for HSV controllers

Table 7 (page 36) describes the failback preference setting for the controllers.

Table 7 Failback preference settings

Setting	Point in time	Behavior
No preference	At initial presentation	The units are alternately brought online to Controller 1 or to Controller 2.
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are alternately brought online to Controller 1 or to Controller 2.
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.
Path A - Failover Only	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller 1.
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller 1.
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.
Path B - Failover Only	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller 2.
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there.

Table 7 Failback preference settings *(continued)*

Setting	Point in time	Behavior
		Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller 2.
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. There is no failback except if a host moves the LUN using SCSI commands.
Path A - Failover/Failback	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller 1.
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller 1.
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. After controller restoration, the units that are online to Controller 2 and set to Path A are brought online to Controller 1. This is a one-time occurrence. If the host then moves the LUN using SCSI commands, the LUN will remain where moved.
Path B - Failover/Failback	At initial presentation	The units are brought online to Controller 2.
	On dual boot or controller resynch	If cache data for a LUN exists on a particular controller, the unit will be brought online there. Otherwise, the units are brought online to Controller 2.
	On controller failover	All LUNs are brought online to the surviving controller.
	On controller failback	All LUNs remain on the surviving controller. After controller restoration, the units that are online to Controller 1 and set to Path B are brought online to Controller 2. This is a one-time occurrence. If the host then moves the LUN using SCSI commands, the LUN will remain where moved.

Table 8 (page 37) describes the failback default behavior and supported settings when ALUA-compliant multipath software is running with each operating system. Recommended settings may vary depending on your configuration or environment.

Table 8 Failback settings by operating system

Operating system	Default behavior	Supported settings
HP-UX	Host follows the unit[1]	No preference Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback
IBM AIX	Auto failback done by the host	No preference Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback
Linux	Auto failback done by the host	No preference

Table 8 Failback settings by operating system *(continued)*

Operating system	Default behavior	Supported settings
		Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback
OpenVMS	Host follows the unit[1]	No preference Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback (recommended)
Oracle Solaris	Host follows the unit[1]	No preference Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback
VMware	Host follows the unit[1]	No preference Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback
Windows	Failback performed on the host	No preference Path A/B – Failover only Path A/B – Failover/Failback

[1] If preference has been configured to ensure a more balanced controller configuration, the Path A/B –Failover/Failback setting is required to maintain the configuration after a single controller reboot.

Changing virtual disk failover/failback setting

Changing the failover/failback setting of a virtual disk may impact which controller presents the disk. Table 9 (page 38) identifies the presentation behavior that results when the failover/failback setting for a virtual disk is changed.

NOTE: If the new setting moves the presentation of the virtual disk to a new controller, any snapshots or snapclones associated with the virtual disk are also moved.

Table 9 Impact on virtual disk presentation when changing failover/failback setting

New setting	Impact on virtual disk presentation
No Preference	None. The disk maintains its original presentation.
Path A Failover	If the disk is currently presented on Controller 2, it is moved to Controller 1. If the disk is on Controller 1, it remains there.
Path B Failover	If the disk is currently presented on Controller 1, it is moved to Controller 2. If the disk is on Controller 2, it remains there.
Path A Failover/Failback	If the disk is currently presented on Controller 2, it is moved to Controller 1. If the disk is on Controller 1, it remains there.
Path B Failover/Failback	If the disk is currently presented on Controller 1, it is moved to Controller 2. If the disk is on Controller 2, it remains there.

Implicit LUN transition

Implicit LUN transition automatically transfers management of a virtual disk to the array controller that receives the most read requests for that virtual disk. This improves performance by reducing the overhead incurred when servicing read I/Os on the non-managing controller. Implicit LUN transition is enabled in all versions of XCS.

When creating a virtual disk, one controller is selected to manage the virtual disk. Only this managing controller can issue I/Os to a virtual disk in response to a host read or write request. If a read I/O request arrives on the non-managing controller, the read request must be transferred to the managing controller for servicing. The managing controller issues the I/O request, caches the read data, and mirrors that data to the cache on the non-managing controller, which then transfers the read data to the host. Because this type of transaction, called a proxy read, requires additional overhead, it provides less than optimal performance. (There is little impact on a write request because all writes are mirrored in both controllers' caches for fault protection.)

With implicit LUN transition, when the array detects that a majority of read requests for a virtual disk are proxy reads, the array transitions management of the virtual disk to the non-managing controller. This improves performance because the controller receiving most of the read requests becomes the managing controller, reducing proxy read overhead for subsequent I/Os.

Implicit LUN transition is disabled for all members of an HP P6000 Continuous Access DR group. Because HP P6000 Continuous Access requires that all members of a DR group be managed by the same controller, it would be necessary to move all members of the DR group if excessive proxy reads were detected on any virtual disk in the group. This would impact performance and create a proxy read situation for the other virtual disks in the DR group. Not implementing implicit LUN transition on a DR group may cause a virtual disk in the DR group to have excessive proxy reads.

Recovery CD

HP does not ship the recovery CD with the HP P6350/P6550 EVA. You can download the image from the HP Software Depot at the following URL and burn a CD, if needed:

http://www.software.hp.com

Adding disk drives to the storage system

As your storage requirements grow, you may be adding disk drives to your storage system. Adding new disk drives is the easiest way to increase the storage capacity of the storage system. Disk drives can be added online without impacting storage system operation.

Consider the following best practices to improve availability when adding disks to an array:

- Set the add disk option to manual.
- Add disks one at a time, waiting a minimum of 60 seconds between disks.
- Distribute disks vertically and as evenly as possible to all the disk enclosures.
- Unless otherwise indicated, use the `SET DISK_GROUP` command in the HP Storage System Scripting Utility to add new disks to existing disk groups.
- Add disks in groups of eight.
- For growing existing applications, if the operating system supports virtual disk growth, increase virtual disk size. Otherwise, use a software volume manager to add new virtual disks to applications.

See the *HP Disk Drive Replacement Instructions* for the steps to add a disk drive. See "Replacement instructions" (page 85) for a link to this document.

Handling fiber optic cables

This section provides protection methods for fiber optic connectors.

Contamination of the fiber optic connectors on either a transceiver or a cable connector can impede the transmission of data. Therefore, protecting the connector tips against contamination or damage is imperative. The tips can be contaminated by touching them, by dust, or by debris. They can be damaged when dropped. To protect the connectors against contamination or damage, use the dust covers or dust caps provided by the manufacturer. These covers are removed during installation, and should be installed whenever the transceivers or cables are disconnected.

The transceiver dust caps protect the transceivers from contamination. **Do not discard the dust covers.**

CAUTION: To avoid damage to the connectors, always install the dust covers or dust caps whenever a transceiver or a fiber cable is disconnected. Remove the dust covers or dust caps from transceivers or fiber cable connectors only when they are connected. **Do not discard the dust covers.**

To minimize the risk of contamination or damage, do the following:

- **Dust covers**—Remove and set aside the dust covers and dust caps when installing an I/O module, a transceiver or a cable. Install the dust covers when disconnecting a transceiver or cable.

One of the many sources for cleaning equipment specifically designed for fiber optic connectors is:

Alcoa Fujikura Ltd.

1-888-385-4587 (North America)

011-1-770-956-7200 (International)

Storage system shutdown and startup

You can shut down the array from HP P6000 Command View or from the array controller.

The shutdown process performs the following functions in the indicated order:

1. Flushes cache
2. Removes power from the controllers
3. Disables cache battery power
4. Removes power from the drive enclosures
5. Disconnects the system from HP P6000 Command View

NOTE: The storage system may take several minutes (up to 15) to complete the necessary cache flush during controller shutdown when snapshots are being used. The delay may be particularly long if multiple child snapshots are used, or if there has been a large amount of write activity to the snapshot source virtual disk.

Powering on disk enclosures

IMPORTANT: Always power up disk enclosures before controllers and servers. This ensures that the servers, during their discovery, see the enclosure as an operational device. If you do not power up the disk enclosures before powering up the controllers and servers, you will need to power down the servers, ensure that the disk enclosures are powered up, and then power back up the servers.

1. Apply power to each UPS.
2. Apply power to the disk enclosures by pressing and holding the power on/standby button on the rear of the disk enclosures until the system power LED illuminates solid green.

   The LED on the power on/standby button changes from amber to solid green, indicating that the disk enclosure has transitioned from a standby state to fully powered.
3. Wait a few minutes for the disk enclosures to complete their startup routines.

CAUTION: If power is applied to the controller before the disk enclosures complete their startup routine, the array might not start properly.

4. Power on (or restart) the controller and allow the array to complete startup.
5. Using P6000 Command View, verify that each component is operating properly.

Powering off disk enclosures

CAUTION: Be sure that the server controller is the first unit to be powered down and the last to be powered back up. Taking this precaution ensures that the system does not erroneously mark the disk drives as failed when the server is later restarted. It is recommended to perform this action with P6000 Command View (see below).

IMPORTANT: If installing a hot-plug device, it is not necessary to power down the enclosure.

To power off a disk enclosure:

1. Power down any attached servers. See the server documentation.
2. Perform an orderly shutdown of the array controllers.
3. Allow all components to enter standby power mode. Note that not all indicators may be off.
4. Disconnect the power cords

The system is now powered down.

Shutting down the storage system from HP P6000 Command View

1. Start HP P6000 Command View.
2. Select the appropriate storage system in the Navigation pane.

   The Initialized Storage System Properties window for the selected storage system opens.
3. Click **Shut down**.

   The Shutdown Options window opens.
4. Under System Shutdown click **Power Down**. If you want to delay the initiation of the shutdown, enter the number of minutes in the Shutdown delay field.

   The controllers complete an orderly shutdown and then power off. The disk enclosures then power off. Wait for the shutdown to complete.
5. Turn off the power to the rack power distribution units. Even though the disk enclosures are powered off in Step 4, unless the power on the rack distribution units are turned off, the I/O modules remain powered on in a standby state.

Shutting down the storage system from the array controller

CAUTION: Use this power off method for emergency shutdown only. This is not an orderly shutdown and cached data could be lost.

1. Push and hold the power switch button on the back panel of the P63x0/P65x0 EVA (see callout 9 in Figure 3 (page 23)).
2. Wait 4 seconds. The power button and the green LED start to blink.

   NOTE: Use this power off method for emergency shutdown only. This is not an orderly shutdown and cached data could be lost.
3. After 10 seconds, the power shuts down.

Starting the storage system

To start a storage system, perform the following steps:

1. Turn on the SAN switches and wait for all switches to complete the power-on boot process. It may be necessary to wait several minutes for this to complete.

   NOTE: Before applying power to the rack PDUs, ensure that the power switch on the controller enclosure is off.

2. Ensure all power cords are connected to the controller enclosure and disk enclosures. Apply power to the rack PDUs.
3. Apply power to the controller enclosure (rear panel on the enclosure). The disk enclosures will power on automatically. Wait for a solid green status LED on the controller enclosure and disk enclosures (approximately five minutes).
4. Wait (up to five minutes) for the array to complete its startup routine.
5. Apply power to the servers in the SAN with access to the array, start the operating system, and log in as administrator.

CAUTION:

- If power is applied to a server and it attempts to boot off of an array that has not been powered on properly, the server will not start.
- If a New Hardware Found message appears when you power on a server, cancel the message and ensure that supported drivers are installed on the server.

6. Start HP P6000 Command View and verify connection to the storage system. If the storage system is not visible, click **EVA Storage Network** in the navigation pane, and then click **Discover** in the content pane to discover the array.

   NOTE: If the storage system is still not visible, reboot the management server or management module to re-establish the communication link.

7. Check the storage system status using HP P6000 Command View to ensure everything is operating properly. If any status indicator is not normal, check the log files or contact your HP-authorized service provider for assistance.

There is a feature in the HP P6000 Control Panel that enables the controllers to boot automatically when power is applied after a full shutdown. See the HP P6000 Control Panel online help or user guide for details about setting this feature. To further clarify the use of this feature:

- If this feature is disabled and you turn on power to the array from the rack power distribution unit (PDU), only the disk enclosures boot up. With this feature enabled, the controllers will also boot up, making the entire array ready for use.
- If, after setting this feature, you remove the management module from its slot and reinsert it to reset power or you restart the management module from the HP P6000 Control Panel, only the controllers will automatically boot up after a full shutdown. In this scenario, you must ensure that the disk enclosures are powered up first; otherwise, the controller boot up process may be interrupted.
- After setting this HP P6000 Control Panel feature, if you have to shut down the array, perform the following steps:
  1. Use HP P6000 Command View to shut down the controllers and disk enclosures.
  2. Turn off power from the rack power distribution unit (PDU).
  3. Turn on power from the rack PDU.

After startup of the management module, the controllers will automatically start.

Restarting the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module

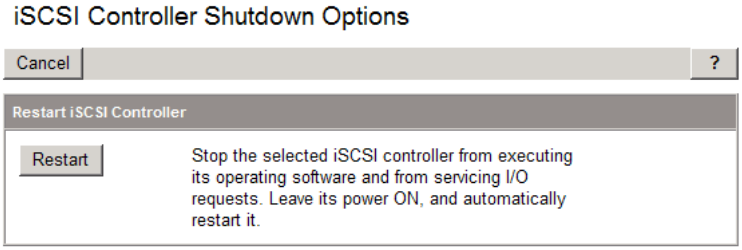
If you determine that the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules must be rebooted, you can use HP P6000 Command View to restart the modules. Shutting down the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules through HP P6000 Command View is not supported. You must use the CLI to shut down the modules and then power cycle the array to power on the modules after the shutdown.

To restart a module:

1. Select the iSCSI controller in the navigation pane.
2. Select **Shutdown** on the iSCSI Controller Properties window.

3. Select Restart on the iSCSI Controller Shutdown Options window (Figure 17 (page 46)).

Figure 17 iSCSI Controller Shutdown Options



The following is an example of the shutdown procedure using the CLI:

```
MEZ75 login: guest
Password:********

Welcome to MEZ75

       ***********************************************
       *                                             *
       *              HP StorageWorks MEZ75          *
       *                                             *
       ***********************************************

MEZ75 #> admin start -p config

MEZ75 (admin) #> shutdown

  Are you sure you want to shutdown the System (y/n):  y
```

Using the management module

Connecting to the management module

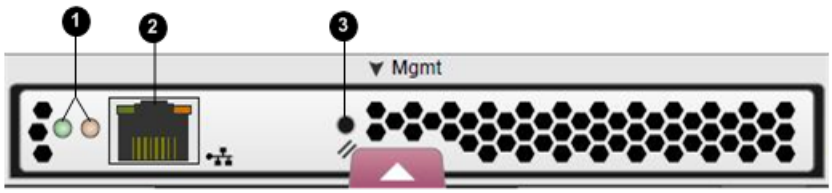
You can connect to the management module through a public or a private network.

NOTE: If you are using HP P6000 Command View on the management server to manage the P63x0/P65x0 EVAs, HP recommends that when accessing HP P6000 Command View on either the management server (server-based management) or the management module (array-based management), you use the same network. This is recommended until a multi-homed solution is available, which would allow the management module access to be configured on a separate network (private or different).

If you use a laptop to connect to the management module, configure the laptop to have an address in the same IP range as the management module (for example, 192.168.0.2 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0).

The management module has an MDI-X port that supports straight-through or crossover Ethernet cables. Use a Cat5e or greater cable to connect the management module from its Ethernet jack (2, Figure 18 (page 44)) to the management server.

Figure 18 Management module



1. Status LEDs
2. Ethernet jack
3. Reset button

Connecting through a public network

1. Initialize the P63x0 EVA or P65x0 EVA storage system using HP P6000 Command View.
2. If it is currently connected, disconnect the public network LAN cable from the back of the management module in the controller enclosure.
3. Press and hold the recessed Reset button (3, Figure 18 (page 44)) for 4 to 5 seconds. The green LED on the management module (1, Figure 18 (page 44)) blinks to indicate the configuration reset has started. The reset may take up to 2 minutes to complete. When the reset is completed, the green LED turns solid. This sets IP addresses of 192.168.0.1/24 (IPv4) and fd50:f2eb:a8a::7/48 (IPv6).

IMPORTANT: At initial setup, you cannot browse to the HP P6000 Control Panel until you perform this step.

4. Do one of the following:
   - Temporarily connect a LAN cable from a private network to the management module.
   - Temporarily connect a laptop computer directly to the management module using a LAN patch cable.
5. Browse to **`https://192.168.0.1:2373/`** or **`https://[fd50:f2eb:a8a::7]:2373/`** and log in as an HP EVA administrator. HP recommends that you either change or delete the default IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to avoid duplicate address detection issues on your network. The default user name is `admin`. No password is required during the initial setup. The HP P6000 Control Panel GUI appears.

IMPORTANT: If you change the password for the administrator or user account for the HP P6000 Control Panel, be sure to record the new passwords since they cannot be cleared without resetting the management module.

HP recommends that you change the default passwords.

6. Select **Administrator Options > Configure Network Options**.
7. Enter an IP address and other network settings that apply.

NOTE: The reserved internal IP addresses are 10.253.251.230 through 10.253.251.249.

8. Click **Save Changes**. The IP address changes immediately, causing you to lose connectivity to the HP P6000 Control Panel.

   The new IP address is stored and remains in effect, even when the storage system is later shut down or restarted.

IMPORTANT: The new IP address will be lost if the storage system is later uninitialized or the management module is reset.

9. Remove the LAN cable to the private network or laptop and reconnect the cable to the public network.
10. From a computer on the public network, browse to **`https://new IP:2373`** and log in. The HP P6000 Control Panel GUI appears.

Connecting through a private network

1. Press and hold the recessed Reset button (3, Figure 18 (page 44)) for 4 to 5 seconds. The green LED on the management module (1, Figure 18 (page 44)) blinks to indicate the configuration reset has started. The reset may take up to 2 minutes to complete. When the reset is completed, the green LED turns solid. This sets IP addresses of 192.168.0.1/24 (IPv4) and fd50:f2eb:a8a::7/48 (IPv6).
2. Browse to **`https://192.168.0.1:2373/`** or **`https://[fd50:f2eb:a8a::7]:2373/`** and log in as an HP EVA administrator. HP recommends that you either change or delete the default IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to avoid duplicate address detection issues on your network. The default user name is `admin`. No password is required during the initial setup. The HP P6000 Control Panel GUI appears.

IMPORTANT: At initial setup, you cannot browse to the HP P6000 Control Panel until you perform this step.

3. Select **Administrator Options > Configure Network Options**.
4. Enter an IP address and other network settings that apply.

NOTE: The reserved internal IP addresses are 10.253.251.230 through 10.253.251.249.

5. Click **Save Changes**. The IP address changes immediately, causing you to lose connectivity to the HP P6000 Control Panel.

   The new IP address is stored and remains in effect, even when the storage system is shut down or restarted.

IMPORTANT: The new IP address will be lost if the storage system is later uninitialized or the management module is reset.

6. From a computer on the private network, browse to **`https://newly configured ip address:2373`** and log in. The HP P6000 Control Panel GUI appears.

Accessing HP P6000 Command View on the management module

To access HP P6000 Command View on the management module:

1. Login to P6000 Control Panel
2. From the left pane, select **Launch HP P6000 Command View** from the User Options
3. Click **Launch HP P6000 Command View**

Changing the host port default operating mode

NOTE: Fibre Channel host ports must be connected or have an optical loopback plug installed. When using the loopback plug, the host port must be configured for direct connect.

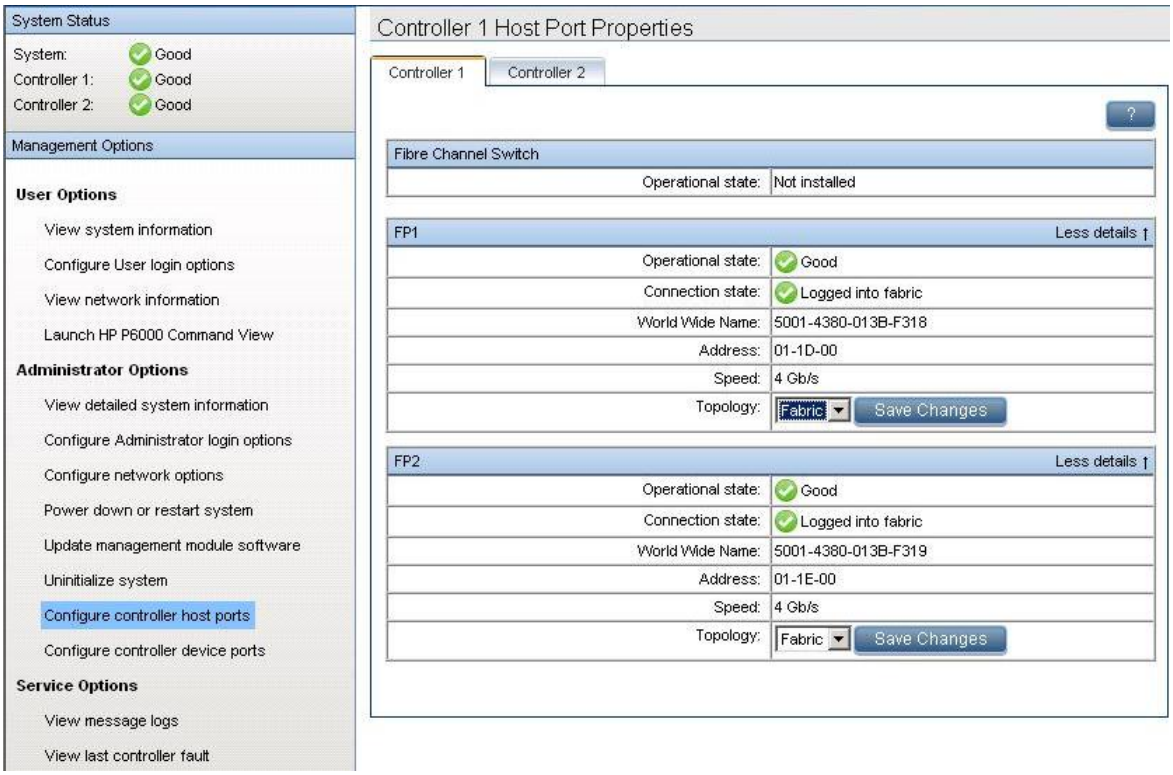
By default, a storage system is shipped to operate in a Fibre Channel switch environment and is configured in *fabric* mode. If you choose to connect the storage system directly to a server, you must change the host port operating mode to *direct* mode. If you do not change this mode, the storage system will be unable to communicate with your server. Use the HP P6000 Control Panel to change the default operating mode.

NOTE: Change your browser settings for the HP P6000 Control Panel as described in the *HP P6000 Command View Installation Guide*. You must have administrator privilege to change the settings in the HP P6000 Control Panel.

To change the default operating mode:

1. Connect to the management module using one of the methods described in "Connecting through a public network" (page 44) or "Connecting through a private network" (page 45).
2. Log into the HP P6000 Control Panel as an HP P6000 administrator. The HP P6000 Control Panel is displayed.
3. Select **Administrator Options > Configure Controller Host Ports** (Figure 17 (page 46)).
4. Select the controller.

Figure 19 iSCSI Controller Shutdown Options



5. In the Topology box, select **Direct** from the drop-down menu.
6. Click **Save Changes**.
7. Repeat steps through 6 for other ports where direct connect is desired.
8. Close the HP P6000 Control Panel and remove the Ethernet cable from the server, however, you may want to retain access to the ABM to initialize the storage cell, for example.

Saving storage system configuration data

As part of an overall data protection strategy, storage system configuration data should be saved during initial installation, and whenever major configuration changes are made to the storage system. This includes adding or removing disk drives, creating or deleting disk groups, and adding or deleting virtual disks. The saved configuration data can save substantial time if re-initializing the storage system becomes necessary. The configuration data is saved to a series of files, which should be stored in a location other than on the storage system.

You can perform this procedure from the management server where HP P6000 Command View is installed from any host running HP Storage System Scripting Utility (called the utility) and connected to the management server.

NOTE: For more information on using the utility, see the *HP Storage System Scripting Utility Reference*. See "Related documentation" (page 197).

1. Double-click the SSSU desktop icon to run the application. When prompted, enter Manager (management server name or IP address), User name, and Password.
2. Enter `LS SYSTEM` to display the storage systems managed by the management server.
3. Enter `SELECT SYSTEM system name`, where *system name* is the name of the storage system.

   The storage system name is case sensitive. If there are spaces the letters in the name, quotes must enclose the name: for example, `SELECT SYSTEM "Large EVA"`.
4. Enter `CAPTURE CONFIGURATION`, specifying the full path and filename of the output files for the configuration data.

   The configuration data is stored in a series of from one to five files, which are SSSU scripts. The file names begin with the name you select, with the restore step appended. For example, if you specify a file name of `LargeEVA.txt`, the resulting configuration files would be `LargeEVA_Step1A.txt, LargeEVA_Step1B`, etc.

   The contents of the configuration files can be viewed with a text editor.

NOTE: If the storage system contains disk drives of different capacities, the SSSU procedures used do not guarantee that disk drives of the same capacity will be exclusively added to the same disk group. If you need to restore an array configuration that contains disks of different sizes and types, you must manually recreate these disk groups. The controller software and the utility's CAPTURE CONFIGURATION command are not designed to automatically restore this type of configuration. For more information, see the *HP Storage System Scripting Utility Reference*.

The following examples illustrate how to save and restore the storage system configuration data using SSSU on a Windows host.

Example 1 Saving configuration data on a Windows host

1. Double-click on the SSSU desktop icon to run the application. When prompted, enter Manager (management server name or IP address), User name, and Password.
2. Enter `LS SYSTEM` to display the storage systems managed by the management server.
3. Enter `SELECT SYSTEM system name`, where *system name* is the name of the storage system.
4. Enter `CAPTURE CONFIGURATION pathname\filename`, where *pathname* identifies the location where the configuration files will be saved, and `filename` is the name used as the prefix for the configurations files: for example, `CAPTURE CONFIGURATION c:\EVAConfig\LargeEVA`
5. Enter `EXIT` to close the SSSU command window.

Example 2 Restoring configuration data on a Windows host

If it is necessary to restore the storage system configuration, it can be done using the following procedure.

1. Double-click on the SSSU desktop icon to run the application.
2. Enter `FILE pathname\filename`, where *pathname* identifies the location where the configuration files are be saved and *filename* is the name of the first configuration file: for example, `FILE c:\EVAConfig\LargeEVA_Step1A.txt`
3. Repeat the preceding step for each configuration file. Use files in sequential order. For example, use Step1A before Step1B, and so on. Files that are not needed for configuration data are not created, so there is no need to restore them.

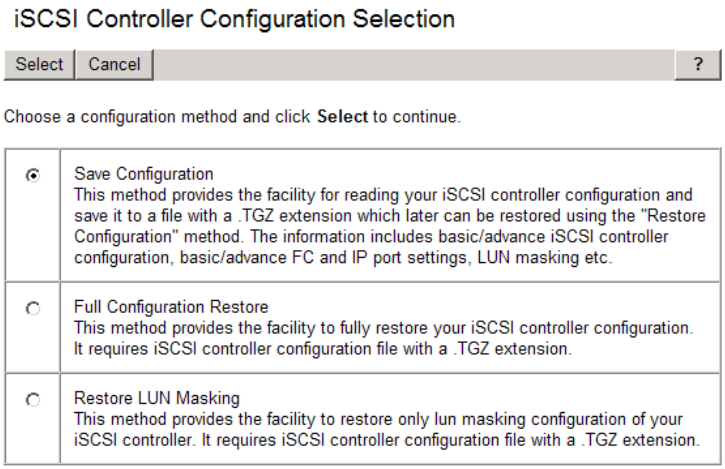
Saving or restoring the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module configuration

After the initial setup of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules, save the configuration for each module, in case a service action is required. The Save Configuration function (Figure 20 (page 49)) enables you to save the configuration from a selected module to a file on the management server. You can use this file as a restoration point. The Full Configuration Restore function enables the restoration of the configuration to the point when the configuration was last saved (such as during the LUN presentation to new initiators). If a new controller is installed, the full configuration can be restored and no reconfiguration is required. When using HP P6000 Command View to uninitialize a P6300 or P6500 array, the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules are issued reset mappings and are rebooted, to avoid stale persistent data, without clearing configured IP addresses.

To save or restore the configuration:

1. Select the iSCSI controller in the Navigation pane.
2. Select **Set Options**.
3. Select **Save/Restore configuration**.
4. Select the configuration method.

Figure 20 iSCSI Controller Configuration Selection window



NOTE: A `Restore` action will reboot the module.

3 Configuring application servers

Overview

This chapter provides general connectivity information for all the supported operating systems. Where applicable, an OS-specific section is included to provide more information.

Clustering

Clustering is connecting two or more computers together so that they behave like a single computer. Clustering is used for parallel processing, load balancing, and fault tolerance.

See the *HP P6000 Enterprise Virtual Array Compatibility Reference* for the clustering software supported on each operating system. See"Related documentation" (page 197) for the location of this document. Clustering is not supported on Linux or VMware.

NOTE: For OpenVMS, you must make the Console LUN ID and OS unit IDs unique throughout the entire SAN, not just the controller subsystem.

Multipathing

Multipathing software provides a multiple-path environment for your operating system. See the following website for more information:

http://h18006.www1.hp.com/products/sanworks/multipathoptions/index.html

See the *HP P6000 Enterprise Virtual Array Compatibility Reference* for the multipathing software supported on each operating system. See "Related documentation" (page 197) for the location of this document.

Installing Fibre Channel adapters

For all operating systems, supported Fibre Channel adapters (FCAs) must be installed in the host server in order to communicate with the EVA.

NOTE: Traditionally, the adapter that connects the host server to the fabric is called a host bus adapter (HBA). The server HBA used with the storage systems is called a Fibre Channel adapter (FCA). You might also see the adapter called a Fibre Channel host bus adapter (Fibre Channel HBA) in other related documents.

Follow the hardware installation rules and conventions for your server type. The FCA is shipped with its own documentation for installation. See that documentation for complete instructions. You need the following items to begin:

- FCA boards and the manufacturer's installation instructions
- Server hardware manual for instructions on installing adapters
- Tools to service your server

The FCA board plugs into a compatible I/O slot (PCI, PCI-X, PCI-E) in the host system. For instructions on plugging in boards, see the hardware manual.

You can download the latest FCA firmware from the following website: http://www.hp.com/support/downloads. Enter HBA in the **Search Products** box and then select your product. For supported FCAs by operating system, go to the Single Point of Connectivity Knowledge website (http://www.hp.com/storage/spock). You must sign up for an HP Passport to enable access.

Testing connections to the array

After installing the FCAs, you can create and test connections between the host server and the array. For all operating systems, you must:

- Add hosts
- Create and present virtual disks
- Verify virtual disks from the hosts

The following sections provide information that applies to all operating systems. For OS-specific details, see the applicable operating system section.

Adding hosts

To add hosts using HP P6000 Command View:

1. Retrieve the worldwide names (WWNs) for each FCA on your host. You need this information to select the host FCAs in HP P6000 Command View.
2. Use HP P6000 Command View to add the host and each FCA installed in the host system.

   NOTE: To add hosts using HP P6000 Command View, you must add each FCA installed in the host. Select **Add Host** to add the first adapter. To add subsequent adapters, select **Add Port**. Ensure that you add a port for each active FCA.

3. Select the applicable operating system for the host mode.

   Table 10 Operating system and host mode selection

Operating System	Host mode selection in HP P6000 Command View
HP-UX	HP-UX
IBM AIX	IBM AIX
Linux	Linux
Mac OS X	Linux
Microsoft Windows	Microsoft Windows
	Microsoft Windows 2008
	Microsoft Windows 2012
OpenVMS	OVMS
Oracle Solaris	Sun Solaris
VMware	VMware
Citrix XenServer	Linux

4. Check the Host folder in the Navigation pane of HP P6000 Command View to verify that the host FCAs are added.

   NOTE: More information about HP P6000 Command View is available at http://www.hp.com/support/manuals. Click **Storage Software** under Storage, and then select **HP P6000 Command View Software** under Storage Device Management Software.

Creating and presenting virtual disks

To create and present virtual disks to the host server:

1. From HP P6000 Command View, create a virtual disk on the storage system.
2. Specify values for the following parameters:
   - Virtual disk name
   - Vraid level
   - Size
3. Present the virtual disk to the host you added.
4. If applicable (AIX or OpenVMS) select a LUN number if you chose a specific LUN on the Virtual Disk Properties window.

Verifying virtual disk access from the host

To verify that the host can access the newly presented virtual disks, restart the host or scan the bus.

If you are unable to access the virtual disk:

- Verify that all cabling is connected to the switch, EVA, and host.
- Verify that all firmware levels are appropriate for your configuration. For more information, refer to the Enterprise Virtual Array QuickSpecs and associated release notes. See "Related documentation" (page 197) for the location of these documents.
- Ensure that you are running a supported version of the host operating system. For more information, see the *HP P6000 Enterprise Virtual Array Compatibility Reference*.
- Ensure that the correct host is selected as the operating system for the virtual disk in HP P6000 Command View.
- Ensure that the host WWN number is set correctly (to the host you selected).
- Verify that the FCA switch settings are correct.
- Verify that the virtual disk is presented to the host.
- Verify that the zoning is correct for your configuration.

Configuring virtual disks from the host

After you create the virtual disks and rescan or restart the host, follow the host-specific conventions for configuring these new disk resources. For instructions, see the documentation included with your server.

HP-UX

To create virtual disks for HP-UX, scan the bus and then create volume groups on a virtual disk.

Scanning the bus

To scan the FCA bus and display information about the devices:

1. Enter the command `# ioscan -fnCdisk` to start the rescan.

   All new virtual disks become visible to the host.
2. Assign device special files to the new virtual disks using the `insf` command:

   ```
   # insf -e
   ```

   NOTE: Lowercase `e` assigns device special files only to the new devices—in this case, the virtual disks. Uppercase `E` reassigns device special files to all devices.

The following is a sample output from an `ioscan` command:

```
# ioscan -fnCdisk
# ioscan -fnCdisk
Class     I  H/W Patch           Driver    S/W      H/W Type   Description
             State
================================================================================
ba        3  0/6                    lba       CLAIMED  BUS_NEXUS  Local PCI Bus
                                                                  Adapter (782)
fc        2  0/6/0/0                td        CLAIMED  INTERFACE  HP Tachyon XL@ 2 FC
                                                                  Mass Stor Adap /dev/td2
fcp       0  0/6/0/0.39             fcp       CLAIMED  INTERFACE  FCP Domain
ext_bus   4  0/6/00.39.13.0.0       fcparray  CLAIMED  INTERFACE  FCP Array Interface
target    5  0/6/0/0.39.13.0.0.0     tgt       CLAIMED  DEVICE
ctl       4  0/6/0/0.39.13.0.0.0.0  sctl      CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP  HSV340  /dev/rscsi/c4t0d0
disk      22 0/6/0/0.39.13.0.0.0.1  sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP  HSV340  /dev/dsk/c4t0d1
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c4t0d
ext_bus   5  0/6/0/0.39.13.255.0     fcpdev    CLAIMED  INTERFACE  FCP Device Interface
target    8  0/6/0/0.39.13.255.0.0   tgt       CLAIMED  DEVICE
ctl       20 0/6/0/0.39.13.255.0.0.0  sctl      CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/rscsi/c5t0d0
ext_bus   10 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0        fcparray  CLAIMED  INTERFACE  FCP Array Interface
target    9  0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0     tgt       CLAIMED  DEVICE
ctl       40 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.0   sctl      CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/rscsi/c10t0d0
disk      46 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.2   sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/dsk/c10t0d2
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c10t0d2
disk      47 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.3   sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/dsk/c10t0d3
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c10t0d3
disk      48 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.4   sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/dsk/c10t0d4
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c10t0d4
disk      49 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.5   sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/dsk/c10t0d5
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c10t0d5
disk      50 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.6   sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/dsk/c10t0d
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c10t0d6
disk      51 0/6/0/0.39.28.0.0.0.7   sdisk     CLAIMED  DEVICE     HP HSV340 /dev/dsk/c10t0d7
                                                                                /dev/rdsk/c10t0d7
```

Creating volume groups on a virtual disk using vgcreate

You can create a volume group on a virtual disk by issuing a `vgcreate` command. This builds the virtual group block data, allowing HP-UX to access the virtual disk. See the `pvcreate`, `vgcreate`, and `lvcreate` man pages for more information about creating disks and file systems. Use the following procedure to create a volume group on a virtual disk:

NOTE: Italicized text is for example only.

1. To create the physical volume on a virtual disk, enter the following command:

   `# pvcreate -f /dev/rdsk/`*`c32t0d1`*

2. To create the volume group directory for a virtual disk, enter the command:

   `# mkdir /dev/`*`vg01`*

3. To create the volume group node for a virtual disk, enter the command:

   `# mknod /dev/vg01/group c 64 0x010000`

   The designation *`64`* is the major number that equates to the 64-bit mode. The *`0x01`* is the minor number in hex, which must be unique for each volume group.

4. To create the volume group for a virtual disk, enter the command:

   `# vgcreate –f /dev/`*`vg01`*` /dev/dsk/`*`c32t0d1`*

5. To create the logical volume for a virtual disk, enter the command:

   `# lvcreate -L1000 /dev/`*`vg01/lvol1`*

   In this example, a 1-Gb logical volume (*`lvol1`*) is created.

6. Create a file system for the new logical volume by creating a file system directory name and inserting a mount tab entry into `/etc/fstab`.
7. Run the command `mkfs` on the new logical volume. The new file system is ready to mount.

IBM AIX

Accessing IBM AIX utilities

You can access IBM AIX utilities such as the Object Data Manager (ODM), on the following website:

http://www.hp.com/support/downloads

In the Search products box, enter **MPIO**, and then click **AIX MPIO PCMA for HP Arrays**. Select **IBM AIX**, and then select your software storage product.

Adding hosts

To determine the active FCAs on the IBM AIX host, enter:

```
# lsdev -Cc adapter |grep fcs
```

Output similar to the following appears:

```
fcs0      Available 1H-08    FC Adapter
fcs1      Available 1V-08    FC Adapter
# lscfg -vl
fcs0  fcs0            U0.1-P1-I5/Q1  FC Adapter
    Part Number.................80P4543
    EC Level....................A
    Serial Number...............1F4280A419
    Manufacturer................001F
    Feature Code/Marketing ID...280B
    FRU Number..................     80P4544
    Device Specific.(ZM)........3
    Network Address.............10000000C940F529
    ROS Level and ID............02881914
    Device Specific.(Z0)........1001206D
    Device Specific.(Z1)........00000000
    Device Specific.(Z2)........00000000
    Device Specific.(Z3)........03000909
    Device Specific.(Z4)........FF801315
    Device Specific.(Z5)........02881914
    Device Specific.(Z6)........06831914
    Device Specific.(Z7)........07831914
    Device Specific.(Z8)........20000000C940F529
    Device Specific.(Z9)........TS1.90A4
    Device Specific.(ZA)........T1D1.90A4
    Device Specific.(ZB)........T2D1.90A4
    Device Specific.(YL)........U0.1-P1-I5/Q1b.
```

Creating and presenting virtual disks

When creating and presenting virtual disks to an IBM AIX host, be sure to:

1. Set the OS unit ID to **0**.
2. Set Preferred path/mode to **No Preference**.
3. Select a LUN number if you chose a specific LUN on the Virtual Disk Properties window.

Verifying virtual disks from the host

To scan the IBM AIX bus and list all EVA devices, enter: `cfgmgr -v`

The `-v` switch (verbose output) requests a full output.

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
hdisk1  Available 1V-08-01     HP HSV340 Enterprise Virtual Array
hdisk2  Available 1V-08-01     HP HSV340 Enterprise Virtual Array
hdisk3  Available 1V-08-01     HP HSV340 Enterprise Virtual Array
```

Linux

Driver failover mode

If you use the INSTALL command without command options, the driver's failover mode depends on whether a QLogic driver is already loaded in memory (listed in the output of the lsmod command). Possible driver failover mode scenarios include:

- If an hp_qla2x00src driver RPM is already installed, the new driver RPM uses the failover of the previous driver package.
- If there is no QLogic driver module (qla2xxx module) loaded, the driver defaults to failover mode. This is also true if an inbox driver is loaded that does not list output in the /proc/scsi/qla2xxx directory.
- If there is a driver loaded in memory that lists the driver version in /proc/scsi/qla2xxx but no driver RPM has been installed, then the driver RPM loads the driver in the failover mode that the driver in memory currently uses.

Installing a QLogic driver

NOTE: The HP Emulex driver kit performs in a similar manner; use ./INSTALL -h to list all supported arguments.

1. Download the appropriate driver kit for your distribution. The driver kit file is in the format hp_qla2x00-yyyy-mm-dd.tar.gz.
2. Copy the driver kit to the target system.
3. Uncompress and untar the driver kit using the following command:

   ```
   # tar zxvf hp_qla2x00-yyyy-mm-dd.tar.gz
   ```
4. Change directory to the hp_qla2x00-yyyy-mm-dd directory.
5. Execute the INSTALL command.

   The INSTALL command syntax varies depending on your configuration.

   If a previous driver kit is installed, you can invoke the INSTALL command without any arguments. To use the currently loaded configuration:

   ```
   # ./INSTALL
   ```

   To force the installation to failover mode, use the -f flag:

   ```
   # ./INSTALL -f
   ```

   To force the installation to single-path mode, use the -s flag:

   ```
   # ./INSTALL -s
   ```

   To list all supported arguments, use the -h flag:

   ```
   # ./INSTALL -h
   ```

   The INSTALL script installs the appropriate driver RPM for your configuration, as well as the appropriate fibreutils RPM.
6. Once the INSTALL script is finished, you will either have to reload the QLogic driver modules (qla2xxx, qla2300, qla2400, qla2xxx_conf) or reboot your server.

   To reload the driver use one or more of the following commands, as applicable:

   ```
   # /opt/hp/src/hp_qla2x00src/unload.sh
   # modprobe qla2xxx_conf
   # modprobe qla2xxx
   # modprobe qla2300
   ```

```
# modprobe qla2400
```

To reboot the server, enter the `reboot` command.

CAUTION: If the boot device is attached to the SAN, you must reboot the host.

7. To verify which RPM versions are installed, use the `rpm` command with the `-q` option. For example:

```
# rpm -q hp_qla2x00src
# rpm -q fibreutils
```

Upgrading Linux components

If you have any installed components from a previous solution kit or driver kit, such as the `qla2x00` RPM, invoke the `INSTALL` script with no arguments, as shown in the following example:

```
# ./INSTALL
```

To manually upgrade the components, select one of the following kernel distributions:

- For 2.4 kernel based distributions, use version 7.xx.
- For 2.6 kernel based distributions, use version 8.xx.

Depending on the kernel version you are running, upgrade the driver RPM as follows:

- For the `hp_qla2x00src` RPM:

```
# rpm -Uvh hp_qla2x00src- version-revision.linux.rpm
```

- For `fibreutils` RPM, you have two options:
  - To upgrade the driver:

```
# rpm -Uvh fibreutils-version-revision.linux.architecture.rpm
```

  - To remove the existing driver, and install a new driver:

```
# rpm -e fibreutils
# rpm -ivh fibreutils-version-revision.linux.architecture.rpm
```

Upgrading qla2x00 RPMs

If you have a `qla2x00` RPM from HP installed on your system, use the `INSTALL` script to upgrade from `qla2x00` RPMs. The `INSTALL` script removes the old `qla2x00` RPM and installs the new `hp_qla2x00src` while keeping the driver settings from the previous installation. The script takes no arguments. Use the following command to run the `INSTALL` script:

```
# ./INSTALL
```

NOTE: IF you are going to use the failover functionality of the QLA driver, uninstall Secure Path and reboot before you attempt to upgrade the driver. Failing to do so can cause a kernel panic.

Detecting third-party storage

The preinstallation portion of the RPM contains code to check for non-HP storage. The reason for doing this is to prevent the RPM from overwriting any settings that another vendor may be using. You can skip the detection process by setting the environmental variable `HPQLAX00FORCE` to **`y`** by issuing the following commands:

```
# HPQLA2X00FORCE=y
# export HPQLA2X00FORCE
```

You can also use the `-F` option of the `INSTALL` script by entering the following command:

```
# ./INSTALL -F
```

Compiling the driver for multiple kernels

If your system has multiple kernels installed on it, you can compile the driver for all the installed kernels by setting the `INSTALLALLKERNELS` environmental variable to `y` and exporting it by issuing the following commands:

```
# INSTALLALLKERNELS=y
# export INSTALLALLKERNELS
```

You can also use the `-a` option of the `INSTALL` script as follows:

```
# ./INSTALL -a
```

Uninstalling the Linux components

To uninstall the components, use the `INSTALL` script with the `-u` option as shown in the following example:

```
# ./INSTALL -u
```

To manually uninstall all components, or to uninstall just one of the components, use one or all of the following commands:

```
# rpm -e fibreutils
# rpm -e hp_qla2x00
# rpm -e hp_qla2x00src
```

Using the source RPM

In some cases, you may have to build a binary `hp_qla2x00` RPM from the source RPM and use that manual binary build in place of the scripted `hp_qla2x00src` RPM. You need to do this if your production servers do not have the kernel sources and `gcc` installed.

If you need to build a binary RPM to install, you will need a development machine with the same kernel as your targeted production servers. You can install the binary RPM-produced RPM methods on your production servers.

NOTE: The binary RPM that you build works only for the kernel and configuration that you build on (and possibly some errata kernels). Ensure that you use the 7.xx version of the `hp_qla2x00` source RPM for 2.4 kernel-based distributions and the 8.xx version of the `hp_qla2x00` source RPM for 2.6 kernel-based distributions.

Use the following procedure to create the binary RPM from the source RPM:

1. Select one of the following options:
   - Enter the **`#./INSTALL -s`** command. The binary RPM creation is complete. You do not have to perform 2 through 4.
   - Install the source RPM by issuing the `# rpm -ivh hp_qla2x00-`*`version-revision`*`.src.rpm` command. Continue with 2.
2. Select one of the following directories:
   - For Red Hat distributions, use the `/usr/src/redhat/SPECS` directory.
   - For SUSE distributions, use the `/usr/src/packages/SPECS` directory.
3. Build the RPM by using the `# rpmbuild -bb hp_qla2x00.spec` command.

   NOTE: In some of the older Linux distributions, the RPM command contains the RPM build functionality.

   At the end of the command output, the following message appears:

```
"Wrote: ...rpm".
```

This line identifies the location of the binary RPM.

4. Copy the binary RPM to the production servers and install it using the following command:

```
# rpm -ivh hp_qla2x00-version-revision.architecture.rpm
```

HBA drivers

For most configurations and latest version of linux distributions, native HBA drivers are the supported drivers. *Native driver* means the driver that is included with the OS distribution.

NOTE: The term *inbox driver*is also sometimes used and means the same as *native driver*.

However in some configurations, it may require use of an out-of-box driver, which typically requires a driver package be downloaded and installed on the host. In those cases, follow the documentation of the driver package for instruction. Driver support information can be found on the *Single Point of Connectivity Knowledge (SPOCK)* website:

http://www.hp.com/storage/spock

NOTE: Registration is required to access SPOCK

Verifying virtual disks from the host

To verify the virtual disks, first verify that the LUN is recognized and then verify that the host can access the virtual disks.

- To ensure that the LUN is recognized after a virtual disk is presented to the host, do one of the following:
  - Reboot the host.
  - Execute the following command (where *X* is the SCSI host enumerator of the HBA):

    ```
    echo "- - -" > /sys/class/scsi_host/host[X]/scan
    ```

- To verify that the host can access the virtual disks, enter the **`# more /proc/scsi/scsi`** command.

  The output lists all SCSI devices detected by the server. An P63x0/P65x0 EVAs LUN entry looks similar to the following:

  ```
  Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 ID: 00 Lun: 01
  Vendor: HP      Model: HSV340       Rev:
  Type: Direct-Access                      ANSI SCSI revision: 02
  ```

OpenVMS

Updating the AlphaServer console code, Integrity Server console code, and Fibre Channel FCA firmware

The firmware update procedure varies for the different server types. To update firmware, follow the procedure described in the Installation instructions that accompany the firmware images.

Verifying the Fibre Channel adapter software installation

A supported FCA should already be installed in the host server. The procedure to verify that the console recognizes the installed FCA varies for the different server types. Follow the procedure described in the Installation instructions that accompany the firmware images.

Console LUN ID and OS unit ID

HP P6000 Command View software contains a box for the Console LUN ID on the Initialized Storage System Properties window.

It is important that you set the Console LUN ID to a number other than zero (0). If the Console LUN ID is not set or is set to zero (0), the OpenVMS host will not recognize the controller pair. The Console LUN ID for a controller pair must be unique within the SAN. Table 11 (page 59) shows an example of the Console LUN ID.

You can set the OS unit ID on the Virtual Disk Properties window. The default setting is 0, which disables the ID field. To enable the ID field, you must specify a value between 1 and 32767, ensuring that the number you enter is unique within the SAN. An OS Unit ID greater than 9999 is not capable of being served by MSCP.

△ **CAUTION:** It is possible to enter a duplicate Console LUN ID or OS unit ID number. You must ensure that you enter a Console LUN ID and OS Unit ID that is not already in use. A duplicate Console LUN ID or OS Unit ID can allow the OpenVMS host to corrupt data due to confusion about LUN identity. It can also prevent the host from recognizing the controllers.

Table 11 Comparing console LUN to OS unit ID

ID type	System Display
Console LUN ID set to 100	1GGA100:
OS unit ID set to 50	1DGA50:

Adding OpenVMS hosts

To obtain WWNs on AlphaServers, do one of the following:

- Enter the **`show device fg/full`** OVMS command.
- Use the **`WWIDMGR -SHOW PORT`** command at the SRM console.

To obtain WWNs on Integrity servers, do one of the following:

1. Enter the **`show device fg/full`** OVMS command.
2. Use the following procedure from the server console:
   a. From the EFI boot Manager, select **EFI Shell**.
   b. In the EFI Shell, enter "`Shell> drivers`".
      A list of EFI drivers loaded in the system is displayed.
3. In the listing, find the line for the FCA for which you want to get the WWN information.
   For a Qlogic HBA, look for `HP 4 Gb Fibre Channel Driver` or `HP 2 Gb Fibre Channel Driver` as the driver name. For example:

```
            T   D
D           Y C I
R           P F A
V  VERSION  E G G #D #C DRIVER NAME                          IMAGE NAME
== ======== = = = == == ==================================== ==================
22 00000105 B X X  1  1 HP 4 Gb Fibre Channel Driver         PciROM:0F:01:01:002
```

4. Note the driver handle in the first column (22 in the example).
5. Using the driver handle, enter the **`drvdfg`** *`driver_handle`* command to find the Device Handle (`Ctrl`). For example:

```
Shell> drvcfg 22
Configurable Components
Drv[22]  Ctrl[25]  Lang[eng]
```

6. Using the driver and device handle, enter the **drvdfg –s** *driver_handle device_handle* command to invoke the EFI Driver configuration utility. For example:

   ```
   Shell> drvcfg -s 22 25
   ```

7. From the `Fibre Channel Driver Configuration Utility` list, select item 8 (**Info**) to find the WWN for that particular port.

   Output similar to the following appears:

   ```
   Adapter Path:  Acpi(PNP0002,0300)/Pci(01|01)
   Adapter WWPN:   50060B00003B478A
   Adapter WWNN:   50060B00003B478B
   Adapter S/N:    3B478A
   ```

Scanning the bus

Enter the following command to scan the bus for the OpenVMS virtual disk:

```
$ MC SYSMAN IO AUTO/LOG
```

A listing of LUNs detected by the scan process is displayed. Verify that the new LUNs appear on the list.

NOTE: The console LUN can be seen without any virtual disks presented. The LUN appears as `$1$GGA`*x* (where *x* represents the console LUN ID on the controller).

After the system scans the fabric for devices, you can verify the devices with the `SHOW DEVICE` command:

```
$ SHOW DEVICE NAME-OF-VIRTUAL-DISK/FULL
```

For example, to display device information on a virtual disk named `$1$DGA50`, enter **$ SHOW DEVICE 1DGA50:/FULL**.

The following output is displayed:

```
Disk $1$DGA50: (BRCK18), device type HSV210, is online, file-oriented device,
    shareable, device has multiple I/O paths, served to cluster via MSCP Server,
    error logging is enabled.

    Error count                    2    Operations completed              4107
    Owner process                 ""    Owner UIC                      [SYSTEM]
    Owner process ID        00000000    Dev Prot            S:RWPL,O:RWPL,G:R,W
    Reference count                0    Default buffer size                512
    Current preferred CPU Id       0    Fastpath                             1
    WWID   01000010:6005-08B4-0010-70C7-0001-2000-2E3E-0000
    Host name                "BRCK18"    Host type, avail AlphaServer DS10 466 MHz, yes
    Alternate host name       "VMS24"    Alt. type, avail HP rx3600  (1.59GHz/9.0MB), yes
    Allocation class               1

  I/O paths to device              9
  Path PGA0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A38 (BRCK18), primary path.
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               145
  Path PGA0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A3A (BRCK18).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               338
  Path PGA0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A3E (BRCK18).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               276
  Path PGA0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A3C (BRCK18).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               282
  Path PGB0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A39 (BRCK18).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               683
  Path PGB0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A3B (BRCK18).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               704
  Path PGB0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A3D (BRCK18).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed               853
  Path PGB0.5000-1FE1-0027-0A3F (BRCK18), current path.
    Error count                    2    Operations completed               826
  Path MSCP  (VMS24).
    Error count                    0    Operations completed                 0
```

You can also use the `SHOW DEVICE DG` command to display a list of all Fibre Channel disks presented to the OpenVMS host.

NOTE: Restarting the host system shows any newly presented virtual disks because a hardware scan is performed as part of the startup.

If you are unable to access the virtual disk, do the following:

- Check the switch zoning database.
- Use HP P6000 Command View to verify the host presentations.
- Check the SRM console firmware on AlphaServers.
- Ensure that the correct host is selected for this virtual disk and that a unique OS Unit ID is used in HP P6000 Command View.

Configuring virtual disks from the OpenVMS host

To set up disk resources under OpenVMS, initialize and mount the virtual disk resource as follows:

1. Enter the following command to initialize the virtual disk:

   ```
   $ INITIALIZE name-of-virtual-disk volume-label
   ```

2. Enter the following command to mount the disk:

   ```
   MOUNT/SYSTEM name-of-virtual-disk volume-label
   ```

   NOTE: The `/SYSTEM` switch is used for a single stand-alone system, or in clusters if you want to mount the disk only to select nodes. You can use the `/CLUSTER` switch for OpenVMS clusters. However, if you encounter problems in a large cluster environment, HP recommends that you enter a `MOUNT/SYSTEM` command on each cluster node.

3. View the virtual disk's information with the `SHOW DEVICE` command. For example, enter the following command sequence to configure a virtual disk named `data1` in a stand-alone environment:

   ```
   $ INIT $1$DGA1: data1
   $ MOUNT/SYSTEM $1$DGA1: data1
   $ SHOW DEV $1$DGA1: /FULL
   ```

Setting preferred paths

You can use one of the following options for setting, changing, or displaying preferred paths:

- To set or change the preferred path, use the following command:

  ```
  $ SET DEVICE $1$DGA83: /PATH=PGA0.5000-1FE1-0007-9772/SWITCH
  ```

  This allows you to control which path each virtual disk uses.

- To display the path identifiers, use the `SHOW DEV/FULL` command.
- For additional information on using OpenVMS commands, see the OpenVMS help file:

  ```
  $ HELP TOPIC
  ```

  For example, the following command displays help information for the `MOUNT` command:

  ```
  $ HELP MOUNT
  ```

Oracle Solaris

NOTE: The information in this section applies to both SPARC and x86 versions of the Oracle Solaris operating system.

Loading the operating system and software

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for loading the operating system (OS) and software onto the host. Load all OS patches and configuration utilities supported by HP and the FCA manufacturer.

Configuring FCAs with the Oracle SAN driver stack

Oracle-branded FCAs are supported only with the Oracle SAN driver stack. The Oracle SAN driver stack is also compatible with current Emulex FCAs and QLogic FCAs. Support information is available on the Oracle website:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/server-storage/solaris/overview/index-136292.html

To determine which non-Oracle branded FCAs HP supports with the Oracle SAN driver stack, see the latest MPxIO application notes or contact your HP representative.

Update instructions depend on the version of your OS:

- For Solaris 9, install the latest Oracle StorEdge SAN software with associated patches. To locate the software, log into My Oracle Support:

  https://support.oracle.com/CSP/ui/flash.html

  1. Select the **Patches & Updates** tab and then search for StorEdge SAN Foundation Software 4.4 (formerly called StorageTek SAN 4.4).
  2. Reboot the host after the required software/patches have been installed. No further activity is required after adding any new LUNs once the array ports have been configured with the `cfgadm -c` command for Solaris 9.

     Examples for two FCAs:

     ```
     cfgadm -c configure c3
     cfgadm -c configure c4
     ```

  3. Increase retry counts and reduce I/O time by adding the following entries to the `/etc/system` file:

     ```
     set ssd:ssd_retry_count=0xa
     set ssd:ssd_io_time=0x1e
     ```

  4. Reboot the system to load the newly added parameters.

- For Solaris 10, go to the Oracle Software Downloads website (http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/downloads/index.html) to install the latest patches. Under Servers and Storage Systems, select **Solaris 10**. Reboot the host once the required software/patches have been installed. No further activity is required after adding any new LUNs, as the controller and LUN recognition are automatic for Solaris 10.

1. For Solaris 10 x86/64, ensure patch 138889-03 or later is installed. For SPARC, ensure patch 138888-03 or later is installed.
2. Increase the retry counts by adding the following line to the `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` file:

   ```
   sd-config-list="HP HSV","retries-timeout:10";
   ```

3. Reduce the I/O timeout value to 30 seconds by adding the following line to the `/etc/system` file:

   ```
   set sd:sd_io_time=0x1e
   ```

4. Reboot the system to load the newly added parameters.

Configuring Emulex FCAs with the lpfc driver

To configure Emulex FCAs with the lpfc driver:

1. Ensure that you have the latest supported version of the lpfc driver (see http://www.hp.com/storage/spock).

   You must sign up for an HP Passport to enable access. For more information on how to use SPOCK, see the Getting Started Guide (http://h20272.www2.hp.com/Pages/spock_overview/introduction.html).

2. Edit the following parameters in the `/kernel/drv/lpfc.conf` driver configuration file to set up the FCAs for a SAN infrastructure:

   ```
   topology=2;
   scan-down=0;
   nodev-tmo=60;
   linkdown-tmo=60;
   ```

3. If using a single FCA and no multipathing, edit the following parameter to reduce the risk of data loss in case of a controller reboot:

   ```
   nodev-tmo=120;
   ```

4. If using Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) DMP for multipathing (single or multiple FCAs), edit the following parameter to ensure proper VxVM behavior:

   ```
   no-device-delay=0;
   ```

5. In a fabric topology, use persistent bindings to bind a SCSI target ID to the world wide port name (WWPN) of an array port. This ensures that the SCSI target IDs remain the same when the system reboots. Set persistent bindings by editing the configuration file or by using the `lputil` utility.

   NOTE: HP recommends that you assign target IDs in sequence, and that the EVA has the same target ID on each host in the SAN.

   The following example for an P63x0/P65x0 EVAs illustrates the binding of targets 20 and 21 (lpfc instance 2) to WWPNs 50001fe100270938 and 50001fe100270939, and the binding of targets 30 and 31 (lpfc instance 0) to WWPNs 50001fe10027093a and 50001fe10027093b:

   ```
   fcp-bind-WWPN="50001fe100270938:lpfc2t20",
                 "50001fe100270939:lpfc2t21",
                 "50001fe10027093a:lpfc0t30",
                 "50001fe10027093b:lpfc0t31";
   ```

   NOTE: Replace the WWPNs in the example with the WWPNs of your array ports.

6. For each LUN that will be accessed, add an entry to the `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` file. For example, if you want to access LUNs 1 and 2 through all four paths, add the following entries to the end of the file:

   ```
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=20 lun=1;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=21 lun=1;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=30 lun=1;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=31 lun=1;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=20 lun=2;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=21 lun=2;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=30 lun=2;
   name="sd" parent="lpfc" target=31 lun=2;
   ```

7. Reboot the server to implement the changes to the configuration files.
8. If LUNs have been preconfigured in the `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` file, use the `devfsadm` command to perform LUN rediscovery after configuring the file.

NOTE: The lpfc driver is *not* supported for Oracle StorEdge Traffic Manager/Oracle Storage Multipathing. To configure an Emulex FCA using the Oracle SAN driver stack, see "Configuring FCAs with the Oracle SAN driver stack" (page 62).

Configuring QLogic FCAs with the qla2300 driver

See the latest Enterprise Virtual Array release notes or contact your HP representative to determine which QLogic FCAs and which driver version HP supports with the qla2300 driver. To configure QLogic FCAs with the qla2300 driver:

1. Ensure that you have the latest supported version of the qla2300 driver (see http://www.hp.com/storage/spock).
2. You must sign up for an HP Passport to enable access. For more information on how to use SPOCK, see the Getting Started Guide (http://h20272.www2.hp.com/Pages/spock_overview/introduction.html).
3. Edit the following parameters in the `/kernel/drv/qla2300.conf` driver configuration file to set up the FCAs for a SAN infrastructure (HBA0 is used in the example but the parameter edits apply to all HBAs):

   NOTE: If you are using a Oracle-branded QLogic FCA, the configuration file is `\kernel\dri\qlc.conf`.

   ```
   hba0-connection-options=1;
   hba0-link-down-timeout=60;
   hba0-persistent-binding-configuration=1;
   ```

   NOTE: If you are using Solaris 10, editing the persistent binding parameter is not required.

4. If using a single FCA and no multipathing, edit the following parameters to reduce the risk of data loss in case of a controller reboot:

   ```
   hba0-login-retry-count=60;
   hba0-port-down-retry-count=60;
   hba0-port-down-retry-delay=2;
   ```

   The `hba0-port-down-retry-delay` parameter is *not* supported with the 4.13.01 driver; the time between retries is fixed at approximately 2 seconds.

5. In a fabric topology, use persistent bindings to bind a SCSI target ID to the world wide port name (WWPN) of an array port. This ensures that the SCSI target IDs remain the same when the system reboots. Set persistent bindings by editing the configuration file or by using the `SANsurfer` utility.

   NOTE: Persistent binding is not required for QLogic FCAs if you are using Solaris10.

   The following example for a P63x0/P65x0 EVA illustrates the binding of targets 20 and 21 (hba instance 0) to WWPNs 50001fe100270938 and 50001fe100270939, and the binding of targets 30 and 31 (hba instance 1) to WWPNs 50001fe10027093a and 50001fe10027093b:

   ```
   hba0-SCSI-target-id-20-fibre-channel-port-name="50001fe100270938";
   hba0-SCSI-target-id-21-fibre-channel-port-name="50001fe10027093a";
   hba1-SCSI-target-id-30-fibre-channel-port-name="50001fe100270939";
   ```

```
hba1-SCSI-target-id-31-fibre-channel-port-name="50001fe10027093b";
```

NOTE: Replace the WWPNs in the example with the WWPNs of your array ports.

6. If the qla2300 driver is version 4.13.01 or earlier, for each LUN that users will access, add an entry to the `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` file:

```
name="sd" class="scsi" target=20 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=21 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=30 lun=1;
name="sd" class="scsi" target=31 lun=1;
```

   If LUNs are preconfigured in the `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` file, after changing the configuration file, use the `devfsadm` command to perform LUN rediscovery.

7. If the qla2300 driver is version 4.15 or later, verify that the following or a similar entry is present in the `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` file:

```
name="sd" parent="qla2300" target=2048;
```

   To perform LUN rediscovery after configuring the LUNs, use the following command:

```
/opt/QLogic_Corporation/drvutil/qla2300/qlreconfig –d qla2300 -s
```

8. Reboot the server to implement the changes to the configuration files.

NOTE: The qla2300 driver is *not* supported for Oracle StorEdge Traffic Manager/Oracle Storage Multipathing. To configure a QLogic FCA using the Oracle SAN driver stack, see "Configuring FCAs with the Oracle SAN driver stack" (page 62).

Fabric setup and zoning

To set up the fabric and zoning:

1. Verify that the Fibre Channel cable is connected and firmly inserted at the array ports, host ports, and SAN switch.
2. Through the Telnet connection to the switch or Switch utilities, verify that the WWN of the EVA ports and FCAs are present and online.
3. Create a zone consisting of the WWNs of the EVA ports and FCAs, and then add the zone to the active switch configuration.
4. Enable and then save the new active switch configuration.

NOTE: There are variations in the steps required to configure the switch between different vendors. For more information, see the *HP SAN Design Reference Guide*, available for downloading on the HP website: http://www.hp.com/go/sandesign.

Oracle StorEdge Traffic Manager (MPxIO)/Oracle Storage Multipathing

Oracle StorEdge Traffic Manager (MPxIO)/Oracle Storage Multipathing can be used for FCAs configured with the Oracle SAN driver and depending on the operating system version, architecture (SPARC/x86), and patch level installed. For configuration details, see the *HP StorageWorks MPxIO application notes*, available on the HP support website: http://www.hp.com/support/manuals.

NOTE: MPxIO is included in the SPARC and x86 Oracle SAN driver. A separate installation of MPxIO is not required.

In the `Search products` box, enter **`MPxIO`**, and then click the search symbol. Select the application notes from the search results.

Configuring with Veritas Volume Manager

The Dynamic Multipathing (DMP) feature of Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) can be used for all FCAs and all drivers. EVA disk arrays are certified for VxVM support. When you install FCAs, ensure that the driver parameters are set correctly. Failure to do so can result in a loss of path failover in DMP. For information about setting FCA parameters, see "Configuring FCAs with the Oracle SAN driver stack" (page 62) and the FCA manufacturer's instructions.

The DMP feature requires an Array Support Library (ASL) and an Array Policy Module (APM). The ASL/APM enables Asymmetric Logical Unit Access (ALUA). LUNs are accessed through the primary controller. After enablement, use the `vxdisk list <device>` command to determine the primary and secondary paths. For VxVM 4.1 (MP1 or later), you must download the ASL/APM from the Symantec/Veritas support site for installation on the host. This download and installation is *not* required for VxVM 5.0 or later.

To download and install the ASL/APM from the Symantec/Veritas support website:

1. Go to http://support.veritas.com.
2. Enter **Storage Foundation for UNIX/Linux** in the Product Lookup box.
3. Enter **EVA** in the Enter keywords or phrase box, and then click the search symbol.
4. To further narrow the search, select **Solaris** in the Platform box and search again.
5. Read `TechNotes` and follow the instructions to download and install the ASL/APM.
6. Run `vxdctl enable` to notify VxVM of the changes.
7. Verify the configuration of VxVM as shown in Example 3 "Verifying the VxVM configuration" (the output may be slightly different depending on your VxVM version and the array configuration).

Example 3 Verifying the VxVM configuration

```
# vxddladm listsupport all | grep HP
libvxhpevale.so       HP  HSV200,  HSV210

# vxddladm listsupport libname=libvxhpevale.so
ATTR_NAME            ATTR_VALUE
=======================================================================
LIBNAME              libvxhpevale.so
VID                  HP
PID                  HSV200, HSV210
ARRAY_TYPE           A/A-A-HP
ARRAY_NAME           EVA4K6K, EVA8000

# vxdmpadm listapm all | grep HP
dmphpalua          dmphpalua              1        A/A-A-HP          Active
# vxdmpadm listapm dmphpalua
Filename:               dmphpalua
APM name:               dmphpalua
APM version:            1
Feature:                VxVM
VxVM version:           41
Array Types Supported:  A/A-A-HP
Depending Array Types:  A/A-A
State:                  Active

# vxdmpadm listenclosure all
ENCLR_NAME        ENCLR_TYPE     ENCLR_SNO            STATUS       ARRAY_TYPE
=============================================================================
Disk              Disk           DISKS                CONNECTED    Disk
EVA81000          EVA8100        50001FE1002709E0     CONNECTED    A/A-A-HP
```

By default, the EVA I/O policy is set to `Round-Robin`. For VxVM 4.1 MP1, only one path is used for the I/Os with this policy. Therefore, HP recommends that you change the I/O policy to `Adaptive` in order to use all paths to the LUN on the primary controller. Example 4 "Setting the I/O policy" shows the commands you can use to check and change the I/O policy.

Example 4 Setting the I/O policy

```
# vxdmpadm getattr arrayname EVA8100 iopolicy
ENCLR_NAME     DEFAULT        CURRENT
============================================
EVA81000       Round-Robin    Round-Robin

# vxdmpadm setattr arrayname EVA81000 iopolicy=adaptive

# vxdmpadm getattr arrayname EVA8100 iopolicy
ENCLR_NAME     DEFAULT        CURRENT
============================================
EVA81000       Round-Robin    Adaptive
```

Configuring virtual disks from the host

The procedure used to configure the LUN path to the array depends on the FCA driver. For more information, see "Installing Fibre Channel adapters" (page 50).

To identify the WWLUN ID assigned to the virtual disk and/or the LUN assigned by the storage administrator:

- Oracle SAN driver, with MPxIO enabled:
  - You can use the `luxadm probe` command to display the array/node WWN and associated array for the devices.
  - The WWLUN ID is part of the device file name. For example:

    `/dev/rdsk/c5t`**`600508B4001030E40000500000B20000`**`d0s2`
  - If you use `luxadm display`, the LUN is displayed after the device address. For example:

    `50001fe1002709e9,`**`5`**
- Oracle SAN driver, without MPxIO:
  - The EVA WWPN is part of the file name (which helps you to identify the controller). For example:

    `/dev/rdsk/c3t`**`50001FE1002709E8`**`d5s2`
    `/dev/rdsk/c3t`**`50001FE1002709EC`**`d5s2`
    `/dev/rdsk/c4t`**`50001FE1002709E9`**`d5s2`
    `/dev/rdsk/c4t`**`50001FE1002709ED`**`d5s2`

    If you use `luxadm probe`, the array/node WWN and the associated device files are displayed.
  - You can retrieve the WWLUN ID as part of the `format -e` (scsi, inquiry) output; however, it is cumbersome and hard to read. For example:

```
09 e8 20 04 00 00 00 00 00 00 35 30 30 30 31 46     .........50001F
45 31 30 30 32 37 30 39 45 30 35 30 30 30 31 46     E1002709E050001F
45 31 30 30 32 37 30 39 45 38 36 30 30 35 30 38     E1002709E8600508
42 34 30 30 31 30 33 30 45 34 30 30 30 30 35 30     B4001030E4000050
30 30 30 30 42 32 30 30 30 30 00 00 00 00 00 00     0000B20000
```

  - The assigned LUN is part of the device file name. For example:

    `/dev/rdsk/c3t50001FE1002709E8d`**`5`**`s2`

    You can also retrieve the LUN with `luxadm display`. The LUN is displayed after the device address. For example:

```
50001fe1002709e9,5
```

- Emulex (lpfc)/QLogic (qla2300) drivers:
  - You can retrieve the WWPN by checking the assignment in the driver configuration file (the easiest method, because you then know the assigned target) or by using `HBAnyware/SANSurfer`.
  - You can retrieve the WWLUN ID by using `HBAnyware/SANSurfer`.

    You can also retrieve the WWLUN ID as part of the `format -e` (scsi, inquiry) output; however, it is cumbersome and difficult to read. For example:

```
09 e8 20 04 00 00 00 00 00 00 35 30 30 30 31 46     .........50001F
45 31 30 30 32 37 30 39 45 30 35 30 30 30 31 46     E1002709E050001F
45 31 30 30 32 37 30 39 45 38 36 30 30 35 30 38     E1002709E8600508
42 34 30 30 31 30 33 30 45 34 30 30 30 30 35 30     B4001030E4000050
30 30 30 30 42 32 30 30 30 30 00 00 00 00 00 00     0000B20000
```

  - The assigned LUN is part of the device file name. For example:

    `/dev/dsk/c4t20d5s2`

Verifying virtual disks from the host

Verify that the host can access virtual disks by using the `format` command. See Example 5 “Format command”.

Example 5 Format command

```
# format
Searching for disks...done
c2t50001FE1002709F8d1: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c2t50001FE1002709F8d2: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c2t50001FE1002709FCd1: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c2t50001FE1002709FCd2: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c3t50001FE1002709F9d1: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c3t50001FE1002709F9d2: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c3t50001FE1002709FDd1: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB
c3t50001FE1002709FDd2: configured with capacity of 1008.00MB

AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:

0. c0t0d0 <SUN18G cyl 7506 alt 2 hd 19 sec 248> /pci@1f,4000/scsi@3/sd@0,0
1. c2t50001FE1002709F8d1 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/QLGC,qla@4/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709f8,1
2. c2t50001FE1002709F8d2 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/QLGC,qla@4/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709f8,2
3. c2t50001FE1002709FCd1 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/QLGC,qla@4/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709fc,1
4. c2t50001FE1002709FCd2 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/QLGC,qla@4/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709fc,2
5. c3t50001FE1002709F9d1 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/lpfc@5/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709f9,1
6. c3t50001FE1002709F9d2 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/lpfc@5/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709f9,2
7. c3t50001FE1002709FDd1 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/lpfc@5/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709fd,1
8. c3t50001FE1002709FDd2 <HP-HSV210-5100 cyl 126 alt 2 hd 128 sec 128>
     /pci@1f,4000/lpfc@5/fp@0,0/ssd@w50001fe1002709fd,2
Specify disk (enter its number):
```

If you cannot access the virtual disks:

- Verify the zoning.
- For Oracle Solaris, verify that the correct WWPNs for the EVA (`lpfc`, `qla2300` driver) have been configured and the target assignment is matched in `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` (`lpfc` and `qla2300 4.13.01`).

Labeling and partitioning the devices

Label and partition the new devices using the Oracle format utility:

△ **CAUTION:** When selecting disk devices, be careful to select the correct disk because using the label/partition commands on disks that have data can cause data loss.

1. Enter the **`format`** command at the root prompt to start the utility.
2. Verify that all new devices are displayed. If not, enter `quit` or press **Ctrl+D** to exit the format utility, and then verify that the configuration is correct (see "Configuring virtual disks from the host" (page 67)).
3. Record the character-type device file names (for example, `c1t2d0`) for all new disks.

   You will use this data to create the file systems or to use the file systems with the Solaris or Veritas Volume Manager.
4. When prompted to specify the disk, enter the number of the device to be labeled.
5. When prompted to label the disk, enter **`Y`**.
6. Because the virtual geometry of the presented volume varies with size, select `autoconfigure` as the disk type.

7. For each new device, use the disk command to select another disk, and then repeat 1 through 6.
8. Repeat this labeling procedure for each new device. (Use the `disk` command to select another disk.)
9. When you finish labeling the disks, enter **`quit`** or press **Ctrl+D** to exit the format utility.

   For more information, see the *System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems* for your operating system, available on the Oracle website: http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/index.html.

NOTE: Some format commands are not applicable to the EVA storage systems.

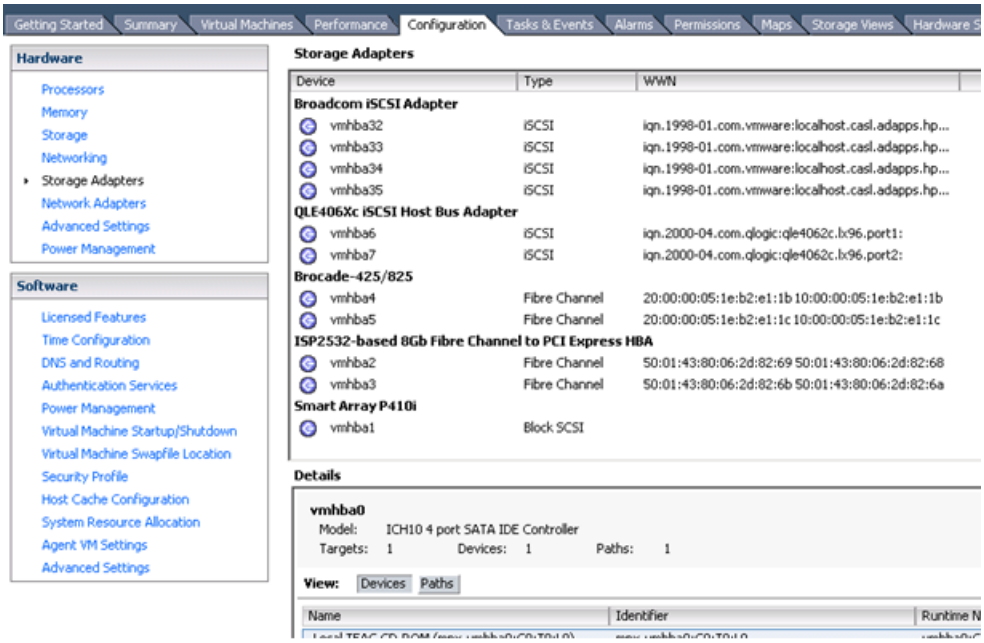
VMware

Configuring the EVA with VMware host servers

To configure an EVA with a VMware ESX server:

1. Using HP P6000 Command View, configure a host for one ESX server.
2. Verify that the Fibre Channel Adapters (FCAs) are populated in the world wide port name (WWPN) list. Edit the WWPN, if necessary.
3. Set the connection type to `VMware`.
4. Add a port to the host defined in 1. Do *not* add host entries for servers with more than one FCA.
5. Check the VMware vCenter management GUI to find out the WWPN of your server (see diagram below).

Figure 21 VMware vCenter management GUI



6. Repeat this procedure for each ESX server.

Configuring an ESX server

This section provides information about configuring the ESX server.

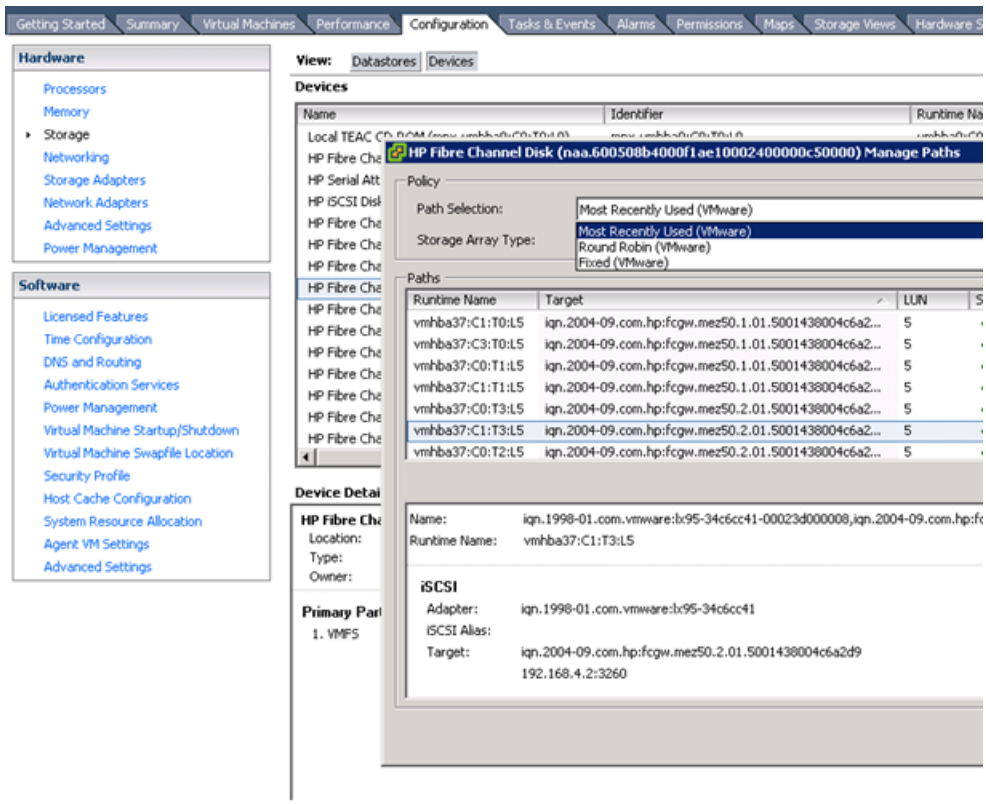
Setting the multipathing policy

You can set the multipathing policy for each LUN or logical drive on the SAN to one of the following:

- Most recently used (MRU)
- Fixed
- Round robin

To change multipathing policy, use the **VMware vSphere GUI** interface under the **Configuration** tab and select **Storage**. Then select **Devices**.

Figure 22 Setting multipathing policy



Use the GUI to change policies, or you can use the following commands from the CLI:

ESX 4.x commands

- The `# esxcli nmp device setpolicy --device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000 --psp VMW_PSP_MRU` command sets `device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000` with an MRU multipathing policy.
- The `# esxcli nmp device setpolicy --device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000 --psp VMW_PSP_FIXED` command sets `device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000` with a Fixed multipathing policy.
- The `# esxcli nmp device setpolicy --device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000 --psp VMW_PSP_RR` command sets `device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000` with a RoundRobin multipathing policy.

NOTE: Each LUN can be accessed through both EVA storage controllers at the same time; however, each LUN path is optimized through one controller. To optimize performance, if the LUN multipathing policy is Fixed, all servers must use a path to the same controller.

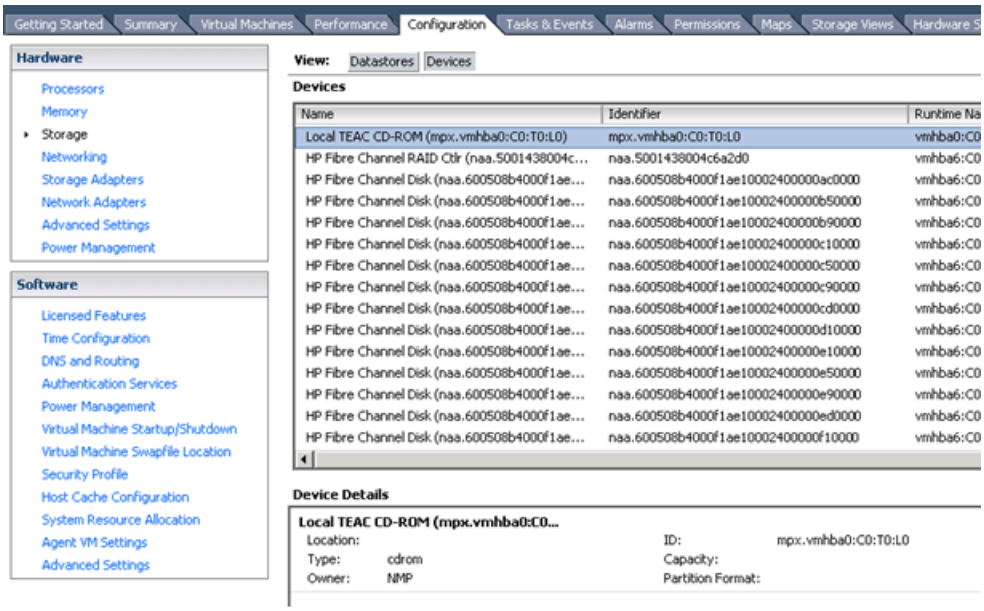
You can also set the multipathing policy from the VMware Management User Interface (MUI) by clicking the **Failover Paths** tab in the Storage Management section and then selecting **Edit... link** for each LUN whose policy you want to modify.

ESXi 5.x commands

- The `# esxcli storage nmp device set --device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000 --psp VMW_PSP_MRU` command sets `device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000` with an MRU multipathing policy.
- The `# esxcli storage nmp device set --device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000 --psp VMW_PSP_FIXED` command sets `device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000` with an Fixed multipathing policy.
- The `# esxcli storage nmp device set --device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000 --psp VMW_PSP_RR` command sets `device naa.6001438002a56f220001100000710000` with a RoundRobin multipathing policy.

Verifying virtual disks from the host

Use the **VMware vCenter management GUI** to check all devices (see figure below).



HP P6000 EVA Software Plug-in for VMware VAAI

The vSphere Storage API for Array Integration (VAAI) is included in VMware vSphere solutions. VAAI can be used to offload certain functions from the target VMware host to the storage array. With the tasks being performed more efficiently by the array instead of the target VMware host, performance can be greatly enhanced.

The HP P6000 EVA Software Plug-in for VMware VAAI (VAAI Plug-in) enables the offloading of the following functions (primitives) to the EVA:

- Full copy—Enables the array to make full copies of data within the array, without the ESX server having to read and write the data.
- Block zeroing—Enables the array to zero out a large number of blocks to speed up provisioning of virtual machines.
- Hardware assisted locking—Provides an alternative means to protect the metadata for VMFS cluster file systems, thereby improving the scalability of large ESX server farms sharing a datastore.
- Block Space Reclamation—Enables the array to reclaim storage block space on thin provisioned volumes upon receiving command from ESX server 5.1x or later.

System prerequisites

VMware operating system:	ESX/ESXi 4.1
VMware management station:	VMware vCenter 4.1
VMware administration tools:	ESX/ESXi 4.1 environments: vCLI 4.1 (Windows or Linux) ESX 5.0 ESX 5.1
HP P6000 controller software:	XCS 11001000 or later

Enabling vSphere Storage API for Array Integration (VAAI)

To enable the VAAI primitives, do the following:

NOTE: By default, the four VAAI primitives are enabled.

NOTE: The EVA VAAI Plug-In is required with vSphere 4.1 in order to permit discovery of the EVA VAAI capability. This is not required for vSphere 5 or later.

1. Install the XCS controller software.
2. Enable the primitives from the ESX server.

   Enable and disable these primitives through the following advanced settings:

   - DataMover.HardwareAcceleratedMove (full copy)
   - DataMover.HardwareAcceleratedInit (block zeroing)
   - VMFS3.HarwareAccelerated Locking (hardware assisted locking)

   For more information about the vSphere Storage API for Array Integration (VAAI), see the *ESX Server Configuration Guide*.
3. Install the HP EVA VAAI Plug-in.

   For information about installing the VAAI Plug-in, see "Installing the VAAI Plug-in" (page 74).

Installing the VAAI Plug-in

Depending on user preference and environment, choose one of the following three methods to install the HP EVA VAAI Plug-in:

- Using ESX host console utilities
- vCLI/vMA
- Using VUM

The following table compares the three VAAI Plug-in installation methods:

Table 12 Comparison of installation methods

Installation method	Required deployment tools	Host Operating System	Client operating system	VMware commands used	Scriptable
ESX host console utilities—Local console	N/A	ESX 4.1	N/A	`esxupdate` `esxcli`	Yes (`eva-vaaip.sh`)
ESX host console utilities—Remote console	SSH tool, such as PuTTy		Any computer running SSH		
VMware CLI (vCLI)	VMware vSphere CLI	ESX 4.1, ESXi 4.1	Windows XPWindows VistaWindows 7Windows Server 2003Windows Server 2008 Linux x86Linux x64	`vicfg-hostops.pl` `vihostupdate.pl`	Yes (`eva-vaaip.pl`)
VM Appliance (vMA)	N/A		N/A		
VMware Update Manager (VUM)	VMware vSphere ServerVMware Update Manager	ESX 4.1, ESXi 4.1	Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008	VUM graphical user interface	No

Installation overview

Regardless of installation method, key installation tasks include:

1. Obtaining the HP VAAI Plug-in software bundle from the HP website.
2. Extracting files from HP VAAI Plug-in software bundle to a temporary location on the server.

3. Placing the target VMware host in maintenance mode.
4. Invoking the software tool to install the HP VAAI Plug-in.

   Automated installation steps include:

   a. Installing the HP VAAI plug-in driver (`hp_vaaip_p6000`) on the target VMware host.
   b. Adding VIB details to the target VMware host.
   c. Creating VAAI claim rules.
   d. Loading and executing VAAI claim rules.
5. Restarting the target VMware host.
6. Taking the target VMware host out of maintenance mode.

After installing the HP VAAI Plug-in, the operating system will execute all VAAI claim rules and scan every five minutes to check for any array volumes that may have been added to the target VMware host. If new volumes are detected, they will become VAAI enabled.

Installing the HP EVA VAAI Plug-in using ESX host console utilities

NOTE: This installation method is supported for use only with VAAI Plug-in version 1.00, in ESX/ESXi 4.1 environments. This is required for ESX 4.1, but not for ESX 5i.

1. Obtain the VAAI Plug-in software package and save to a local folder on the target VMware host:
   a. Go to the HP Support Downloads website at http://www.hp.com/support/downloads.
   b. Navigate through the display to locate and then download the HP P6000 EVA Software Plug-in for VMware VAAI to a temporary folder on the server. (Example folder location: `/root/vaaip`)
2. Install the VAAI Plug-in.

   From the ESX service console, enter a command using the following syntax:

   `esxupdate --bundle hp_vaaip_p6000-xxx.zip --maintenance mode update`

   (where `hp_vaaip_p6000-xxx.zip` represents the filename of the VAAI Plug-in.)
3. Restart the target VMware host.

4. Verify the installation:
   a. Check for new HP P6000 claim rules.

      Using the service console, enter:

      ```
      esxcli corestorage claimrule list -c VAAI
      ```

      The return display will be similar to the following:

      ```
      Rule Class  Rule   Class     Type     Plugin            Matches
      VAAI        5001   runtime   vendor   hp_vaaip_p6000    vendor=HP model=HSV
      VAAI        5001   file      vendor   hp_vaaip_p6000    vendor=HP model=HSV
      ```

   b. Check for claimed storage devices.

      Using the service console, enter:

      ```
      esxcli vaai device list
      ```

      The return display will be similar to the following:

      ```
      aa.600c0ff00010e1cbc7523f4d01000000
         Device Display Name: HP iSCSI Disk (naa.600c0ff00010e1cbc7523f4d01000000)
         VAAI Plugin Name: hp_vaaip_P6000

      naa.600c0ff000da030b521bb64b01000000
         Device Display Name: HP Fibre Channel Disk (naa.600c0ff000da030b521bb64b01000000)
         VAAI Plugin Name: hp_vaaip_P6000
      ```

   c. Check the VAAI status on the storage devices.

      Using the service console, enter:

      ```
      esxcfg-scsidevs -l | egrep "Display Name:|VAAI Status:"
      ```

      The return display will be similar to the following:

      ```
      Display Name: Local TEAC CD-ROM (mpx.vmhba5:C0:T0:L0)
      VAAI Status: unknown
      Display Name: HP Serial Attached SCSI Disk (naa.600508b1001052395659314e39440200)
      VAAI Status: unknown
      Display Name: HP Serial Attached SCSI Disk (naa.600c0ff0001087439023704d01000000)
      VAAI Status: supported
      Display Name: HP Serial Attached SCSI Disk (naa.600c0ff0001087d28323704d01000000)
      VAAI Status: supported
      Display Name: HP Fibre Channel Disk (naa.600c0ff000f00186a622b24b01000000)
      VAAI Status: unknown
      ```

Table 13 Possible VAAI device status values

Value	Description
Unknown	The array volume is hosted by a non-supported VAAI array.
Supported	The volume is hosted by a supported VAAI array (such as the HP P6000 EVA) and all three VAAI commands completed successfully.
Not supported	The volume is hosted by a supported VAAI array (such as the HP P6000 EVA), but all three VAAI commands did not complete successfully.

NOTE: VAAI device status will be "Unknown" until all VAAI primitives are attempted by ESX on the device and completed successfully. Upon completion, VAAI device status will be “Supported."

Installing the HP VAAI Plug-in using vCLI/vMA

NOTE: This installation method is supported for use only with VAAI Plug-in version 1.00, in ESX/ESXi 4.1 environments.

1. Obtain the VAAI Plug-in software package and save to a local folder on the target VMware host:
   a. Go to the HP Support Downloads website at http://www.hp.com/support/downloads.
   b. Locate the HP P6000 Software Plug-in for VMware VAAI and then download it to a temporary folder on the server.

2. Enter maintenance mode.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   vicfg-hostops.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username
   User_Name--password Account_Password -o enter
   ```

3. Install the VAAI Plug-in using `vihostupdate`.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   vihostupdate.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name
   --password Account_Password --bundle
   hp_vaaip_p6000_offline-bundle-xyz --install
   ```

4. Restart the target VMware host.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   vicfg-hostops.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username
   User_Name--password Account_Password -o reboot -f
   ```

5. Exit maintenance mode.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   vicfg-hostops.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username
   User_Name--password Account_Password -o exit
   ```

6. Verify the claimed VAAI device.

   a. Check for new HP P6000 claim rules.

      Enter a command using the following syntax:

      ```
      esxcli --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name --password
      Account_Password corestorage claimrule list –c VAAI
      ```

      The return display will be similar to the following:

      ```
      Rule Class  Rule   Class     Type     Plugin           Matches
      VAAI        5001   runtime   vendor   hp_vaaip_p6000   vendor=HP model=HSV
      VAAI        5001   file      vendor   hp_vaaip_p6000   vendor=HP model=HSV
      ```

   b. Check for claimed storage devices.

      List all devices claimed by the VAAI Plug-in.

      Enter a command using the following syntax:

      ```
      esxcli --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name --password
      Account_Password vaai device list
      ```

      The return display will be similar to the following:

      ```
      naa.600c0ff00010e1cbc7523f4d01000000
         Device Display Name: HP iSCSI Disk (naa.600c0ff00010e1cbc7523f4d01000000)
         VAAI Plugin Name: hp_vaaip_p6000

      naa.600c0ff000da030b521bb64b01000000
         Device Display Name: HP Fibre Channel Disk (naa.600c0ff000da030b521bb64b01000000)
         VAAI Plugin Name: hp_vaaip_p6000
      ```

   c. Check the VAAI status on the storage devices. Use the vCenter Management Station as listed in the following section.

Table 14 Possible VAAI device status values

Value	Description
Unknown	The array volume is hosted by a non-supported VAAI array.
Supported	The array volume is hosted by a supported VAAI array and all three VAAI commands completed successfully.
Not supported	The array volume is hosted by a supported VAAI array, but all three VAAI commands did not complete successfully.

NOTE: VAAI device status will be "Unknown" until all VAAI primitives are attempted by ESX on the device and completed successfully. Upon completion, VAAI device status will be “Supported."

Installing the VAAI Plug-in using VUM

NOTE:

- This installation method is supported for use with VAAI Plug-in versions 1.00 and 2.00, in ESX/ESXi 4.1 environments.
- Installing the plug-in using VMware Update Manager is the recommended method.

Installing the VAAI Plug-in using VUM consists of two steps:

1. “Importing the VAAI Plug-in to the vCenter Server” (page 78)
2. “Installing the VAAI Plug-in on each ESX/ESXi host” (page 79)

Importing the VAAI Plug-in to the vCenter Server

1. Obtain the VAAI Plug-in software package and save it on the system that has VMware vSphere client installed:
   a. Go to the HP Support Downloads website at http://www.hp.com/support/downloads.
   b. Locate the HP P6000 EVA Software Plug-in for VMware VAAI and then download it to a temporary folder on the server.
   c. Expand the contents of the downloaded `.zip` file into the temporary folder and locate the HP EVA VAAI offline bundle file. The filename will be in one of the following formats:

      `hp_vaaip_p6000_offline-bundle_xyz.zip`

      (where `xyz` represents the VAAI Plug-in version.)
2. Open VUM:
   a. Double-click the **VMware vSphere Client** icon on your desktop, and then log in to the vCenter Server using administrator privileges.
   b. Click the **Home** icon in the navigation bar.
   c. In the Solutions and Applications pane, click the **Update Manager** icon to start VUM.

      NOTE: If the Solutions and Applications pane is missing, the VUM Plug-in is not installed on your vCenter Client system. Use the vCenter Plug-ins menu to install VUM.
3. Import the Plug-in:
   a. Select the **Patch Repository** tab.
   b. Click **Import Patches** in the upper right corner. The Import Patches dialog window will appear.
   c. Browse to the extracted HP P6000 VAAI offline bundle file. The filename will be in the following format: `hp_vaaip_p6000-xyz.zip` or `hp_vaaip_p6000_offline-bundle-xyz.zip`, where `xyz` will vary, depending on the VAAI Plug-in version. Select the file and then click Next.
   d. Wait for the import process to complete.
   e. Click **Finish**.

4. Create a new Baseline set for this offline plug-in:
   a. Select the **Baselines and Groups** tab.
   b. Above the left pane, click **Create**.
   c. In the New Baseline window:
      - Enter a name and a description. (Example: HP P6000 Baseline and VAAI Plug-in for HP EVA)
      - Select **Host Extension**.
      - Click **Next** to proceed to the Extensions window.
   d. In the Extensions window:
      - Select **HP EVA VAAI Plug-in for VMware vSphere x.x**, where x.x represents the plug-in version.
      - Click the down arrow to add the plug-in in the Extensions to Add panel at the bottom of the display.
      - Click **Next** to proceed.
      - Click **Finish** to complete the task and return to the **Baselines and Groups** tab.

   The HP P6000 Baseline should now be listed in the left pane.

Importing the VAAI Plug-in is complete. To install the plug-in, see "Installing the VAAI Plug-in on each ESX/ESXi host" (page 79).

Installing the VAAI Plug-in on each ESX/ESXi host

1. From the vCenter Server, click the **Home** icon in the navigation bar.
2. Click the **Hosts and Clusters** icon in the Inventory pane.
3. Click the DataCenter that has the ESX/ESXi hosts that you want to stage.
4. Click the **Update Manager** tab. VUM automatically evaluates the software recipe compliance for all ESX/ESXi Hosts.
5. Above the right pane, click **Attach** to open the **Attach Baseline or Group** dialog window.

   Select the HP P6000 Baseline entry, and then click **Attach**.
6. To ensure that the patch and extensions compliance content is synchronized, again click the DataCenter that has the ESX/ESXi hosts that you want to stage. Then, in the left panel, right-click the **DataCenter** icon and select **Scan for Updates**. When prompted, ensure that Patches and Extensions is selected, and then click **Scan**.
7. Stage the installation:
   a. Click **Stage** to open the Stage Wizard.
   b. Select the target VMware hosts for the extension that you want to install, and then click **Next**.
   c. Click **Finish**.
8. Complete the installation:
   a. Click **Remediate** to open the Remediation Wizard.
   b. Select the target VMware host that you want to remediate, and then click **Next**.
   c. Make sure that the HP EVA VAAI extension is selected, and then click **Next**.
   d. Fill in the related information, and then click **Next**.
   e. Click **Finish**.

Installing the VAAI Plug in is complete. View the display for a summary of which ESX/ESXi hosts are compliant with the vCenter patch repository.

NOTE:

- In the Tasks & Events section, the following tasks should have a Completed status: Remediate entry, Install, and Check.
- If any of the above tasks has an error, click the task to view the detail events information.

Verifying VAAI status

1. From the vCenter Server, click the **Home Navigation** bar and then click **Hosts and Clusters**.
2. Select the target VMware host from the list and then click the **Configuration** tab.
3. Click the **Storage Link** under Hardware.

Table 15 Possible VAAI device status values

Value	Description
Unknown	The array volume is hosted by a non-supported VAAI array.
Supported	The array volume is hosted by a supported VAAI array (such as the HP P6000) and all three VAAI commands completed successfully.
Not supported	The array volume is hosted by a supported VAAI array (such as the HP P6000), but all three VAAI commands did not complete successfully.

Uninstalling the VAAI Plug-in

Procedures vary, depending on user preference and environment:

Uninstalling VAAI Plug-in using the automated script (hpeva.pl)

1. Enter maintenance mode.
2. Query the installed VAAI Plug-in to determine the name of the bulletin to uninstall.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   c:\>hpeva.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name --password
   Account_Password --query
   ```
3. Uninstall the VAAI Plug-in.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   c:\>hpeva.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name --password
   Account_Password --bulletin Bulletin_Name --remove
   ```
4. Restart the host.
5. Exit maintenance mode.

Uninstalling VAAI Plug-in using vCLI/vMA (vihostupdate)

1. Enter maintenance mode.
2. Query the installed VAAI Plug-in to determine the name of the VAAI Plug-in bulletin to uninstall.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   c:\>vihostupdate.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name
   --password Account_Password --query
   ```
3. Uninstall the VAAI Plug-in.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   c:\>vihostupdate.pl --server Host_IP_Address --username User_Name
   --password Account_Password --bulletin
   0-HPQ-ESX-4.1.0-hp-vaaip-p6000-1.0.10 --remove
   ```
4. Restart the host.
5. Exit maintenance mode.

Uninstalling VAAI Plug-in using VMware native tools (esxupdate)

1. Enter maintenance mode.
2. Query the installed VAAI Plug-in to determine the name of the VAAI Plug-in bulletin to uninstall.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   $host# esxupdate --vib-view query | grep hp-vaaip-p6000
   ```
3. Uninstall the VAAI Plug-in.

   Enter a command using the following syntax:

   ```
   $host# esxupdate remove -b VAAI_Plug_In_Bulletin_Name
   --maintenancemode
   ```
4. Restart the host.
5. Exit maintenance mode.

4 Replacing array components

Customer self repair (CSR)

Table 16 (page 83) and Table 17 (page 84) identify hardware components that are customer replaceable. Using HP Insight Remote Support software or other diagnostic tools, a support specialist will work with you to diagnose and assess whether a replacement component is required to address a system problem. The specialist will also help you determine whether you can perform the replacement.

Parts-only warranty service

Your HP Limited Warranty may include a parts-only warranty service. Under the terms of parts-only warranty service, HP will provide replacement parts free of charge.

For parts-only warranty service, CSR part replacement is mandatory. If you request HP to replace these parts, you will be charged for travel and labor costs.

Best practices for replacing hardware components

The following information will help you replace the hardware components on your storage system successfully.

△ **CAUTION:** Removing a component significantly changes the air flow within the enclosure. Components or a blanking panel must be installed for the enclosure to cool properly. If a component fails, leave it in place in the enclosure until a new component is available to install.

Component replacement videos

To assist you in replacing components, videos of the procedures have been produced. To view the videos, go to the following website and navigate to your product:

http://www.hp.com/go/sml

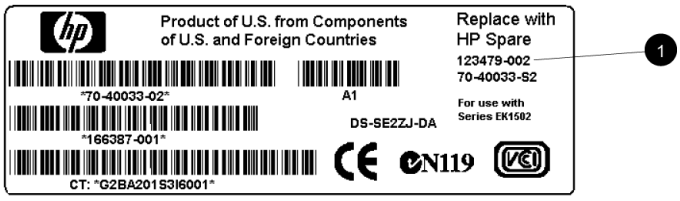
Verifying component failure

- Consult HP technical support to verify that the hardware component has failed and that you are authorized to replace it yourself.
- Additional hardware failures can complicate component replacement. Check your management utilities to detect any additional hardware problems:
  - When you have confirmed that a component replacement is required, you may want to clear the failure message from the display. This makes it easier to identify additional hardware problems that may occur while waiting for the replacement part.
  - Before installing the replacement part, check the management utility for new hardware problems. If additional hardware problems have occurred, contact HP support before replacing the component.
  - See the System Event Analyzer online help for additional information.

Identifying the spare part

Parts have a nine-character spare part number on their label (Figure 23 (page 83)). For some spare parts, the part number will be available in HP P6000 Command View. Alternatively, the HP call center will assist in identifying the correct spare part number.

Figure 23 Example of typical product label



8053A-ST

1. Spare component number

Replaceable parts

This product contains the replaceable parts listed in "Controller enclosure replacement parts " (page 83) and "Disk enclosure replaceable parts " (page 84). Parts that are available for customer self repair (CSR) are indicated as follows:

✓ Mandatory CSR where geography permits. Order the part directly from HP and repair the product yourself. On-site or return-to-depot repair is not provided under warranty.

• Optional CSR. You can order the part directly from HP and repair the product yourself, or you can request that HP repair the product. If you request repair from HP, you may be charged for the repair depending on the product warranty.

– No CSR. The replaceable part is not available for self repair. For assistance, contact an HP-authorized service provider

Table 16 Controller enclosure replacement parts

Description	Spare part number	CSR status
4 Gb P63x0 array controller (HSV340)	537151–001	•
4 Gb P63x0 array controller (HSV340) with iSCSI (MEZ50–1GbE)	537152–001	•
4 Gb P63x0 array controller (HSV340) with iSCSI (MEZ75–10GbE)	613468–001	•
4 Gb P65x0 array controller (HSV360)	537153–001	•
4 Gb P65x0 array controller (HSV360) with iSCSI/FCoE (MEZ50–10GbE)	537154–001	•
4 Gb P65x0 array controller (HSV360) with iSCSI/FCoE (MEZ75)	613469–001	•
1 GB cache DIMM for P63x0 controller	587246–001	•
2 GB cache DIMM for P63x0/P65x0 controller	583721–001	•
4 GB cache DIMM for P65x0 controller	681646-001	•
Array battery for P63x0/P65x0 controller (8 CELL)	671987-001	✓
Array battery for P63x0/P65x0 controller (6 CELL)	671988-001	✓
Array battery	460581–001	✓
Array power supply	519842–001	✓
Array fan module	460583–001	✓
Array management module	460584–005	✓
Array LED membrane display	461489–001	•
Array midplane	461490–005	•

Table 16 Controller enclosure replacement parts *(continued)*

Description	Spare part number	CSR status
Array riser assembly	461491–005	•
Array power UID	466264–001	•
P6300 bezel assembly	583395–001	✓
P6500 bezel assembly	583396–001	✓
P63x0 bezel assembly	676972-001	✓
P65x0 bezel assembly	676973-001	✓
Y-cable, 2 m	583399–001	•
SAS cable, SPS-CA, EXT Mini SAS, 2M	408767-001	•

Table 17 Disk enclosure replaceable parts

Description	Spare part number	CSR status
Disk drive, 300 GB, 10K, SFF, 6G, M6625, SAS	583711–001	✓
Disk drive, 450 GB, 10K, SFF, 6G, M6625, SAS	613921–001	✓
Disk drive, 600 GB, 10K, SFF, 6G, M6625, SAS	613922–001	✓
Disk drive, 146 GB, 15K, SFF, 6G, M6625, SAS	583713–001	✓
Disk drive, 200 GB, 15K, LFF, 6G, M6612,SAS	660676-001	✓
Disk drive, 300 GB, 15K, LFF, 6G, M6612,SAS	583716–001	✓
Disk drive, 400 GB, 15K, LFF, 6G, M6612,SAS	660677-001	✓
Disk drive, 450 GB, 15K, LFF, 6G, M6612, SAS	583717–001	✓
Disk drive, 600 GB, 15K, LFF, 6G, M6612, SAS	583718–001	✓
Disk drive, 500 GB, 7.2K, SFF, 6G, M6625, SAS-MDL	583714–001	✓
Disk drive, 900 GB, 7.2K, SFF, 6G, M6625, SAS-MDL	665749-001	✓
Disk drive, 1000 GB, 7.2K, LFF, 6G, M6612, SAS-MDL	660678-001	✓
Disk drive, 2 TB, 7.2K, LFF, 6G, M6612, SAS-MDL	602119–001	✓
Disk drive, 3 TB, 7.2K, LFF, 6G, M6612, SAS-MDL	687045-001	✓
I/O board, SAS, 2600	519316–001	•
I/O board, SAS, 2700	519320–001	•
Voltage Regulator Module (VRM)	519324-001	•
Front Unit ID	519322-001	•
Power supply, 460W	511777-001	✓
Backplane, 12 slot, SAS, 2600	519317-001	•
Backplane, 25 slot, SAS, 2700	519321-001	•
Fan module	519325-001	✓
Fan module interconnect board	519323-001	•
Bezel kit	581330-001	–
Rear power UID	519319-001	•

Table 17 Disk enclosure replaceable parts *(continued)*

Description	Spare part number	CSR status
External mini-SAS Cable, 0.5m	408765-001	•
Rackmount kit, 1U/2U	519318-001	•

For more information about CSR, contact your local service provider or see the CSR website:

http://www.hp.com/go/selfrepair

To determine the warranty service provided for this product, see the warranty information website:

http://www.hp.com/go/storagewarranty

To order a replacement part, contact an HP-authorized service provider or see the HP Parts Store online:

http://www.hp.com/buy/parts

Replacing the failed component

CAUTION: Components can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). Use proper anti-static protection.

- Always transport and store CRUs in an ESD protective enclosure.
- Do not remove the CRU from the ESD protective enclosure until you are ready to install it.
- Always use ESD precautions, such as a wrist strap, heel straps on conductive flooring, and an ESD protective smock when handling ESD sensitive equipment.
- Avoid touching the CRU connector pins, leads, or circuitry.
- Do not place ESD generating material such as paper or non anti-static (pink) plastic in an ESD protective enclosure with ESD sensitive equipment.

- HP recommends waiting until periods of low storage system activity to replace a component.
- When replacing components at the rear of the rack, cabling may obstruct access to the component. Carefully move any cables out of the way to avoid loosening any connections. In particular, avoid cable damage that may be caused by:
  - Kinking or bending.
  - Disconnecting cables without capping. If uncapped, cable performance may be impaired by contact with dust, metal or other surfaces.
  - Placing removed cables on the floor or other surfaces, where they may be walked on or otherwise compressed.

Replacement instructions

Printed instructions are shipped with the replacement part. Instructions for all replaceable components are also included on the documentation CD that ships with the P63x0/P65x0 EVA and posted on the web. For the latest information, HP recommends that you obtain the instructions from the web.

Go to the following web site: http://www.hp.com/support/manuals. Under Storage, select **Disk Storage Systems**, then select **HP P6300/P6500 Enterprise Virtual Array Systems** under P6000/EVA Disk Arrays. The manuals page for the P63x0/P65x0 EVA appears. Scroll to the Service and maintenance information section where the following replacement instructions are posted:

- *HP P6300/P6500 EVA FC Controller Enclosure Replacement Instructions*
- *HP P6300/P6500 EVA FC-iSCSI Controller Enclosure Replacement Instructions*

- *HP Controller Enclosure Battery Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure Cache DIMM Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure Fan Module Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure LED Display Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure Management Module Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure Midplane Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure Power Supply Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Controller Enclosure Riser Assembly Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Large Form Factor Disk Enclosure Backplane Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Small Form Factor Disk Enclosure Backplane Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Enclosure Fan Module Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Enclosure Fan Interconnect Board Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Enclosure Front Power UID interconnect board Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Enclosure I/O Module Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Enclosure VRM Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Enclosure Rear Power UID Interconnect Board Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Power UID Replacement Instructions*
- *HP Disk Drive Replacement Instructions*

5 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE configuration rules and guidelines

This chapter describes the iSCSI configuration rules and guidelines for the HP P6000 iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules.

iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module rules and supported maximums

The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules are configured in a dual-controller configuration in the HP P6000. Dual-controller configurations provide for high availability with failover between iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules. All configurations are supported as redundant pairs only. iSCSI connected servers can be configured for access to one or both controllers.

HP P6000 Command View and iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module management rules and guidelines

The HP P6000 Command View implementation provides the equivalent functionality for both iSCSI, iSCSI/FCoE, and Fibre Channel connected servers. Management functions are integrated in HP P6000 Command View.

The following are the HP P6000 Command View rules and guidelines for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules:

- Requires HP P6000 Command View for array-based and server-based management
- HP P6000 Command View manages the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules out of band (IP) through the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller management IP ports. The HP P6000 Command View application server must be on the same IP network and in the same subnet with the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's management IP port.
- The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module iSCSI and FCoE Initiators or iSCSI LUN masking information does not reside in the HP P6000 Command View database. All iSCSI Initiator and LUN presentation information resides in the iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules.
- The default iSCSI Initiator EVA host mode setting is Microsoft Windows. The iSCSI initiator for Apple Mac OS X, Linux, Oracle Solaris, VMware, Windows 2008, and Windows 2012 host mode setting is configured with HP P6000 Command View.

NOTE: Communication between HP P6000 Command View and the iSCSI modules is not secured by the communication protocol. If this unsecured communication is a concern, HP recommends a confined or secured IP network within a data center for this purpose.

HP P63x0/P65x0 EVA storage system software

The iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules are not supported with HP P6000 Continuous Access.

Fibre Channel over Ethernet switch and fabric support

The iSCSI/FCoE modules provide FCoE target functionality. This enables server side FCoE connectivity from Converged Network Adapters (CNAs) over 10 GbE lossless links and converged network switches to the HP P6000 to realize end-to-end FCoE configurations. A simplified example is illustrated in Figure 25 (page 88). HP P6000 Command View supports the iSCSI/FCoE module's FCoE LUN presentations while simultaneously servicing Fibre Channel and iSCSI hosts. The iSCSI/FCoE modules support simultaneous operation of iSCSI and FCoE on each port.

The iSCSI/FCoE modules are supported with HP B-series and C-series product line converged network switch models.

Figure 24 Mixed FC and FCoE storage configuration using FC and FCoE storage targets

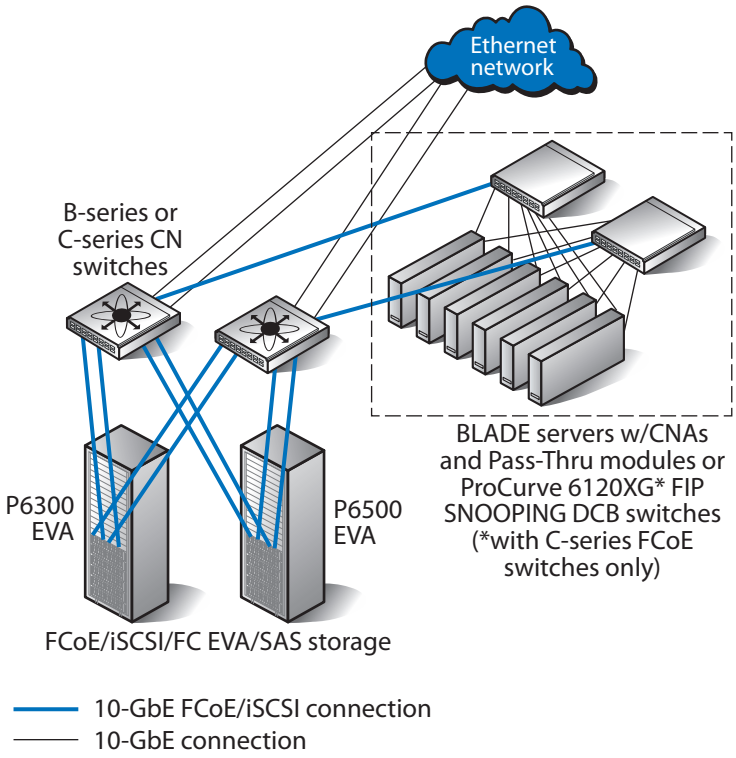
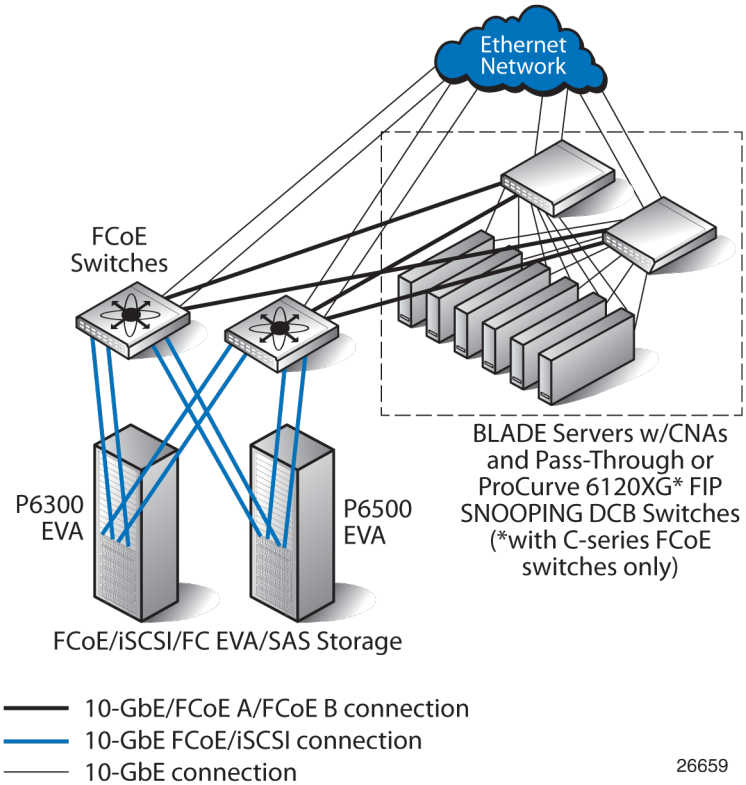
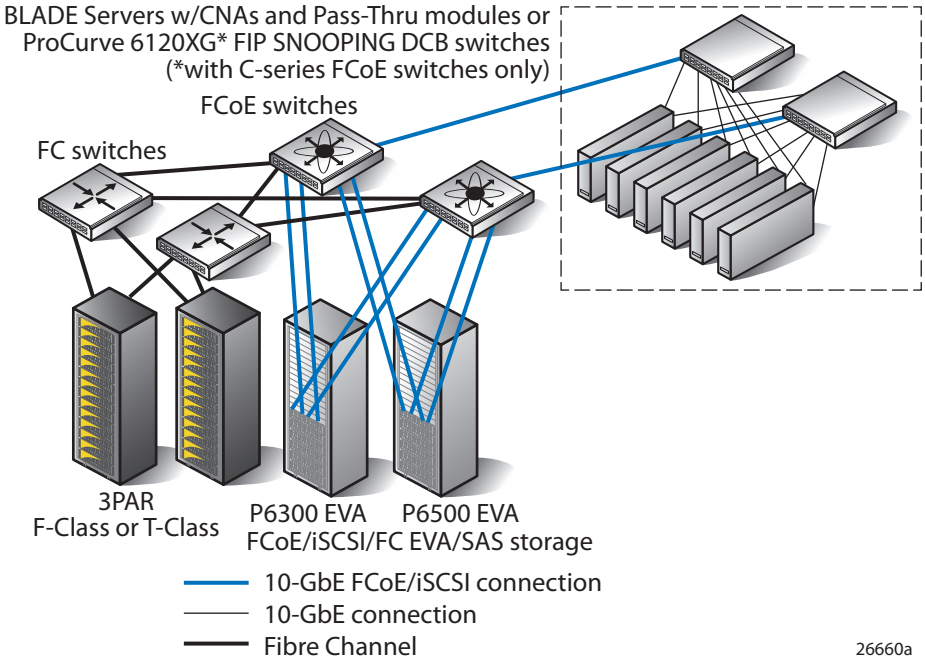


Figure 25 FCoE support



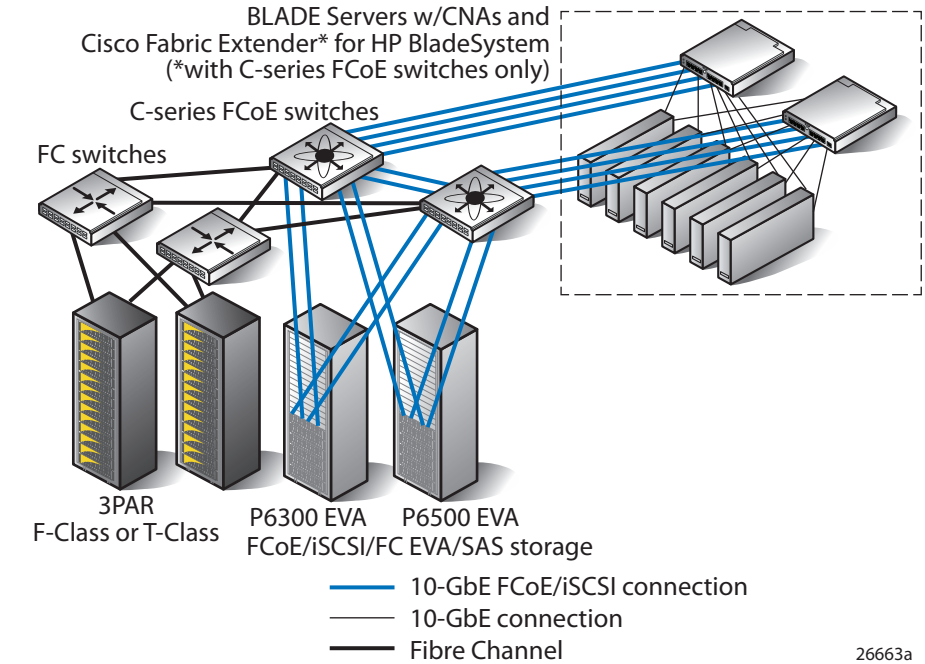
The following is an example of a Mixed FC and FCoE storage configuration:

Figure 26 Mixed FC and FCoE storage configuration



The following is an example of an FC and FCoE storage with Cisco Fabic Extender for HP BladeSystem configurations:

Figure 27 FC and FCoE storage with Cisco Fabic Extender for HP BladeSystem configuration



For the latest information on Fibre Channel over Ethernet switch model and firmware support, see the Single Point of Connectivity Knowledge (SPOCK) at http://www.hp.com/storage/spock. You must sign up for an HP Passport to enable access. Also, for information on FCoE configuration and attributes, see the HP SAN Design Reference Guide at:

http://www.hp.com/go/sandesign

NOTE: HP recommends that at least one zone be created for the FCoE WWNs from each port of the HP P6000 with the iSCSI/FCoE modules. The zone should also contain CNA WWNs. Zoning should include member WWNs from each one of the iSCSI/FCoE modules to ensure configuration of multipath redundancy.

Operating system and multipath software support

This section describes the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's operating system, multipath, and cluster support.

For the latest information on operating system and mulitpath software support, see the Single Point of Connectivity Knowledge (SPOCK) at http://www.hp.com/storage/spock. You must sign up for an HP Passport to enable access.

Table 18 (page 91) provides the operating system and multipath software support.

Table 18 Operating system and multipath software support

Operating system	Multipath software	Clusters	Connectivity	EVA storage system
Apple Mac OS X	None	None	iSCSI	EVA4400/4400 with the embedded switch EVA4000/4100/6000/6100/8000/8100 EVA6400/8400 P6300/P6500 P6350/P6550
Microsoft Windows Server 2008, 2003, Hyper-V, and 2012	MPIO with HP DSM MPIO with Microsoft DSM	MSCS	iSCSI, FCoE	
Red Hat Linux, SUSE Linux	Device Mapper	None	iSCSI, FCoE	
Solaris	Solaris MPxIO	None	iSCSI	
VMware	VMware MPxIO	None	iSCSI, FCoE	

iSCSI initiator rules, guidelines, and support

This section describes the following iSCSI Initiator rules and guidelines.

General iSCSI initiator rules and guidelines

The following are the iSCSI Initiator rules and guidelines.

- iSCSI Initiators and iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE ports can reside in different IP subnets. This requires setting the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's gateway feature. See "set mgmt command" (page 236) for more information.
- Both single path and multipath initiators are supported on the same iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.
- Fibre Channel, iSCSI, and FCoE presented LUNs must be uniquely presented to initiators running only one protocol type. Presenting a common LUN to initiators simultaneously running different protocols is unsupported.

Apple Mac OS X iSCSI initiator rules and guidelines

The Apple Mac OS X iSCSI initiator supports the following:

- Power PC and Intel Power Mac G5, Xserve, Mac Pro
- ATTO Technology Mac driver
- iSNS
- CHAP

iSCSI Initiator operating system considerations:

- Host mode setting – Apple Mac OS X
- Multipathing is not supported

Microsoft Windows iSCSI Initiator rules and guidelines

The Microsoft Windows iSCSI Initiator supports the following:

- Microsoft iSCSI Initiator versions 2.08, 2.07
- Microsoft iSCSI Initiator for Windows 2012, Windows 2008, Vista, and Windows 7
- Multipath on iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module single or dual controller configurations

iSCSI Initiator operating system considerations:

- Host mode setting – Microsoft Windows 2012, Windows 2008 or Windows 2003
- TCPIP parameter `Tcp1323Opts` must be entered in the registry with a value of `DWord=2` under the registry setting# `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Ser¬vices\Tcpip\Parameters`.
- The TimeOutValue parameter should be entered in the registry with a value of DWord=120 under the registry setting `#HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Disk`.
- TCPIP parameter Tcp1323Opts must be entered in the registry with a value of DWord=2 under the registry setting `# HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tcpip\Parameters`
- The TimeOutValue parameter should be entered in the registry with a value of DWord=120 under the registry setting `#HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Disk`.

△ **CAUTION:** Using the Registry Editor incorrectly can cause serious problems that may require reinstallation of the operating system. Backup the registry before making any changes. Use Registry Editor at your own risk.

NOTE: These parameters are automatically set by the HP iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module kit. This kit also includes a null device driver for the P6000, and is available at: http://h18006.www1.hp.com/products/storageworks/evaiscsiconnect/index.html

Linux iSCSI Initiator rules and guidelines

The Linux iSCSI Initiator supports the following:

- Red Hat Linux and SUSE Linux
- Multipath using HP Device Mapper

iSCSI Initiator operating system considerations:

- Host mode setting – Linux
- NIC bonding is not supported

Solaris iSCSI Initiator rules and guidelines

The Solaris iSCSI Initiator supports the following:

- Solaris iSCSI initiator only
- Multipath using MPxIO
- MPxIO Symmetric option only
- MPxIO round-robin
- MPxIO auto-failback

iSCSI Initiator operating system considerations:

- Host mode setting – Oracle Solaris
- Does not support TOE NICs or iSCSI HBA
- Does not support LUN 0

VMware iSCSI Initiator rules and guidelines

The VMware iSCSI Initiator supports the following:

- Native iSCSI software initiator in VMware ESX 4.0/3.5
- Guest OS SCSI Controller, LSI Logic and/or BUS Logic (BUS Logic with SUSE Linux only)
- ESX server's native multipath solution, based on NIC teaming on the server
- Guest OS boot from an iSCSI or an iSCSI/FCoE presented target device
- Virtual Machine File System (VMFS) data stores and raw device mapping for guest OS virtual machines
- Multi-initiator access to the same LUN via VMFS
- VMware ESX server 4.0/3.5 native multipath solution based on NIC teaming

iSCSI Initiator operating system considerations:

- Host mode setting VMware
- Does not support hardware iSCSI initiator (iSCSI HBA)

Supported IP network adapters

For the latest information on network adapter support, see the product release notes or the Single Point of Connectivity Knowledge (SPOCK) at http://www.hp.com/storage/spock. You must sign up for an HP Passport to enable access.

Table 19 (page 93) lists the IP network adapters supported by the iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE controller.

Table 19 Operating system and multipath software support

Operating system	Network interconnect
Apple Mac OS X	All standard GbE NICs/ASICs supported by Apple
Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2008, 2003, Hyper-V	All standard 1 GbE or 10 GbE NICs/ASICs and TOE NICs supported by HP for Windows 2012, 2008, and 2003 QLogic iSCSI HBAs
Red Hat Linux, SUSE Linux	All standard 1 GbE or 10 GbE NICs/ASICs supported by HP for Linux QLogic iSCSI HBAs
Solaris	All standard GbE NICs/ASICs supported by Oracle
VMware	All standard 1GbE or 10 GbE NICs/ASICs supported by HP for VMware QLogic iSCSI HBAs

IP network requirements

HP recommends the following:

- Network protocol: TCP/IP IPv6, IPv4, Ethernet 1000 Mb/s or 10 GbE
- IP data: LAN/VLAN support with less than 10 ms latency; maximum of 2 VLANs per port, 1 VLAN per protocol
- IP management—LAN/WAN support
- Dedicated IP network for iSCSI data
- Jumbo frames

NOTE: If you configure IPv6 on any iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's ISCSI data port, you must also configure IPv6 on the HP P6000 Command View management server.

Set up the iSCSI Initiator

Windows

For Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2008, the iSCSI initiator is included with the operating system. For Windows Server 2003, you must download and install the iSCSI initiator (version 2.08 recommended).

HP recommends the following Windows HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE Registry settings:

Tcp1323opts = "2"

TimeOutvalue = "120"

NOTE: Increasing the TimeOutvalue from the default of 60 to 120 will avoid initiator I/O timeouts during controller code loads and synchronizations. These settings are included in the HP P6000 iSCSI/FCoE and MPX200 Multifunction Router kit.

1. Install the HP P6000 iSCSI/FCoE and MPX200 Multifunction Router kit.
   a. Start the installer by running `Launch.exe`; if you are using a CD-ROM, the installer should start automatically.
   b. Click **Install iSCSI/FCoE software package** (see Figure 28 (page 95) and Figure 29 (page 95)).

Figure 28 Windows Server 2003 kit

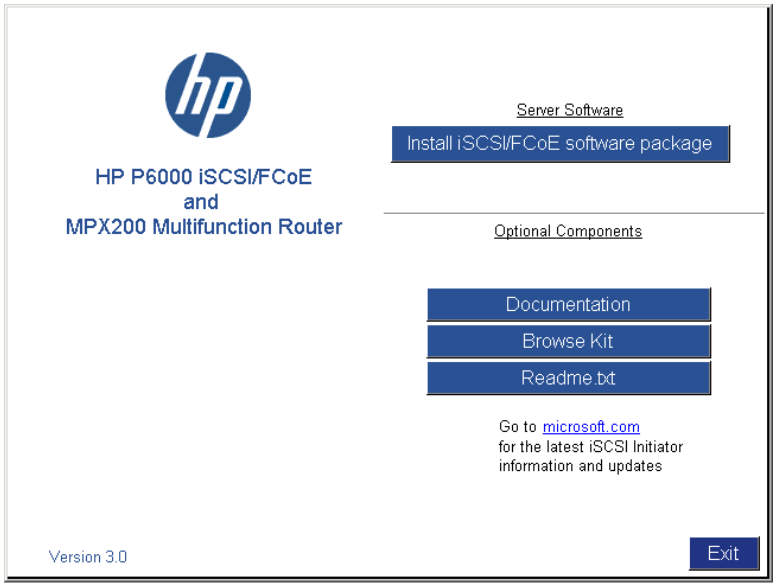
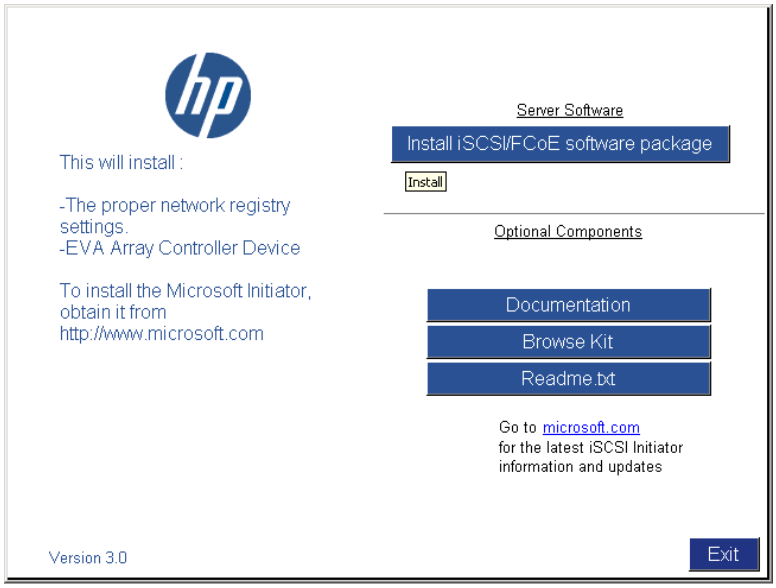
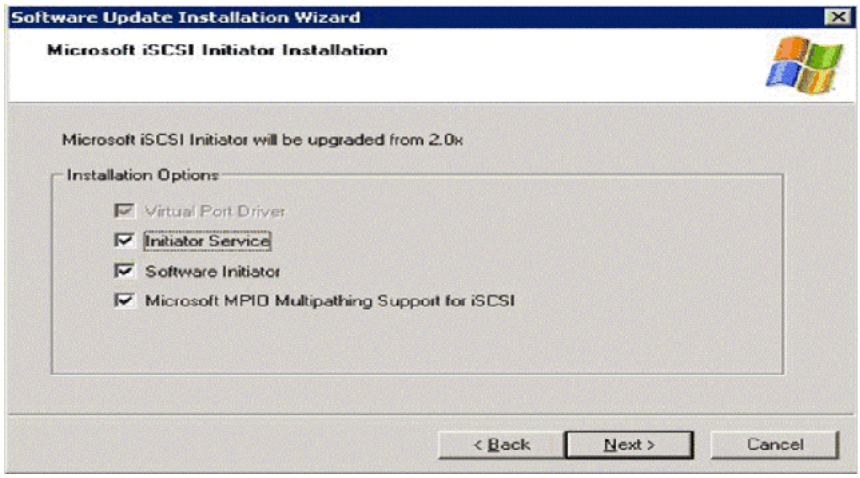


Figure 29 Windows registry and controller device installation



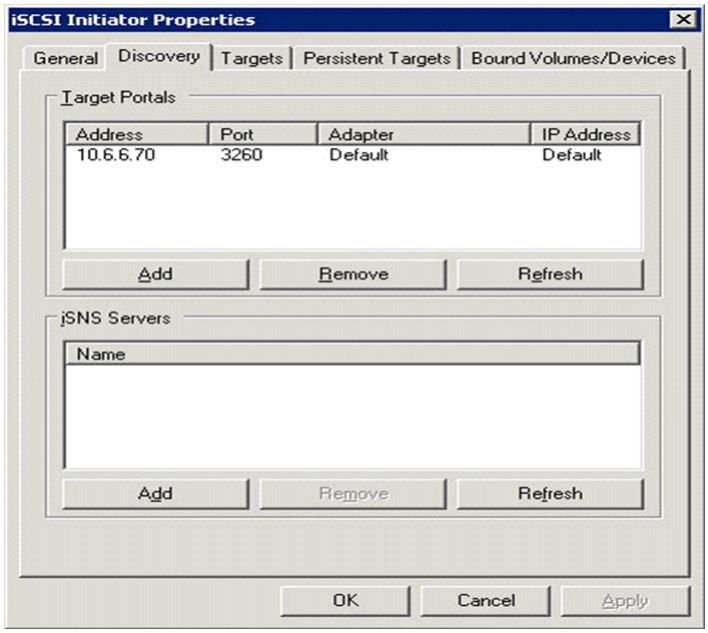
For Windows Server 2003, the Microsoft iSCSI initiator installation presents an option for installing MPIO using the Microsoft generic DSM (Microsoft MPIO Multipathing Support for iSCSI check box). For Windows Server 2008, MPIO is installed separately. See Figure 30 (page 96).

Figure 30 iSCSI Initiator Installation



c. Click the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator icon to open the Control Panel applet.
   The iSCSI Initiator Properties window opens.
d. Click the **Discovery** tab (see Figure 31 (page 96)).

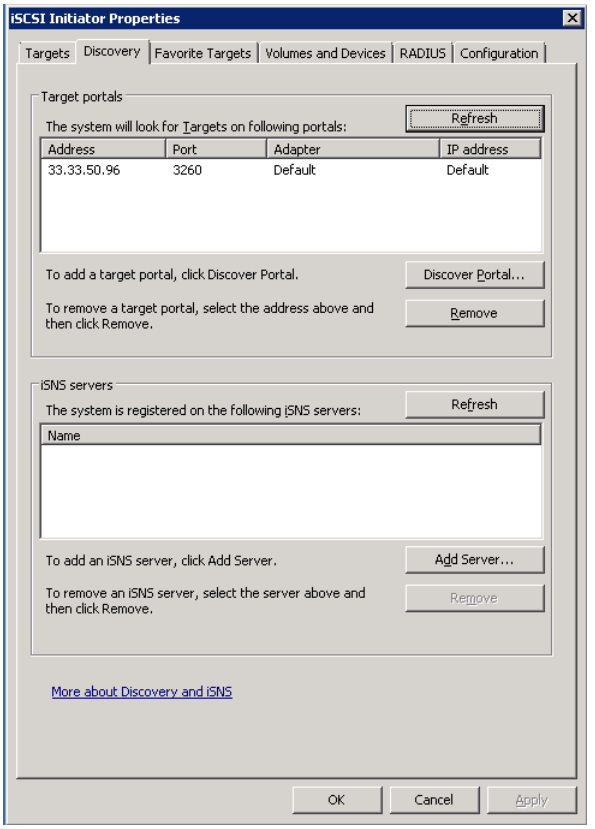
Figure 31 iSCSI Initiator Properties—Discovery tab



e. In the Target Portals section, click **Add**.
   A dialog box opens to enter the iSCSI port IP Address.
f. Click **OK**.
   The Discovery is now complete.

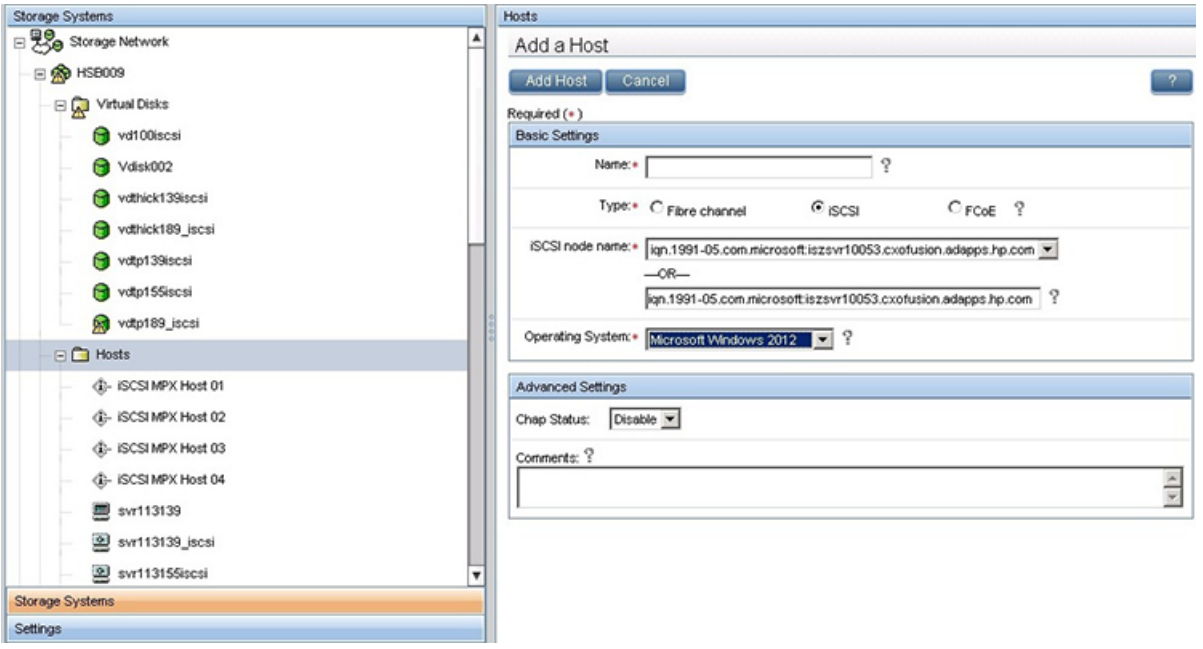
2. Set up the iSCSI Host and virtual disks on HP P6000 Command View:

Figure 32 iSCSI Initiator Properties—Discovery tab (Windows 2008)



a. From HP P6000 Command View, click the EVA storage system icon to start the iSCSI storage presentation. In adding a host, the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules are the target EVA storage system.

Figure 33 Add a host



b. b. Select the **Hosts** folder.

c. c. To create iSCSI Initiator host, click Add host.

A dialog box opens.

- Enter a name for the initiator host in the Name box.
- Select iSCSI as the Type.
- Select the initiator iSCSI qualified name (IQN) from the iSCSI node name list. Or, you can enter a port WWN
- Select an OS from the Operating System list.

d. Create a virtual disk and present it to the host you created in Step 2.c. Note the numbers in the target IQN; these target WWNs will be referenced during Initiator login. See Figure 34 (page 98) and Figure 35 (page 98).

Figure 34 Virtual disk properties

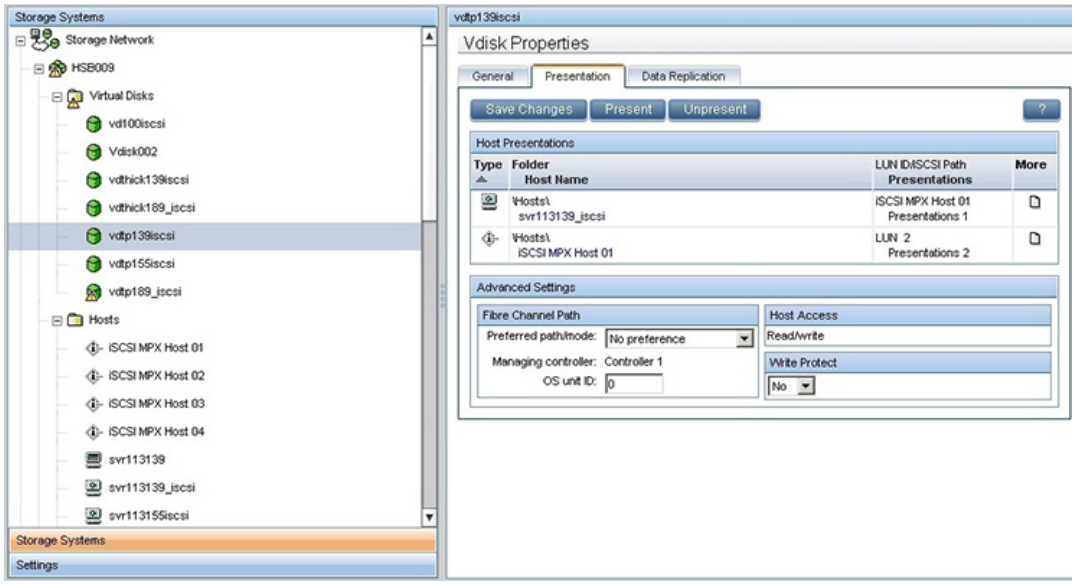
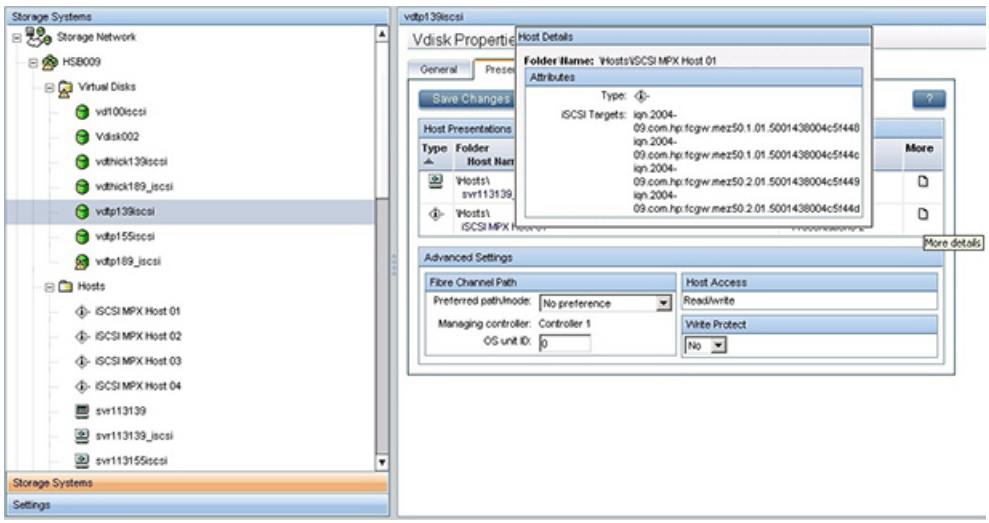
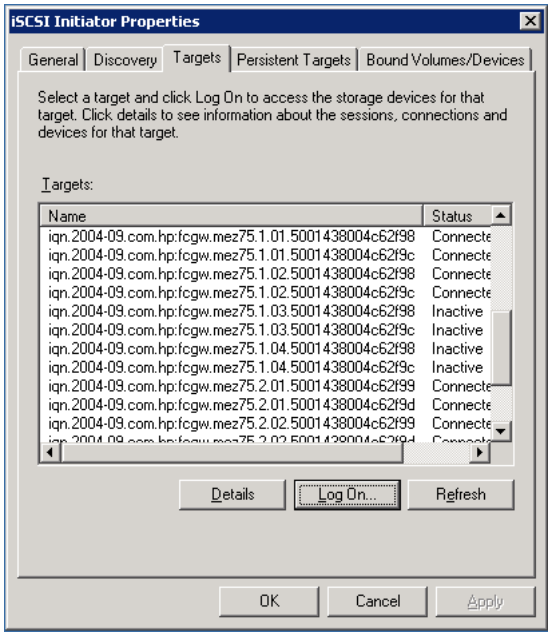


Figure 35 Host details



3. Set up the iSCSI disk on the iSCSI Initiator:
   a. Open the iSCSI Initiator Control Panel applet.
   b. Click the **Targets** tab and then the **Refresh** button to see the available targets (Figure 36 (page 99)). The status should be Inactive.

Figure 36 iSCSI Initiator Properties—Targets tab



   c. Select the target IQN, keying off the module 1 or 2 field and the WWN field, noted in Step 2.d, and click **Log On**.

      A dialog box opens.

   d. Configure the target IQN:
      - Select the **Automatically** box to restore this connection when the system boots.
      - Select the **Multipathing** box to enable MPIO. The target status is Connected when logged in.

      NOTE: HP recommends using the Advanced button to selectively choose the Local Adapter, Source IP, and Target Portal. The Target Portal IP Address is the iSCSI port to which this initiator connection path is defined.

   e. Depending on the operating system, open **Server Manager** or **Computer Management**.
   f. Select **Disk Management**.
   g. Select **Action > Rescan Disks**. Verify that the newly assigned disk is listed. If not, a reboot may be required.
   h. Prepare the disk for use by formatting and partitioning.

Multipathing

Microsoft MPIO includes support for the establishment of redundant paths to send I/O from the initiator to the target. For Windows Server 2008 and Microsoft Windows 2012, MPIO is a separate feature that has to be installed separately. Microsoft iSCSI Software Initiator Version 2.x includes MPIO and has to be selected for installation. Setting up redundant paths properly is important to ensure high availability of the target disk. Ideally, the system would have the paths use separate NIC cards and separate network infrastructure (cables, switches, iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules). HP recommends separate target ports.

Microsoft MPIO support allows the initiator to log in to multiple sessions to the same target and aggregate the duplicate devices into a single device exposed to Windows. Each session to the target can be established using different NICs, network infrastructure, and target ports. If one session fails, another session can continue processing I/O without interruption to the application. The iSCSI target must support multiple sessions to the same target. The Microsoft iSCSI MPIO DSM supports a set of load balance policies that determine how I/O is allocated among the different sessions. With Microsoft MPIO, the load balance policies apply to each LUN individually.

The Microsoft iSCSI DSM v2.x assumes that all targets are active/active and can handle I/O on any path at any time. There is no mechanism within the iSCSI protocol to determine whether a target is active/active or active/passive; therefore, the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules support only multipath configurations with the EVA with active/active support. More information can be found at:

http://www.microsoft.com/WindowsServer2003/technologies/storage/mpio/default.mspx

http://www.microsoft.com/WindowsServer2003/technologies/storage/mpio/faq.mspx

http://download.microsoft.com/download/3/0/4/304083f1-11e7-44d9-92b9-2f3cdbf01048/mpio.doc

Table 20 (page 100) details the differences between Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2003.

Table 20 Windows server differences

	Windows Server 2008 and 2012	Windows Server 2003
iSCSI Initiator	Included with operating system	Separate installation
MPIO	Feature has to be installed	Included with iSCSI initiator

Table 21 (page 100) shows the supported MPIO options for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller.

Table 21 Supported MPIO options for iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules

	Windows Server 2008 and 2012	Windows Server 2003
HP MPIO Full Featured DSM for EVA*	Supported	Supported
Microsoft generic DSM	Supported	Supported
*Preferred		

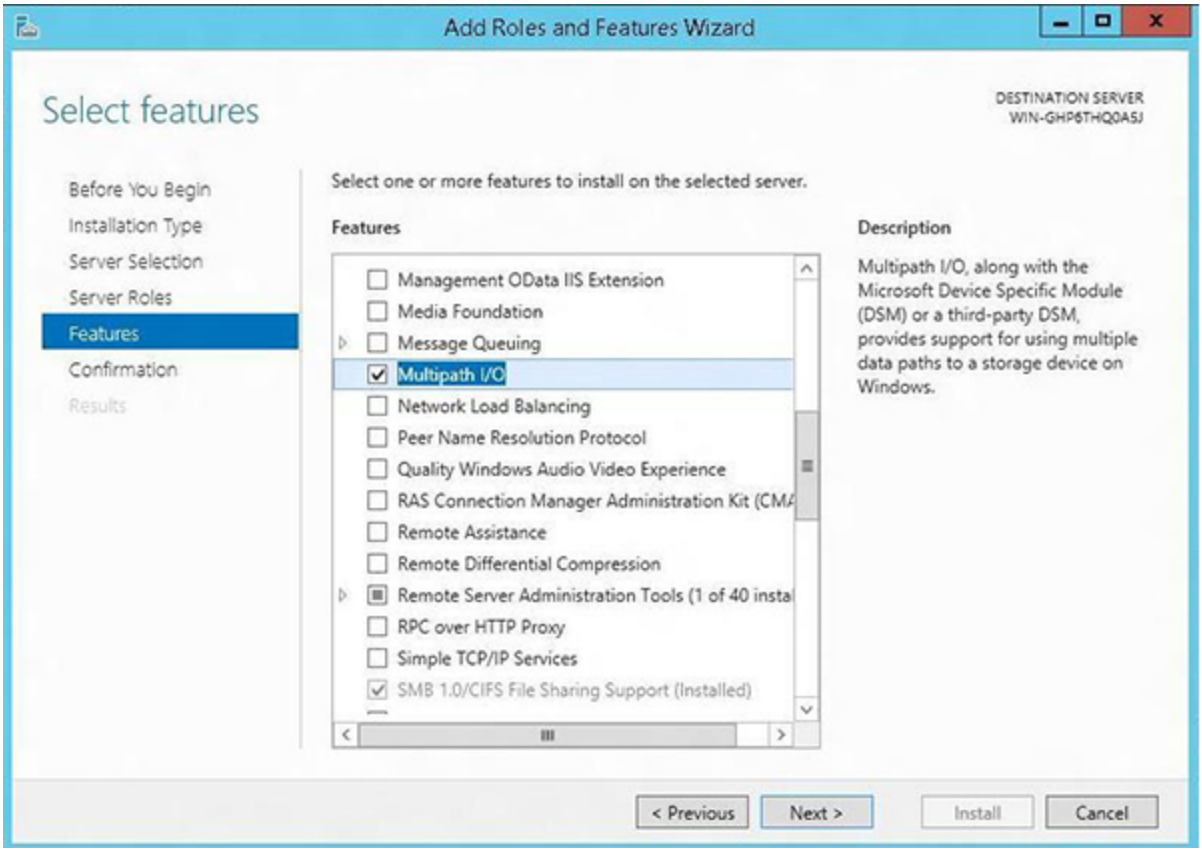
Installing the MPIO feature for Windows Server 2012

NOTE: Microsoft Windows 2012 includes a separate MIOP feature that requires installation for use. Microsoft Windows Server 2012 also includes the iSCSI Initiator. Download or installation is not required.

Installing the MPIO feature for Windows Server 2012:

1. Check the box for Multipath I/O in the Add Features page.

Figure 37 Add Features page

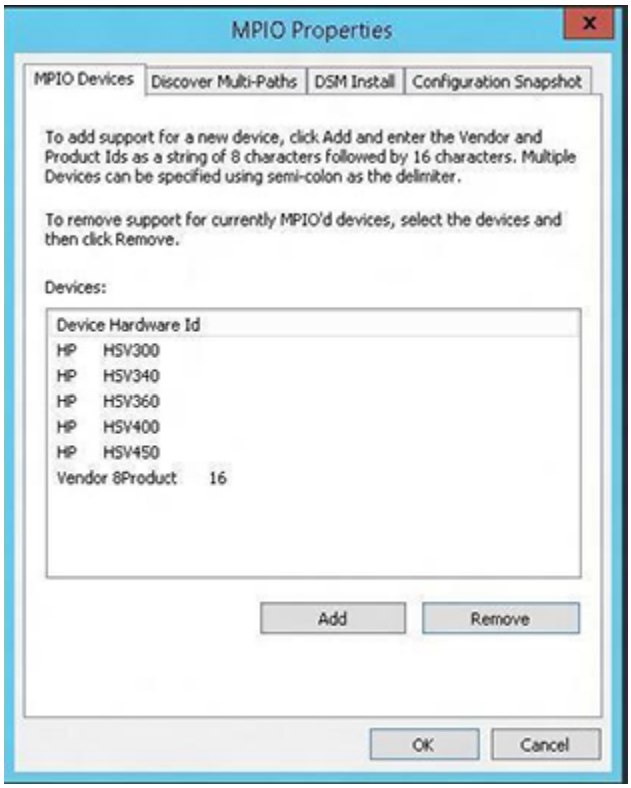


2. Click **Next** and then click **Install**.
3. After the server reboots, add support for iSCSI Devices using the MPIO applet.

Figure 38 MPIO Properties page before reboot

NOTE: You must present a virtual disk to the initiator to enable the Add support for iSCSI devices checkbox.

Figure 39 MPIO Properties page after reboot



4. A final reboot is required to get the devices MPIO-ed.

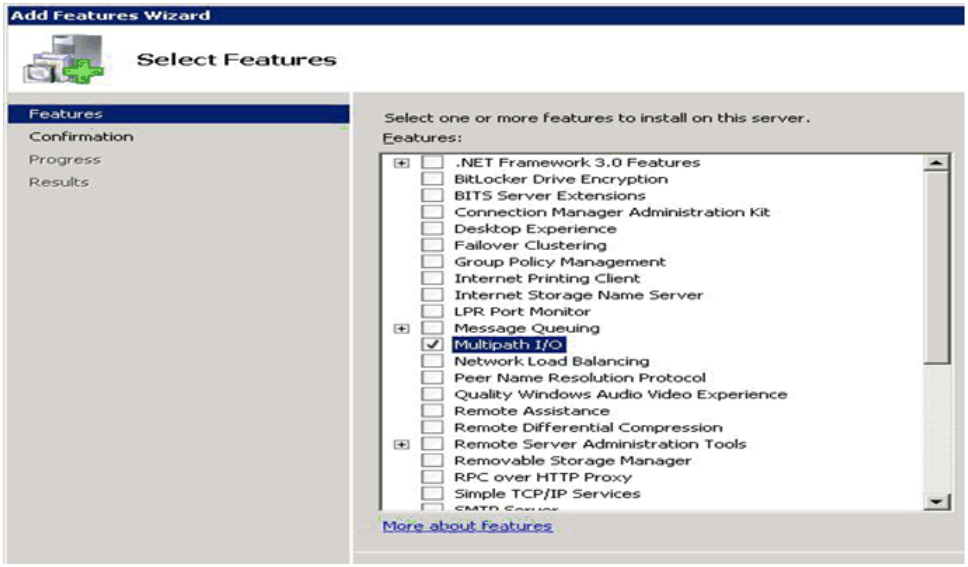
Installing the MPIO feature for Windows Server 2008

NOTE: Microsoft Windows 2008 includes a separate MPIO feature that requires installation for use. Microsoft Windows Server 2008 also includes the iSCSI Initiator. Download or installation is not required.

Installing the MPIO feature for Windows Server 2008:

1. Check the box for Multipath I/O in the Add Features page (Figure 37 (page 103)).

Figure 40 Add Features page



2. Click **Next** and then click **Install**.
3. After the server reboots, add support for iSCSI Devices using the MPIO applet (see Figure 41 (page 103) and Figure 42 (page 104)).

NOTE: You must present a virtual disk to the initiator to enable the Add support for iSCSI devices checkbox.

Figure 41 MPIO Properties page before reboot

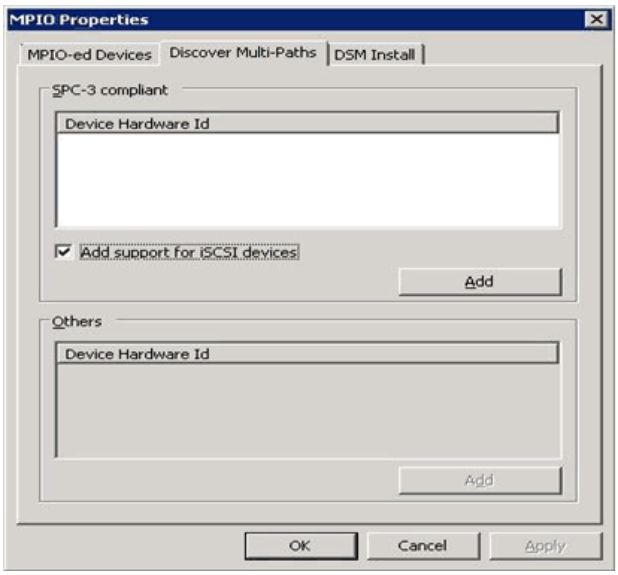
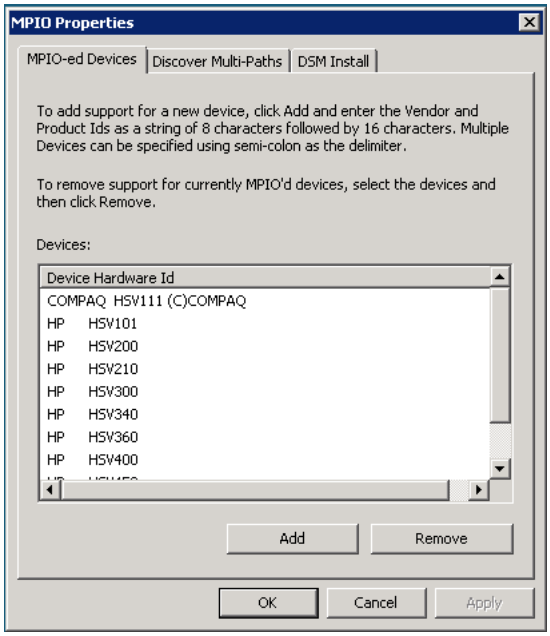


Figure 42 MPIO Properties page after reboot

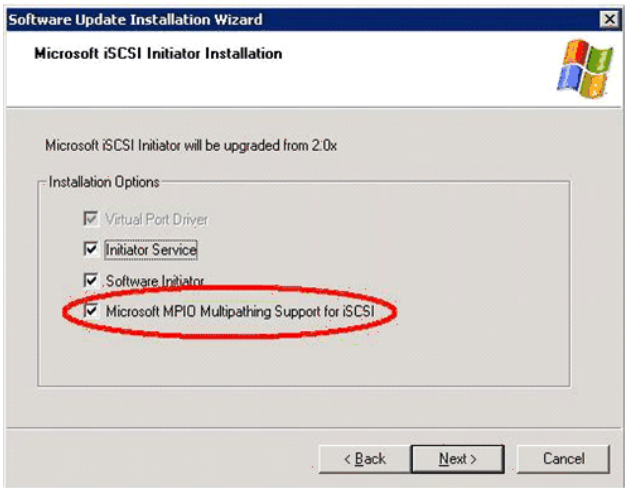


4. A final reboot is required to get the devices MPIO-ed.

Installing the MPIO feature for Windows Server 2003

For Windows Server 2003, if you are installing the initiator for the first time, check all the installation option checkboxes and then click Next to continue (Figure 43 (page 104)).

Figure 43 Software update installation wizard



To add or remove specific MS iSCSI software Initiator components after the initial install, run the setup package executable and select the check box to add MPIO. The application automatically checks the boxes for components that are already installed. For example, if you want to add the MS MPIO component, leave the other check boxes unchecked; check only the MS MPIO check box.

NOTE: The installation requires a reboot.

IMPORTANT: Windows XP Professional is not supported by Microsoft's MPIO.

About Microsoft Windows Server 2003 scalable networking pack

The Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Scalable Networking Pack (SNP) contains functionality for offloading TCP network processing to hardware. *TCP Chimney* is a feature that allows TCP/IP processing to be offloaded to hardware. *Receive Side Scaling* allows receive packet processing to scale across multiple CPUs.

HP's NC3xxx Multifunction Gigabit server adapters support TCP offload functionality using Microsoft's Scalable Networking Pack (SNP).

For more support details, read the latest HP adapter information for more support details.

To download the SNP package and for more details see: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/912222.

NOTE: Windows Server 2003 SP2 includes SNP functionality.

SNP setup with HP NC 3xxx GbE multifunction adapter

Microsoft's Scalable Networking Pack works in conjunction with HP's NC3xxxx Multifunction Gigabit server adapters for Windows 2003 only.

To set up SNP on a Windows 2003 server:

1. Install the hardware and necessary software for the NC3xxx Multifunction Gigabit server adapter, following the manufacturer's installation procedures.
2. Download the SNP package from the Microsoft website: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/912222.
   a. To start the installation immediately click **Run**, or
   b. To copy the download to your computer for installation at a later time, click **Save**.

   A reboot is required after successful installation.
3. After reboot, verify TCP offload settings by opening a Command Prompt window and issuing the command:

   ```
   C:\>netsh interface ip show offload
   The following is displayed:
   Offload Options for interface "33-IP Storage Subnet" with index: 10003:
   TCP Transmit Checksum
   IP Transmit Checksum
   TCP Receive Checksum
   IP Receive Checksum
   TCP Large Send TCP Chimney Offload.
   ```
4. To modify TOE Chimney settings, use the commands:

   ```
   >netsh int ip set chimney enabled
   >netsh int ip set chimney disabled
   ```

   For more information, go to:

   http://support.microsoft.com/kb/912222

iSCSI Initiator version 3.10 setup for Apple Mac OS X (single-path)

The EVA4400 and EVA connectivity option supports the Macintosh Xtend iSCSI Initiator provided by ATTO Technologies. For more details please visit http://www.attotech.com.

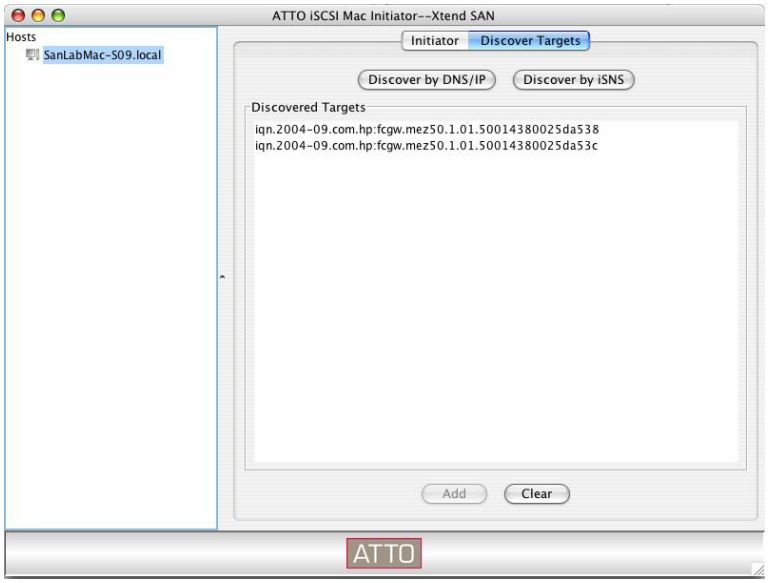
Set up the iSCSI Initiator for Apple Mac OS X

1. Install the ATTO iSCSI Macintosh Initiator v3.10 following the install instructions provided by the vendor.
2. Run the Xtend SAN application to discover and configure the EVA iSCSI targets. The Xtend SAN iSCSI Initiator can discover targets either by static address or iSNS.

   For static address discovery:

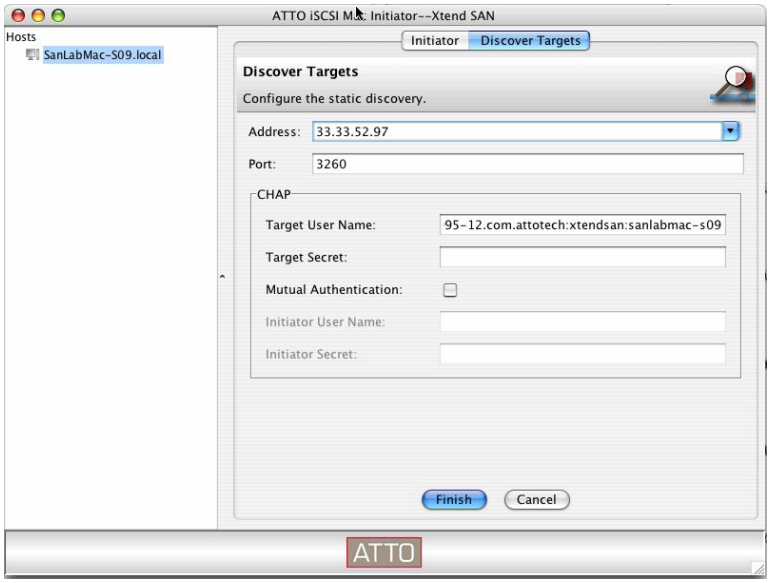
   a. Select **Discover Targets** and then select **Discover by DNS/IP** (Figure 44 (page 106)).

Figure 44 Discover targets



   b. Add the static IP address of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's port in the Address field and then select **Finish** (Figure 45 (page 106)).

Figure 45 Add static IP address

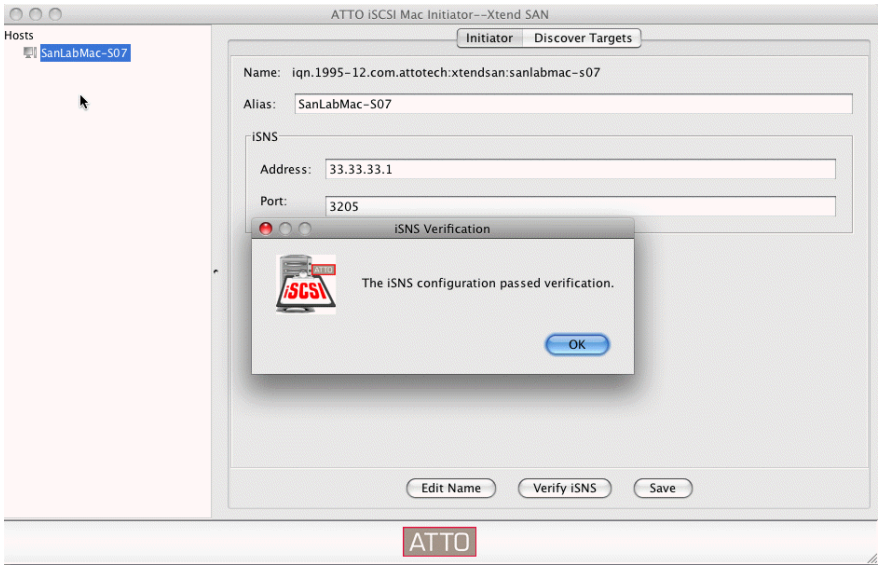


   c. Select a target from the Discovered Target list and then click **Add** (Figure 44 (page 106)).

NOTE: The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's port may present several iSCSI targets to the Xtend SAN iSCSI Initiator. Select only one target from the list.

3. For iSNS discovery:
   a. Select **Initiator** and then enter the iSNS name or IP address in the **iSNS Address** field (Figure 46 (page 107)).

Figure 46 iSNS discovery and verification



   b. Test the connection from the initiator to the iSNS server by selecting **Verify iSNS**. If successful, select **Save**.

      If necessary, working on the iSNS server, make the appropriate edits to add the Xtend SAN iSCSI Initiator to any iSNS discovery domains that include iSCSI module targets.

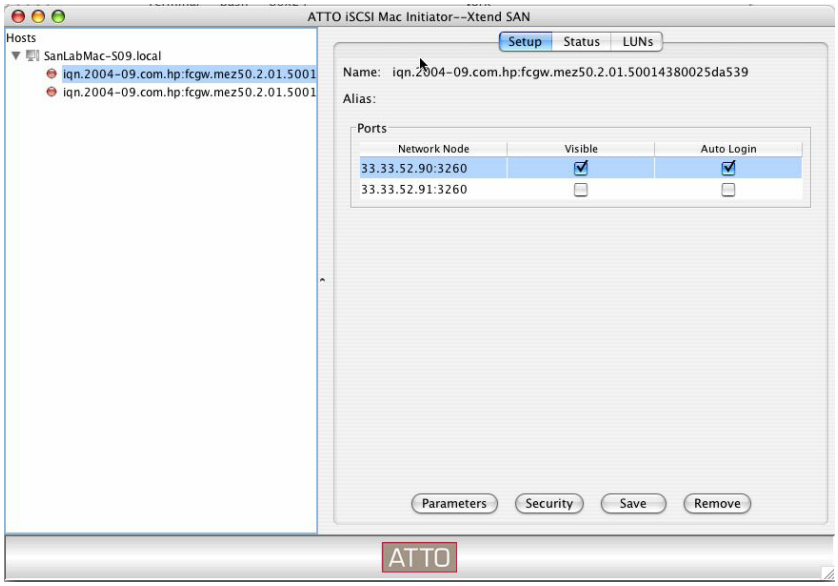
   c. Select **Discover Targets**.
   d. Select **Discover by iSNS**.

      A list of module targets appears under **Discovered Targets** (Figure 44 (page 106)).

NOTE: The module's port may present several iSCSI targets to the Xtend SAN iSCSI Initiator. Select only one target from the list.

   e. Select the newly-added target under Host name in the left frame.
   f. Check the **Visible** box (Figure 47 (page 107)). This allows the initiator to display the target status.
   g. Check the **Auto Login** box. This configures the iSCSI Initiator to automatically log in to the iSCSI target at system startup.
   h. Click **Save**.

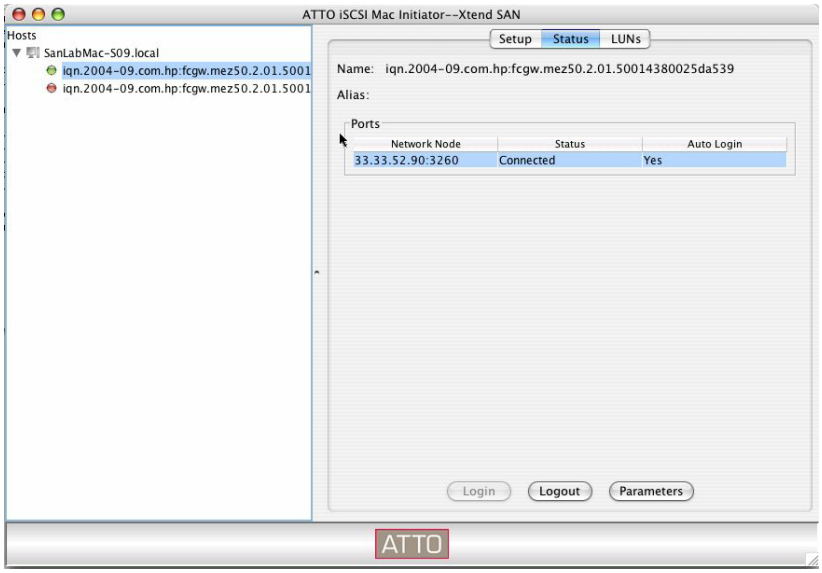
Figure 47 Selecting newly added target



i. Select **Status**, select **Network Node**, and then select **Login** to connect to the module's target (Figure 48 (page 108)).

The Network Node displays a status of `Connected` and the target status light turns green.

Figure 48 Select status

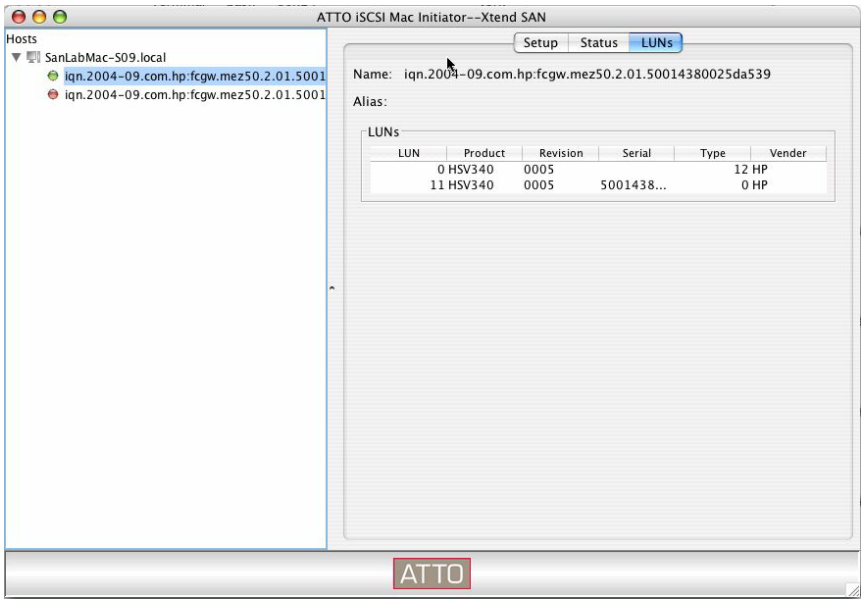


Storage setup for Apple Mac OS X

1. Present LUNs using HP P6000 Command View.
2. Verify that the EVA LUNs are presented to the Macintosh iSCSI Initiator:
   a. Open the Xtend SAN iSCSI application.
   b. Select the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module target entry under the host name.
   c. Click the **LUNs** button.

   A list of presented EVA LUNs is displayed (Figure 49 (page 109)).

Figure 49 Presented EVA LUNs



NOTE: If no LUNs appear in the list, log out and then log in again to the target, or a system reboot may be required.

3. Set up the iSCSI drive on the iSCSI Initiator:
   a. Open Disk Utilities from the Apple Mac OS X Finder Applications list.
   b. Format and partition the EVA LUN as needed.

iSCSI Initiator setup for Linux

Installing and configuring the SUSE Linux Enterprise 10 iSCSI driver

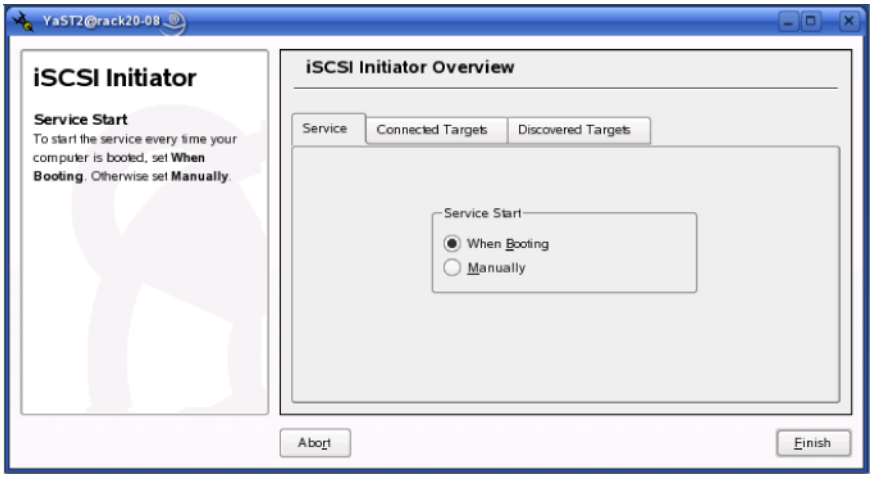
Configure the initiator using the built-in GUI-based tool or the open-iscsi administration utility using the `iscsiadm` command. See the `iscsiadm (8)` man pages for detailed command information.

1. Modify the Initiator Name by issuing the following command:

   ```
   # vi /etc/initiatorname.iscsi
   ```

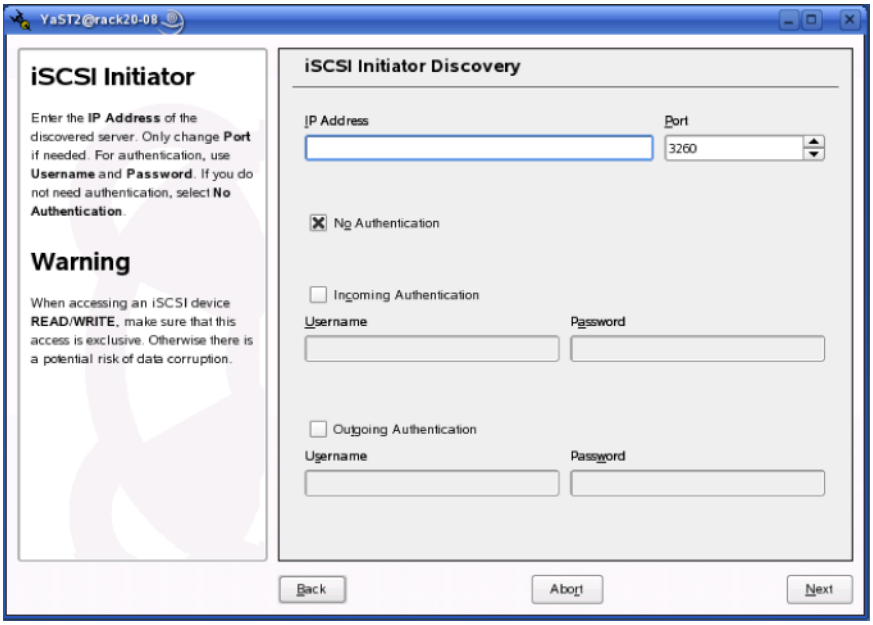
2. To configure the Initiator and Targets, start the iSCSI Initiator applet by finding it in the YaST Control Center under **Network Services**, and then set the service to start at boot time (Figure 50 (page 110)).

Figure 50 Configure initiator and targets



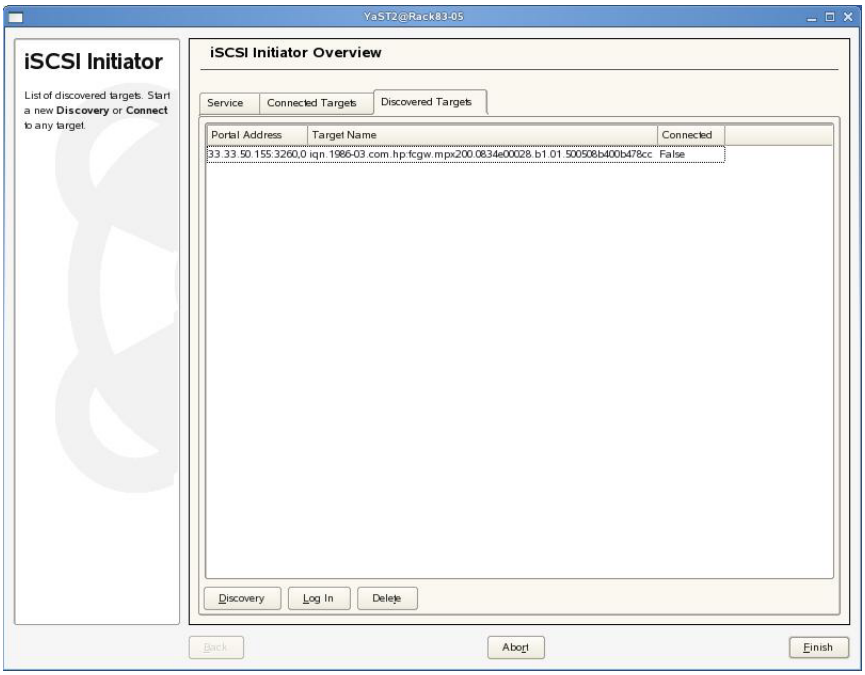
3. Click the **Discovered Targets** tab and enter your iSCSI target IP address (Figure 51 (page 110)).

Figure 51 Discovered Targets tab



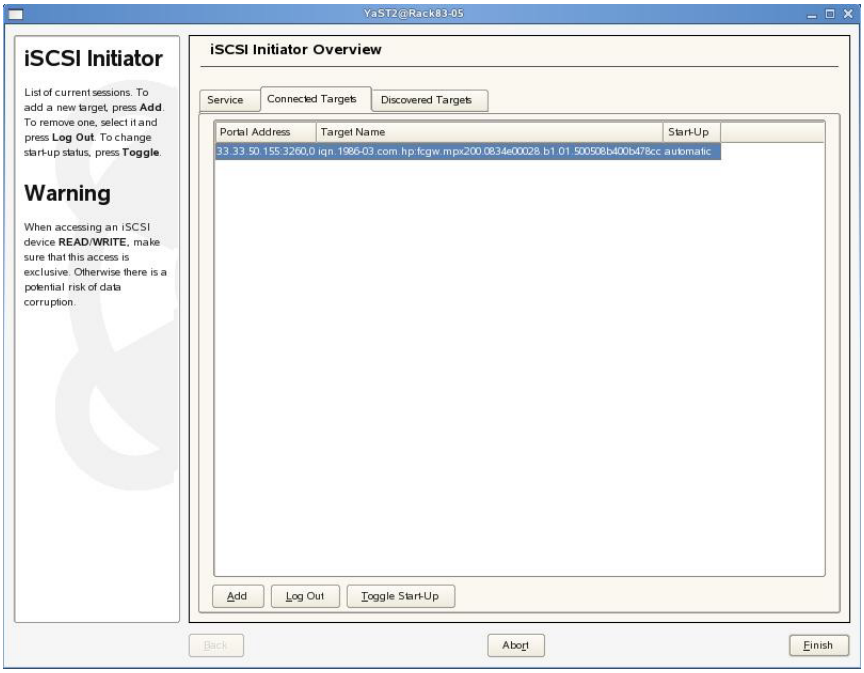
4. Log in to the target (Figure 52 (page 111)).

Figure 52 Target login



5. Click the **Connected Targets** tab, and then click the **Toggle Start-Up** button on each target listed so the targets start automatically (Figure 53 (page 111)).

Figure 53 Connected Targets tab



Installing and configuring for Red Hat 5

To install and configure for Red Hat 5:

NOTE: The iSCSI driver package is included but is not installed by default. Install the package `iscsi-initiator-utils` during or after operating system installation.

1. Use the `iscsiadm` command to control discovery and connectivity:

   ```
   # iscsiadm –m discovery –t st –p 10.6.0.33:3260
   ```

2. Edit the initiator name:

   ```
   # vi /etc/iscsi/initiatorname.iscsi
   ```

3. To start the iSCSI service use the `service` command:

   ```
   # service iscsi start
   ```

4. Verify that the iSCSI service autostarts:

   ```
   #chkconfig iscsi on
   ```

NOTE: For more detail, see the man pages regarding the iscsiadm open-iscsi administration utility.

Installing and configuring for Red Hat 4 and SUSE 9

To install and configure for Red Hat 4 and for SUSE 9:

NOTE: The iSCSI driver is included with the Red Hat 4 and SUSE 9 distributions and is installed by default. Configuration is the same for Red Hat 3, 4, SUSE 8 and 9.

1. Update `/etc/iscsi.conf` to include the IP address of your iSCSI target. A sample configuration file might include entries like this:

   DiscoveryAddress=33.33.33.101

   For a more detailed description of the configuration file format, enter:

   ```
   man iscsi.conf
   ```

2. Enter the following command to manually start iSCSI services to test your configuration:

   ```
   /etc/init.d/iscsi start
   ```

3. Modify the `/etc/initiatorname.iscsi` file to reflect a meaningful name for the initiator. For example:

   `InitiatorName=iqn.1987-05.com.cisco:`*`servername.yourcompany`*`.com`

   NOTE: In most cases, the only part of the file requiring modification is after the colon.

If there are problems starting the iscsi daemon, they are usually caused by an incorrect IP Address or an ill-formatted initiator name.

Installing the initiator for Red Hat 3 and SUSE 8

If you are upgrading from a previous installation of an iSCSI driver, HP recommends that you remove the `/etc/initiatorname.iscsi` file before installing the new driver. See the following website for the latest version of the Linux driver for EVA iSCSI connectivity:

http://sourceforge.net/projects/linux-iscsi

NOTE: The Linux driver supports both Red Hat 3 and SUSE 8. See the *Readme* file in the tar ball for more information on how to configure the Linux iSCSI Initiator.

Assigning device names

Because Linux assigns SCSI device nodes dynamically whenever a SCSI logical unit is detected, the mapping from device nodes such as `/dev/sda` or `/dev/sdb` to iSCSI targets and logical units may vary.

Variations in process scheduling and network delay can result in iSCSI targets being mapped to different SCSI device nodes every time the driver is started. Because of this variability, configuring

applications or operating system utilities to use the standard SCSI device nodes to access iSCSI devices can result in sending SCSI commands to the wrong target or logical unit.

To provide consistent naming, the iSCSI driver scans the system to determine the mapping from SCSI device nodes to iSCSI targets. The iSCSI driver creates a tree of directories and symbolic links under `/dev/iscsi` to make it easier to use a particular iSCSI target's logical unit.

The directory tree under `/dev/iscsi` contains subdirectories for each iSCSI bus number, each target id number on the bus, and each logical unit number for each target. For example, the whole disk device for `bus 0`, `target ID 0`, and `LUN 0` would be `/dev/iscsi/bus0/target0/LUN0/disk`.

In each logical unit directory there is a symbolic link for each SCSI device node that can be connected to that particular logical unit. These symbolic links are modeled after the Linux `devfs` naming convention:

- The symbolic link `disk` maps to the whole-disk SCSI device node such as `/dev/sda` or `/dev/sdb`.
- The symbolic links `part1` through `part15` maps to each partition of that SCSI disk. For example, a symbolic link can map to partitions `/dev/sda1`, `dev/sda15`, or to as many partitions as necessary.

  NOTE: These symbolic links exist regardless of the number of disk partitions. Opening the partition devices results in an error if the partition does not actually exist on the disk.

- The symbolic link `mt` maps to the auto-rewind SCSI tape device node for the LUN `/dev/st0`, for example. Additional links for `mtl`, `mtm`, and `mta` map to the other auto-rewind devices `/dev/st0l`, `/dev/st0m`, `/dev/st0a`, regardless of whether these device nodes actually exist or could be opened.
- The symbolic link `mtn` maps to the no-rewind SCSI tape device node, if any. For example, this LUN maps to `/dev/nst0`. Additional links `formtln`, `mtmn`, and `mtan` map to the other no-rewind devices such as `/dev/nst0l`, `/dev/nst0m`, `/dev/nst0a`, regardless of whether those device nodes actually exist or could be opened.
- The symbolic link `cd` maps to the SCSI CD-ROM device node, if any, for the LUN `/dev/scd0` for example.
- The symbolic link `generic` maps to the SCSI generic device node, if any, for the LUN `/dev/sg0`.

Because the symlink creation process must open all of the SCSI device nodes in `/dev` in order to determine which nodes map to iSCSI devices, you may see many `modprobe` messages logged to `syslog` indicating that `modprobe` could not find a driver for a particular combination of major and minor numbers. This message can be ignored. The messages occur when Linux is unable to find a driver to associate with a SCSI device node that the iSCSI daemon is opening as part of its `symlink` creation process. To prevent these messages from occurring, remove the SCSI device nodes that do not contain an associated high-level SCSI driver.

Target bindings

The iSCSI driver automatically maintains a bindings file, `/var/iscsi/bindings`. This file contains persistent bindings to ensure that the same iSCSI bus and target ID number are used for every iSCSI session with a particular iSCSI `TargetName`, even when the driver is repeatedly restarted.

This feature ensures that the SCSI number in the device `symlinks` (described in "Assigning device names" (page 112)) always map to the same iSCSI target.

NOTE: Because of the way Linux dynamically allocates SCSI device nodes as SCSI devices are found, the driver does not and cannot ensure that any particular SCSI device node `/dev/sda`, for example, always maps to the same `iSCSI TargetName`. The `symlinks` described in "Assigning device names" (page 112) are intended to provide application and `fstab` file persistent device mapping and must be used instead of direct references to particular SCSI device nodes.

If the bindings file grows too large, lines for targets that no longer exist may be manually removed by editing the file. Manual editing should not be needed, however, since the driver can maintain up to 65,535 different bindings.

Mounting file systems

Because the Linux boot process normally mounts file systems listed in `/etc/fstab` before the network is configured, adding mount entries in iSCSI devices to `/etc/fstab` will not work. The `iscsi-mountall` script manages the checking and mounting of devices listed in the file `/etc/fstab.iscsi`, which has the same format as `/etc/fstab`. This script is automatically invoked by the iSCSI startup script.

NOTE: If iSCSI sessions are unable to log in immediately due to network or authentication problems, the `iscsi-mountall` script can time out and fail to mount the file systems.

Mapping inconsistencies can occur between SCSI device nodes and iSCSI targets, such as mounting the wrong device due to device name changes resulting from iSCSI target configuration changes or network delays. Instead of directly mounting SCSI devices, HP recommends one of the following options:

- Mount the `/dev/iscsi tree symlinks`.
- Mount file system UUIDs or labels (see man pages for `mke2fs`, `mount`, and `fstab`).
- Use logical volume management (see Linux LVM).

Unmounting file systems

It is very important to `unmount` all file systems on iSCSI devices before the iSCSI driver stops. If the iSCSI driver stops while iSCSI devices are mounted, buffered writes may not be committed to disk, and file system corruption can occur.

Since Linux will not `unmount` file systems that are being used by a running process, any processes using those devices must be stopped (see `fuser(1)`) before iSCSI devices can be unmounted.

To avoid file system corruption, the iSCSI shutdown script automatically stops all processes using devices in `/etc/fstab.iscsi`, first by sending them SIGTERM, and then by sending any remaining processes SIGKILL. The iSCSI shutdown script unmounts all iSCSI file systems and stops the iSCSI daemon, terminating all connections to iSCSI devices.

△ **CAUTION:** File systems not listed in `/etc/fstab.iscsi` cannot be automatically unmounted.

Presenting EVA storage for Linux

To set up LUNs using HP P6000 Command View:

1. Set up LUNs using HP P6000 Command View. For procedure steps, see Step 2.
2. Set up the iSCSI drive on the iSCSI Initiator:
   a. Restart the iSCSI services:

      ```
      /etc/rc.d/initd/iscsi restart
      ```

   b. Verify that the iSCSI LUNs are presented to the operating system by entering the following command:

      ```
      fdisk -l
      ```

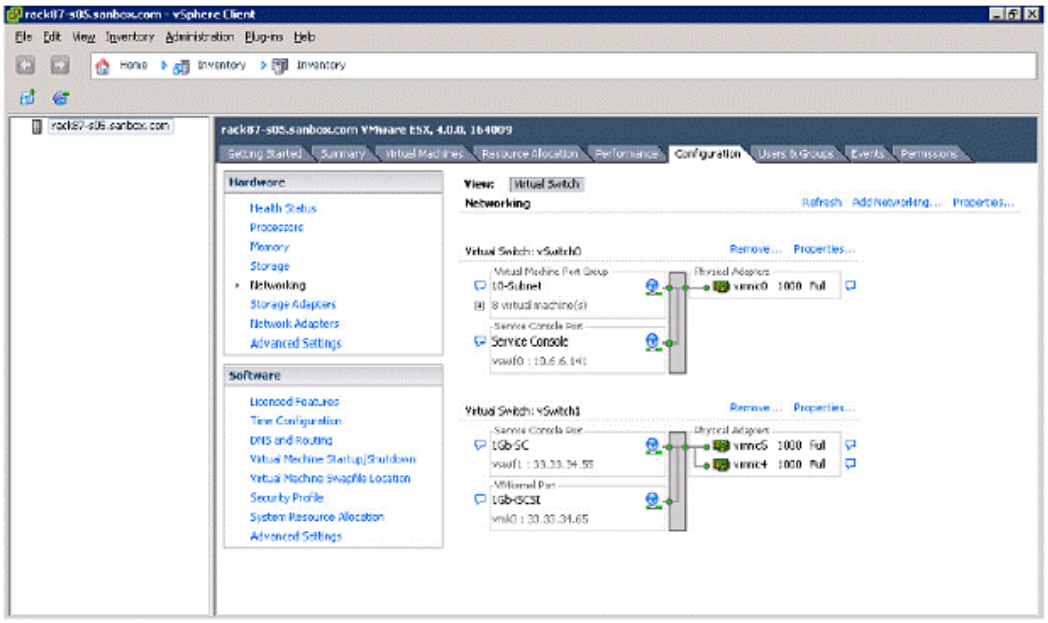
Setting up the iSCSI Initiator for VMware

The software iSCSI Initiator is built into the ESX server VMkernel and uses standard 10 GigE/GigE NICs to connect to the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.

To set up software-based iSCSI storage connectivity:

1. Install the appropriate license from VMware to enable the iSCSI software driver using the VMware instructions.
2. Configure the VMKernel TCP/IP networking stack for iSCSI support. Configure the VMkernel service console with dedicated virtual switch using a dedicated NIC for iSCSI data traffic. Follow the instructions from VMware. Figure 54 (page 115) shows an example of a configuration.

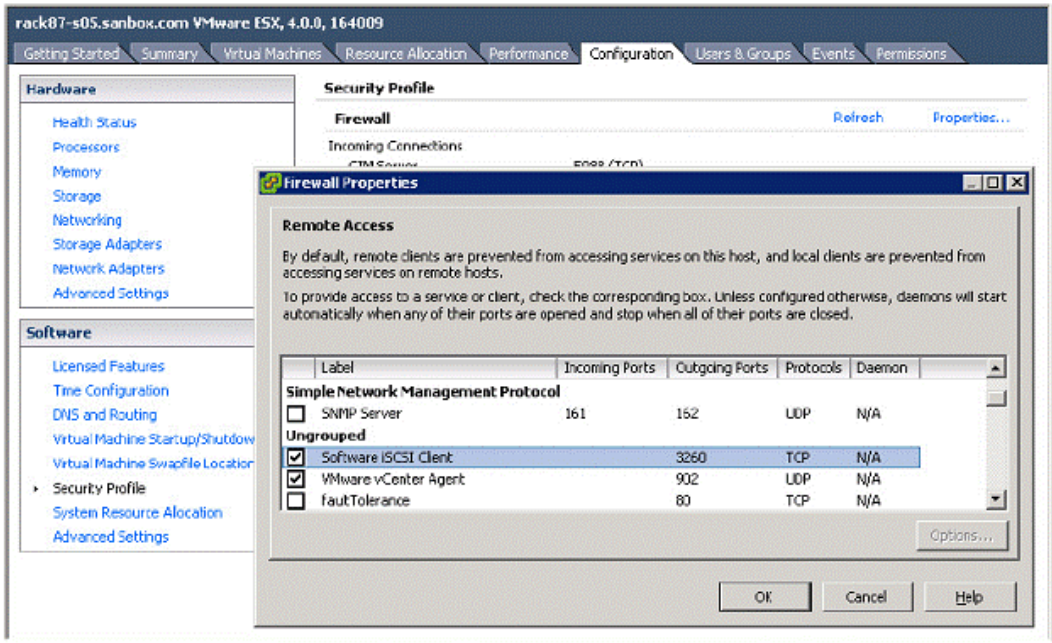
Figure 54 Configuration tab



3. Open a firewall port by enabling the iSCSI software client service:
   a. Using the VMware VI client, select the server.
   b. Click the **Configuration** tab, and then click **Security Profile**.
   c. Click the **Properties** link.

      The Firewall Properties dialog box is displayed (see Figure 55 (page 116)).

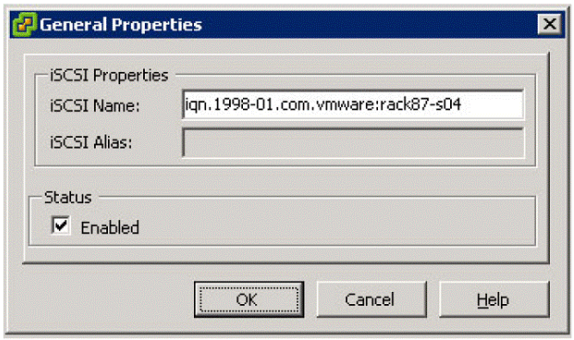
Figure 55 Firewall Properties dialog box



d. Select the **Software iSCSI** check box for to enable iSCSI traffic.
e. Click **OK**.

4. Enable the iSCSI software initiators:
   a. In the VMware VI client, select the server from the inventory panel.
   b. Click the **Configuration** tab, and then click **Storage Adapters** under Hardware.
   c. Under iSCSI Software Adapter, choose the available software initiator.
   d. Click the **Properties** link of the software adapter.
      The iSCSI Initiator Properties dialog box is displayed.
   e. Click **Configure**.
      The General Properties dialog box is displayed (see Figure 56 (page 116)).

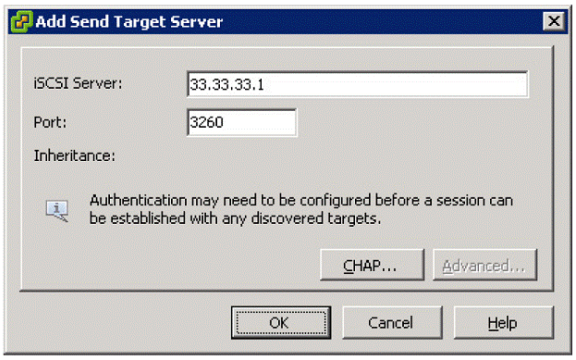
Figure 56 General Properties dialog box



   f. Select the **Enabled** check box.
   g. Click **OK**.

5. Set up Discovery Addressing for the software initiator:
   a. Repeat Step 4 to open the iSCSI initiator Properties dialog box.
   b. Click the **Dynamic Discovery** tab
   c. Click **Add** to add a new iSCSI target.
      The Add Send Target Server dialog box is displayed (see Figure 57 (page 117)).

Figure 57 Add Send Target Server dialog box

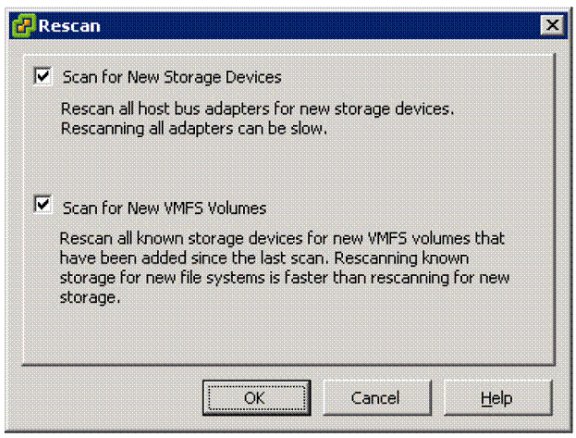


d. Enter the iSCSI IP address of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module.
e. Click **OK**.

6. To verify that the LUNs are presented to the VMware host, rescan for new iSCSI LUNs:
   a. In VMware's VI client, select a server and click the **Configuration** tab.
   b. Choose **Storage Adapters** in the hardware panel and click **Rescan** above the Storage Adapters panel.

      The Rescan dialog box is displayed (see Figure 58 (page 117)).

Figure 58 Rescan dialog box



   c. Select the **Scan for New Storage Devices** and the **Scan for New VMFS Volumes** check boxes.
   d. Click **OK**.

The LUNs are now available for the ESX server.

When presenting iSCSI storage to Virtual Machines, you must do the following:

- Create Virtual Machines using LSI Logic emulation.
- Present iSCSI storage to a Virtual Machine either as a data store created on an iSCSI device or raw device mapping.

Configuring multipath with the Solaris 10 iSCSI Initiator

This section contains information about configuring multipath with the Solaris 10 iSCSI Initiator to the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.

MPxIO overview

The Oracle multipathing software (MPxIO) provides basic failover and load-balancing capability to HP P6000, and EVA4x00/6x00/8x00 storage systems. MPxIO allows the merging of multiple SCSI layer paths, such as an iSCSI device exposing the same LUN via several different iSCSI target names. Because MPxIO is independent of transport, it can multipath a target that is visible on both iSCSI and FC ports. This section describes only the iSCSI implementation of MPxIO with the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.

For more information about MPxIO, see the *Solaris Fibre Channel and Storage Multipathing Administration Guide* at: http://docs.sun.com/source/819-0139.

Preparing the host system

To verify that MPxIO is enabled:

1. Enter the following command to verify that the MPIO setting is `no`:

   ```
   cat kernel/drv/iscsi.conf
   ```

2. 2. Verify `mpxio-disable="no"`

   If setting is `yes` change to **no**, and reboot:

   ```
   Reboot -- -r
   ```

Example: MPxIO on all iSCSI port settings in `/kernel/dev/iscsi.conf`.

```
# Copyright 2006 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All rights reserved.
# Use is subject to license terms.
#
#ident "@(#)iscsi.conf 1.2 06/06/12 SMI"
name="iscsi" parent="/" instance=0;
ddi-forceattach=1;
#
# I/O multipathing feature (MPxIO) can be enabled or disabled using
# mpxio-disable property. Setting mpxio-disable="no" will activate
# I/O multipathing; setting mpxio-disable="yes" disables the feature.
#
# Global mpxio-disable property:
#
# To globally enable MPxIO on all iscsi ports set:
# mpxio-disable="no";#
# To globally disable MPxIO on all iscsi ports set:
# mpxio-disable="yes";
#
mpxio-disable="no";
#
```

Enabling MPxIO for HP P63x0/P65x0 EVA

This section describes the steps necessary to configure a Solaris server to recognize an HP storage array in an iSCSI multipath environment with the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.

Edit the `scsi_vhci.conf` file

HP EVA storage arrays are supported with MPxIO:

- As symmetric devices only
- With no load balancing
- With no failback

To configure MPxIO for HP storage devices, the appropriate information needs to be added in the `/kernel/drv/scsi_vhci.conf` file. To enable MPxIO for HP storage:

1. Use a text editor to change the configuration file. For example:

   ```
   # vi /kernel/drv/scsi_vhci.conf
   ```

2. Modify load balancing to none:

   `load-balance="none";`

3. Modify auto-failback to disable:

   `auto-failback="disable";`

4. Add the following lines to cover the 4x00/6x00/8x00/P6000 HP arrays:

   ```
   device-type-scsi-options-list =
   "HP HSV", "symmetric-option";
   symmetric-option = 0x1000000;
   ```

   NOTE: You must enter six spaces between HP and HSV, as shown.

   Example: HP storage array settings in `/kernel/drv/scsi_vhci.conf`:

```
#
# Copyright 2004 Sun Microsystems, Inc.  All rights reserved.
# Use is subject to license terms.
#
#pragma ident   "@(#)scsi_vhci.conf     1.9     04/08/26 SMI"
#
name="scsi_vhci" class="root";
#
# Load balancing global configuration: setting load-balance="none" will cause
# all I/O to a given device (which supports multipath I/O) to occur via one
# path.  Setting load-balance="round-robin" will cause each path to the device
# to be used in turn.
#
load-balance="none";
#
# Automatic failback configuration
# possible values are auto-failback="enable" or auto-failback="disable"
auto-failback="disable";
#
# For enabling MPxIO support for 3rd party symmetric device need an
# entry similar to following in this file. Just replace the "SUN     SENA"
# part with the Vendor ID/Product ID for the device, exactly as reported by
# Inquiry cmd.
#
# device-type-scsi-options-list =
# "SUN     SENA", "symmetric-option";
#
# symmetric-option = 0x1000000;
#
  device-type-scsi-options-list =
  "HP      HSV","symmetric-option";
  symmetric-option = 0x1000000;
```

5. Activate the changes, by a reconfiguration reboot:

   ```
   # reboot -- -r
   ```

Edit the `sgen.conf` file

To ensure that the HP storage arrays are recognized by Solaris as scsi controllers, the appropriate information needs to be added in the `/kernel/drv/sgen.conf` file.

1. Use a text editor to change the configuration file. For example:

   ```
   # vi /kernel/drv/scsi_vhci.conf
   ```

2. Add `array_ctrl` to `device-type-config-list`:

   device-type-config-list="**array_ctrl**";

3. Uncomment all target/lun pair entries.

Example: HP storage array settings in `/kernel/drv/sgen.conf`.

```
.
.
.
# devices on your system.  Please refer to sgen(7d) for details.

#
# sgen may be configured to bind to SCSI devices exporting a particular device
# type, using the device-type-config-list, which is a ',' delimited list of
# strings.
#
device-type-config-list="array_ctrl";
.
.
.
# After configuring the device-type-config-list and/or the inquiry-config-list,
# the administrator must uncomment those target/lun pairs at which there are
# devices for sgen to control.  If it is expected that devices controlled by
# sgen will be hotplugged or added into the system later, it is recommended
# that all of the following lines be uncommented.

name="sgen" class="scsi" target=0 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=1 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=2 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=3 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=4 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=5 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=6 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=7 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=8 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=9 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=10 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=11 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=12 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=13 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=14 lun=0;
name="sgen" class="scsi" target=15 lun=0;
```

Create an `sgen` driver alias

The HP storage array is a self identifying scsi device and must be bound to the `sgen` driver using an alias.

1. Enter the following command to update the `sgen` driver.

   ```
   # update_drv -a -I "scsiclass,0c" sgen
   ```

   NOTE: Lowercase `c` is mandatory.

2. Verify sgen alias setting:

   ```
   #egrep sgen /etc/driver_aliases
   ```

Example:

```
# rep sgen /etc/driver_aliases
sgen "scsa,08.bfcp"
sgen "scsa,08.bvhci"
sgen "scsiclass,0c"
```

Enable iSCSI target discovery

Solaris supports three iSCSI target discovery methods:

- SendTargets
- Static
- iSNS

This section describes SendTargets discovery only. For further information on Static and iSNS discovery please see: http://docs.sun.com/app/docs/doc/817-5093/fqnlk?l=en&=view

To enable iSCSI target discovery:

1. Enable Sendtargets discovery:

   ```
   # iscsiadm modify discovery –t enable
   ```

2. Verify SendTargets setting is enabled:

   ```
   # iscsiadm list discovery
   ```

3. The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module has multiple iSCSI ports available to the Solaris iSCSI initiator. To discover the targets available, enter the following command for each iSCSI port IP address that the iSCSI initiator will access:

   ```
   #iscsiadm add discovery-address 'iscsi port IP address'
   ```

4. Verify discovery address entries:

   ```
   #iscsiadm list discovery-address
   ```

5. Once discovery addresses are entered, the Solaris initiator polls each address for all targets available. To list the discovered targets available to the initiator, enter the following command:

   ```
   #iscsiadm list target
   ```

   Example:

   ```
   #iscsiadm list target
   Target: iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.2.01.50014380025da539
           Alias: -
           TPGT: 0
           ISID: 4000002a0000
           Connections: 1
   Target: iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
           Alias: -
           TPGT: 0
           ISID: 4000002a0000
           Connections: 1
   ```

   NOTE: The iSCSI Initiator must discover all targets presented by each iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's iSCSI port that will be used in a multipath configuration.

6. Create the iSCSI device links for the local system:

   ```
   # devfsadm -i iscsi
   ```

Modify target parameter `MaxRecvDataSegLen`

Oracle recommends setting the Maximum Receive Data Segment Length to 655536 bytes for each iSCSI discovered target. Refer to the following URL for more information: http://wikis.sun.com/display/StorageDev/iSCSI+Features+Related+to+RFC+3720+Parameters.

To modify target parameter `MaxRecvDataSegLen`:

1. List all iSCSI targets:

   ```
   #iscsiadm list target-param
   ```

2. Modify maxrecvdataseglen to 65536 for each target:

   ```
   #iscsiadm modify target-param -p maxrecvdataseglen=65536 'target
   iqn'
   ```

3. Verify target setting using the example below.

Example:

```
# iscsiadm list target-param
Target: iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538

#iscsiadm modify target-param –p maxrecvdataseglen=65536 iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.
1.01.50014380025da538

# iscsiadm list target-param -v iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
```

```
Target: iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
        Alias: -
        Bi-directional Authentication: disabled
        Authentication Type: NONE
        Login Parameters (Default/Configured):
                Data Sequence In Order: yes/-
                Data PDU In Order: yes/-
                Default Time To Retain: 20/-
                Default Time To Wait: 2/-
                Error Recovery Level: 0/-
                First Burst Length: 65536/-
                Immediate Data: yes/-
                Initial Ready To Transfer (R2T): yes/-
                Max Burst Length: 262144/-
                Max Outstanding R2T: 1/-
                Max Receive Data Segment Length: 8192/65536
                Max Connections: 1/-
                Header Digest: NONE/-
                Data Digest: NONE/-
        Configured Sessions: 1
```

Monitor Multipath devices

Once virtual disks are presented by HP P6000 Command View to the Solaris host, the following commands should be used to monitor the configuration:

1. `iscsiadm list target -S`

   This command lists targets with their presented LUNs. In a multipath environment, the same LUN number should appear under different EVA port targets from the same controller.

   Example:

```
iscsiadm list target -S
Target: iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.2.01.50014380025da539
        Alias: -
        TPGT: 0
        ISID: 4000002a0000
        Connections: 1
        LUN: 120
             Vendor:  HP
             Product: HSV340
             OS Device Name: /dev/rdsk/c5t600508B4000B15A200005000038E0000d0s2

Target: iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
        Alias: -
        TPGT: 0
        ISID: 4000002a0000
        Connections: 1
        LUN: 120
             Vendor:  HP
             Product: HSV340
             OS Device Name: /dev/rdsk/c5t600508B4000B15A200005000038E0000d0s2
```

2. `mpathadm list lu`

   This command lists the total and operational path count for each logical unit. Both controller and device path counts are displayed.

   Example:

```
#mpathadm list lu
        /scsi_vhci/array-controller@g50014380025c4170
                Total Path Count: 2
                Operational Path Count: 2
        /dev/rdsk/c5t600508B4000B15A200005000038E0000d0s2
                Total Path Count: 2
```

3. `mpathadm show lu 'logical-unit'`

   This command lists details regarding a specific logical unit. This command can help verify symmetric mode, load balancing, and `autofailback` settings, as well as path and target port information.

   Example:

```
#mpathadm show lu /dev/rdsk/c5t600508B4000B15A200005000038E0000d0s2
Logical Unit:  /dev/rdsk/c5t600508B4000B15A200005000038E0000d0s2
        mpath-support:  libmpscsi_vhci.so
        Vendor:  HP
        Product:  HSV340
        Revision:  0005
        Name Type:  unknown type
        Name:  600508b4000b15a200005000038e0000
        Asymmetric:  no
        Current Load Balance:  none
        Logical Unit Group ID:  NA
        Auto Failback:  off
        Auto Probing:  NA

        Paths:
                Initiator Port Name:  iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:sansun-s04,4000002a00ff
                Target Port Name:  4000002a0000,iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.2.01.
50014380025da539
                Override Path:  NA
                Path State:  OK
                Disabled:  no

                Initiator Port Name:  iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:sansun-s04,4000002a00ff
                Target Port Name:  4000002a0000,iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.
50014380025da538d
                Override Path:  NA
                Path State:  OK
                Disabled:  no

        Target Ports:
                Name:  4000002a0000,iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00028.
b2.01.50014380025c4179
                Relative ID:  0

                Name:  4000002a0000,iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.
50014380025da538
                Relative ID:  0
```

Managing and Troubleshooting Solaris iSCSI Multipath devices

For further details on managing and troubleshooting a Solaris iSCSI multipath environment, see Chapter 14 of the *Solaris System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems* at http://dlc.sun.com/pdf/817-5093/817-5093.pdf.

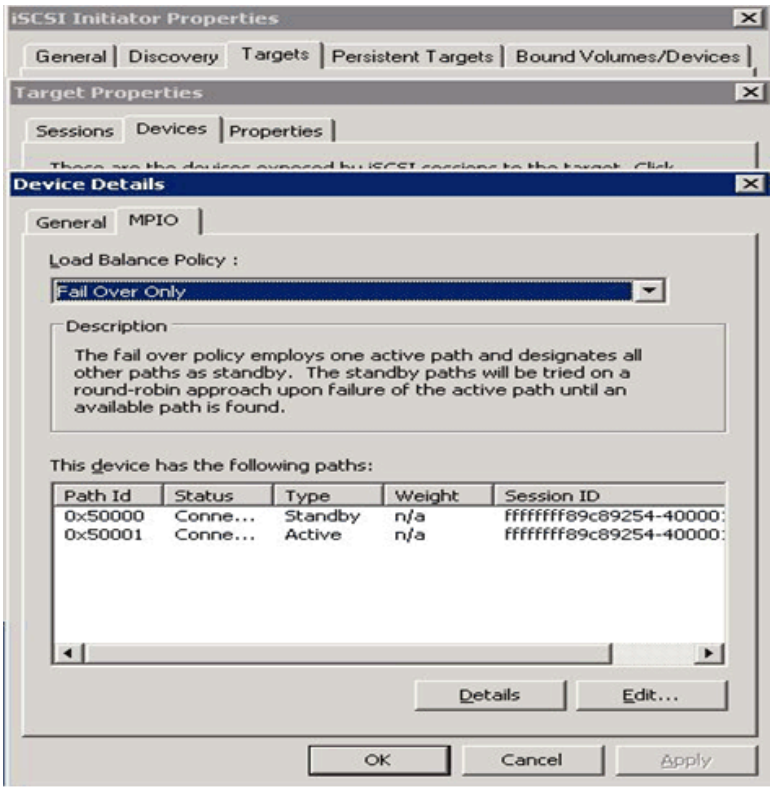
Configuring Microsoft MPIO iSCSI devices

For Microsoft MPIO, the load balance policies apply to each LUN individually. To display and modify the LUN load balance policy (see Figure 59 (page 124)):

1. Start the MS iSCSI control panel applet.
2. Select the **Target** tab.
3. Click **Details**.
4. Click **Devices**.
5. Highlight a LUN device name and click **Advanced**.
6. Select the MPIO check box.

7. Select the desired options on the Load Balance Policy menu to set the policy.

Figure 59 iSCSI Initiator MPIO properties



Load balancing features of Microsoft MPIO for iSCSI

The features of Microsoft MPIO for iSCSI include the following:

- **Failover Only.** No load balancing is performed. There is a single active path and the rest of the paths are standby paths. The active path is used for sending all I/O. If the active path fails, one of the standby paths is used. When the formerly active path is reconnected, it becomes active and the activated standby path returns to standby.
- **Round Robin.** All paths are active paths; they are used for sending I/O in a round robin fashion.
- **Round Robin with a subset of paths.** A set of paths is configured as active and a set of paths is configured as standby. I/O is sent in a round robin fashion over the active paths. If all of the active paths fail, one of the standby paths is used. If any of the formerly active paths become available again, the formerly active paths are used. The activated standby path becomes a standby path again.
- **Weighted Path.** Each path is assigned a weight and I/O is sent on the path with the lowest weight. If the path with the lowest weight fails, the path with the next lowest weight is used.
- **Least Queue Depth.** This is not supported by MPIO.

NOTE: For raw disk access, MPIO load balance policy must be set to **`Failover Only`**. For file system disk access, all MPIO load balance policies are supported. Failover policies are set on a LUN-by-LUN basis. MPIO support does not have global failover settings.

Microsoft MPIO with QLogic iSCSI HBA

The QLogic iSCSI HBA is supported in a multipath Windows configuration that is used in conjunction with Microsoft iSCSI Initiator Services and Microsoft MPIO. Because the iSCSI driver resides on board the QLogic iSCSI HBA, it is not necessary to install the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator.

Installing the QLogic iSCSI HBA

Install the QLogic iSCSI HBA hardware and software following the instructions in the QLogic installation manual. The QLogic iSCSI HBA is managed by QLogic's SANsurfer Management Suite (SMS).

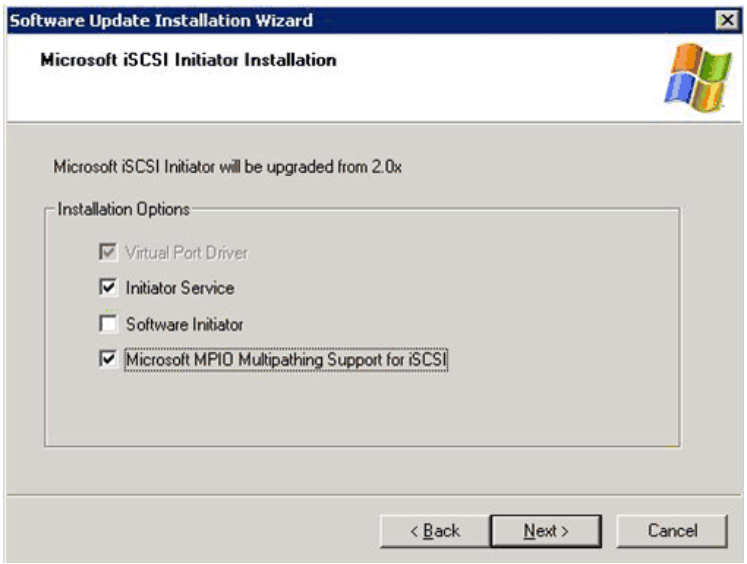
NOTE: Once the QLogic iSCSI HBA is installed, the configuration settings for the QLogic iSCSI Initiator must now be set through SMS. The QLogic iSCSI HBA will not appear in Microsoft's Network Connection device list.

Installing the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator services and MPIO

To install the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator:

1. Access the Microsoft iSCSI Initiation Installation page of the Software Update Installation Wizard (Figure 60 (page 125))
2. Reboot your system.

Figure 60 Microsoft iSCSI Initiator services screen



IMPORTANT: Do not check Microsoft Software Initiator; the QLogic initiator resides on the iSCSI HBA.

Configuring the QLogic iSCSI HBA

To configure the QLogic iSCSI HBA:

1. Start QLogic SMS either from the desktop icon or through Start/Programs and connect to localhost (see Figure 61 (page 126)).

2. Click **Yes** to start the general configuration wizard (see Figure 62 (page 126)). Use the Wizard to:
   - Choose **iSCSI HBA** port to configure the QLogic iSCSI HBA.
   - Configure HBA Port network settings.
   - Configure HBA Port DNS settings (optional).
   - Configure SLP Target Discovery settings (optional).
   - Configure iSNS Target Discovery settings (optional).

Figure 61 Connect to host screen

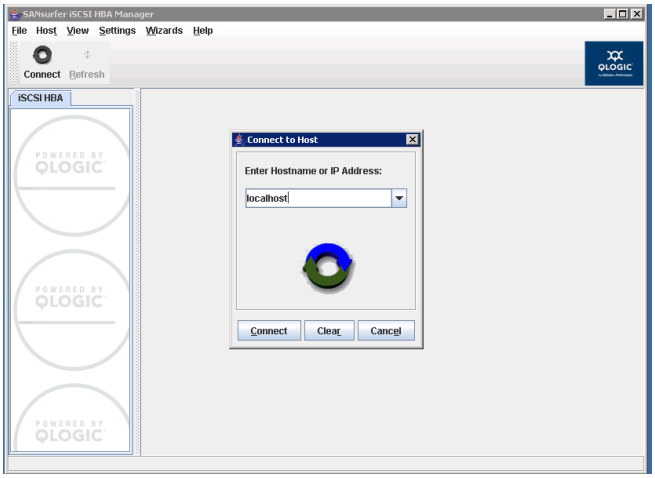
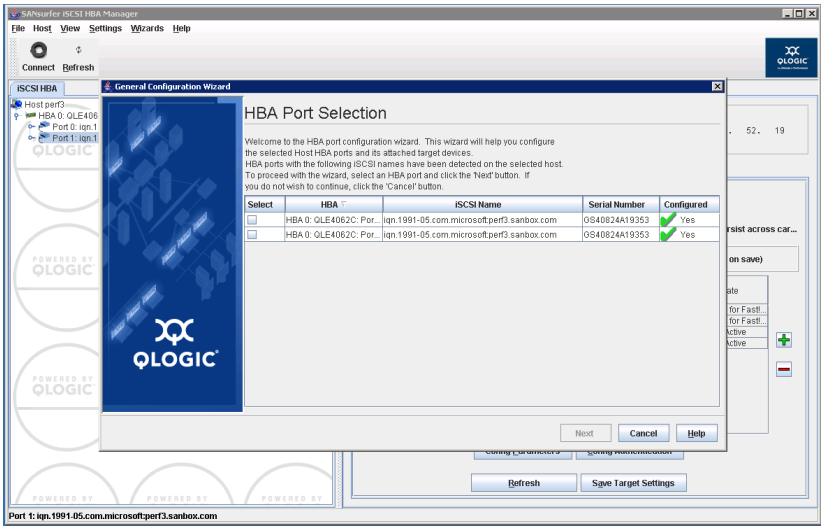


Figure 62 Start general configuration wizard

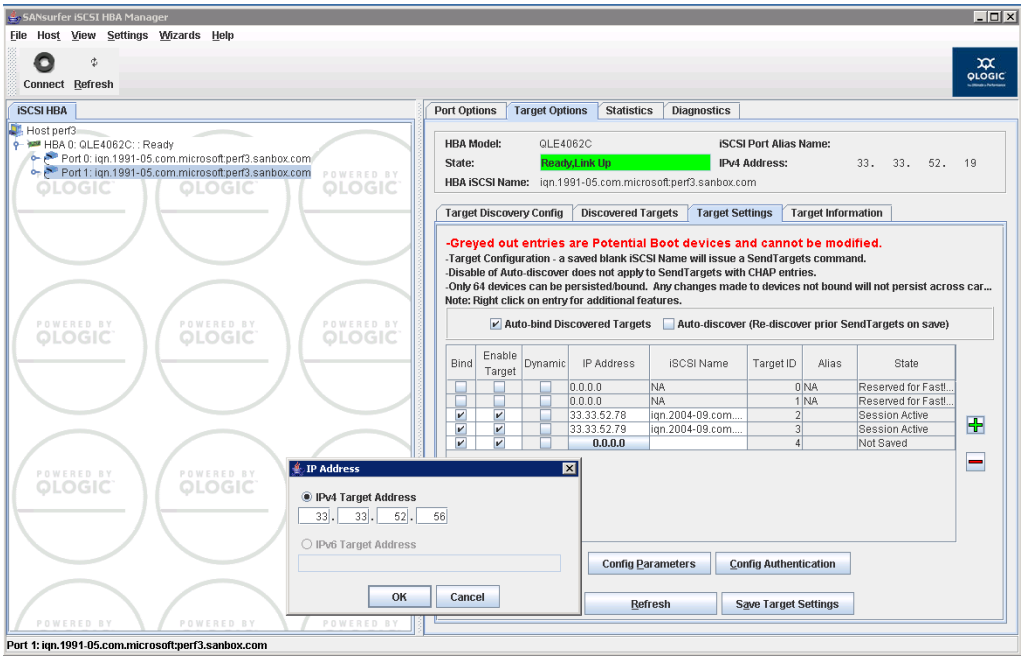


Adding targets to QLogic iSCSI Initiator

To add the HBA Port iSCSI targets:

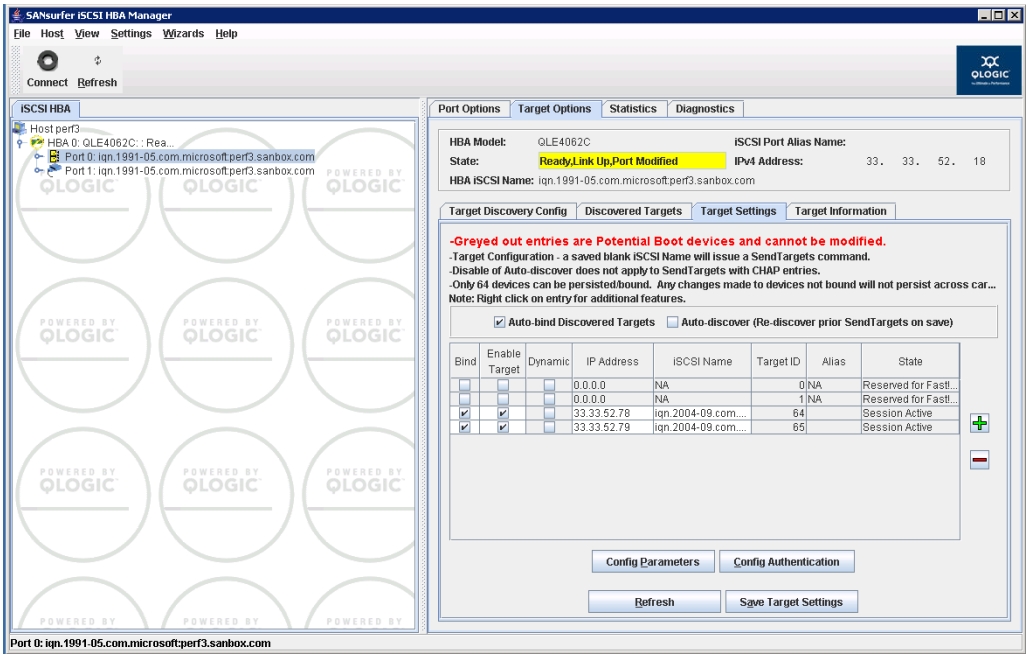
1. Click the green plus sign (see Figure 63 (page 127)).
2. Enter the first iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's target port IP address.

Figure 63 HBA Port Target Configuration



3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to add each additional iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE target iSCSI port.
4. Click **Next**.
5. To enable the changes, enter the SMS password: **`config`**.
6. Select the **Target Settings** tab. Verify that the HBA state is Ready, Link Up and each target entry's state is Session Active (Figure 64 (page 127)).

Figure 64 Target Settings tab

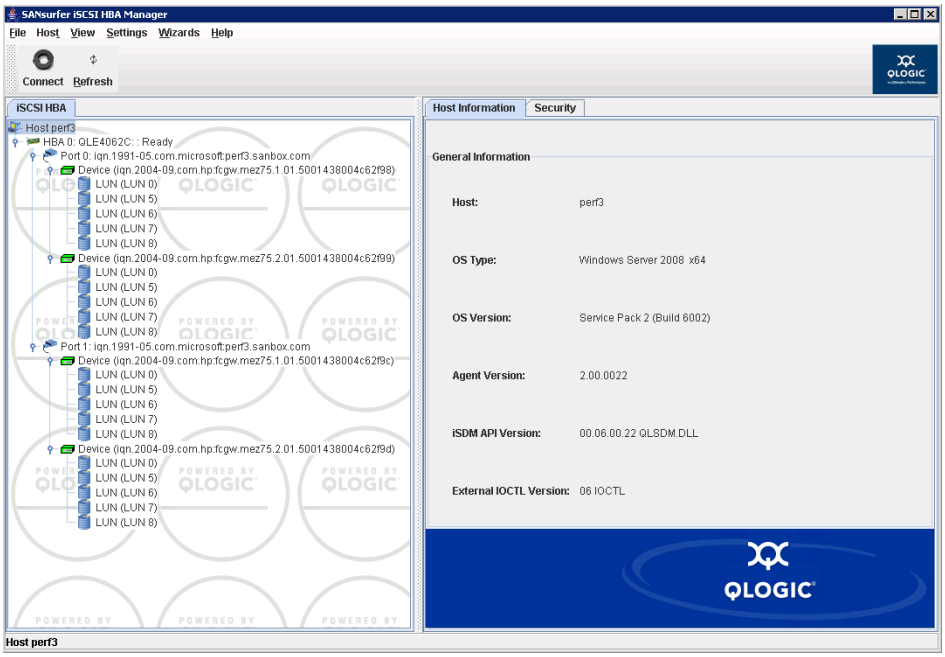


Presenting LUNs to the QLogic iSCSI Initiator

To present LUNs to the QLogic iSCSI Initiator:

1. Follow procedures in Step 2 to:
   - Create an iSCSI host.
   - Present LUNs to the iSCSI host.
2. On the **iSCSI HBA** tab (Figure 65 (page 128)) verify that the QLogic iSCSI HBA is connected to the iSCSI LUNs in SMS under the HBA iSCSI port.

Figure 65 HBA iSCSI port connections



Use Microsoft's iSCSI services to manage the iSCSI target login and LUN load balancing policies.

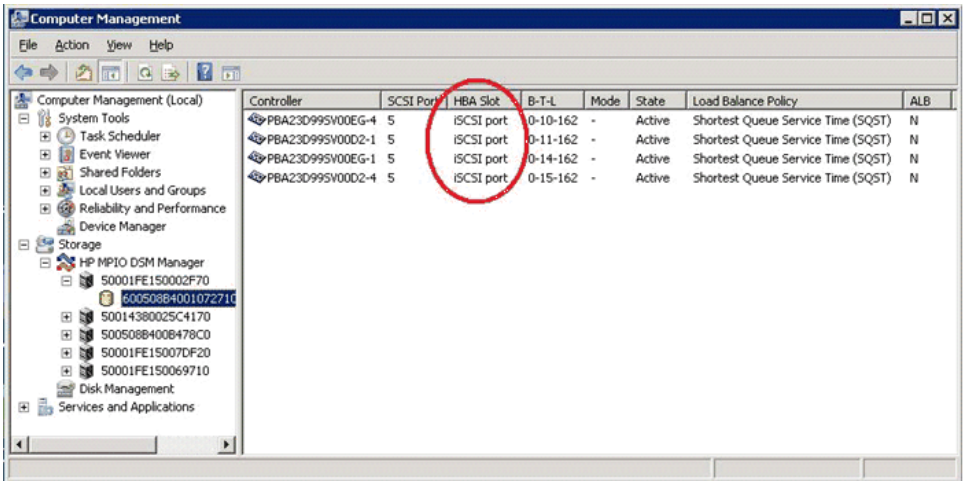
Installing the HP MPIO Full Featured DSM for EVA

Follow the steps in the Installation and Reference Guide located at:

http://h20000.www2.hp.com/bizsupport/TechSupport/DocumentIndex.jsp?contentType=SupportManual&lang=en&cc=us&docIndexId=64179&taskId=101&prodTypeId=18964&prodSeriesId=421492

Following the installation of the HP MPIO Full Featured DSM for EVA, open Computer Management to view and control the iSCSI LUNs (see Figure 66 (page 129)).

Figure 66 Example: HP MPIO DSM Manager with iSCSI devices



Microsoft Windows Cluster support

Microsoft Cluster Server for Windows 2003

iSCSI failover clustering is supported by the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules. For more information, see:

http://www.microsoft.com/windowsserver2003/technologies/storage/ iscsi/iscsicluster.mspx

Requirements

- Operating system: Windows Server 2003 Enterprise, SP2, R2, x86/x64
- Firmware: minimum version—3.1.0.0, released November 2009
- Initiator:
  - Persistent Reservation registry key—for Microsoft Generic DSM
  - Multiple NIC/iSCSI HBA ports—four recommended:
    - one public
    - one private
    - two storage, for higher availability and performance
  - MPIO—use HP DSM or the Microsoft Generic DSM. HP recommends using the latest available DSM.
- Connectivity: Dual blade configuration for redundancy

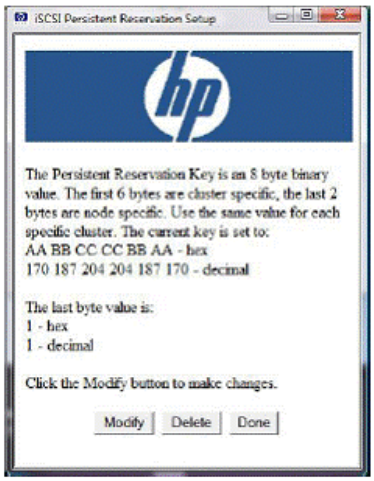
Setting the Persistent Reservation registry key

The iSCSI Persistent Reservation Setup utility assists you in creating the proper registry settings for use with the Microsoft Generic DSM and Microsoft Cluster Server. This must be run on every node of the cluster.

1. Run `PRset.hta` to start the application.

   This automatically adds the registry key and values seen.
2. Click **Modify** to make changes (see Figure 67 (page 130)).

Figure 67 iSCSI Persistent Reservation Setup window



3. Click **Done** to finish.

Each cluster is required to have its own value, and each node of a single cluster must have its own value. For example, Cluster A could have the default setting of AABBCCCCBBAA. Possible node settings:

Node 1	1
Node 2	2
Node 3	3
Node 4	4

When the HP Full Featured DSM for EVA is installed, it sets up Persistent Reservation in the registry by default. For more information on the HP DSM, see:

http://h20000.www2.hp.com/bizsupport/TechSupport/DocumentIndex.jsp?contentType=SupportManual&lang=en&cc=us&docIndexId=64179&taskId=101&prodTypeId=18964&prodSeriesId=421492

Microsoft Cluster Server for Windows 2008

iSCSI Failover clustering is supported on the HP StorageWorks MPX200 Multifunction Router. For more information, see:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc754482.aspx

Requirements

- Operating system: Windows Server 2008 Enterprise, SP2, R2, x86/x64
- Firmware: Minimum version—3.1.0.0, released November 2009
- Initiator:
  - Multiple NIC/iSCSI HBA ports—four recommended
    - one public
    - one private
    - two storage, for higher availability and performance
  - MPIO—use HP DSM or the Microsoft Generic DSM. HP recommends using the latest available DSM.
- Connectivity: Dual blade configuration for redundancy

Setting up authentication

Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) is an authentication protocol used for secure logon between the iSCSI Initiator and iSCSI target. CHAP uses a challenge-response security mechanism for verifying the identity of an initiator without revealing a secret password that is shared by the two entities. It is also referred to as a three-way handshake. An important concept of CHAP is that the initiator must prove to the target that it knows a shared secret without actually revealing the secret. (Sending the secret across the wire could reveal it to an eavesdropper.) CHAP provides a mechanism for doing this.

NOTE: Setting up authentication for your iSCSI devices is optional. If you require authentication, HP recommends that you configure it after you have properly verified installation and operation of the iSCSI implementation without authentication.

In a secure environment, authentication may not be required, access to the targets is limited only to trusted initiators.

In a less secure environment, the target cannot determine if a connection request is truly from a given host. In that case, the target can use CHAP to authenticate an initiator.

When an initiator contacts a target that uses CHAP, the target (called the authenticator) responds by sending the initiator a challenge. The challenge is a piece of information that is unique for this authentication session. The initiator then encrypts this information, using a previously-issued password that is shared by both initiator and target. The encrypted information is then returned to the target. The target has the same password and uses it as a key to encrypt the information it originally sent to the initiator. It compares its results with the encrypted results sent by the initiator. If they are the same, the initiator is assumed to be authentic

These schemes are often called proof of possession protocols. The challenge requires that an entity prove possession of a shared key or one of the key pairs in a public key scheme.

This procedure is repeated throughout the session to verify that the correct initiator is still connected. Repeating these steps prevents someone from stealing the initiator's session by replaying information that was intercepted on the line.

There are sever allnternet RFCs that cover CHAP in more detail:

- RFC 1994 (PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol, August 1996
- RFC 2433 (Microsoft PPP CHAP Extensions, October 1998)
- RFC 2759 (Microsoft PPP CHAP Extensions version 2, January 2000)

CHAP restrictions

The CHAP restrictions are as follows:

- Maximum length of 100 characters
- Minimum length of 1 character
- No restriction on the type of characters that can be entered
- Entering an IQN using the HP P6000 Command View add host tab requires the iSCSI initiator to have been registered by the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's initiator database. Implying that the initiator's target discovery has completed.

Microsoft Initiator CHAP secret restrictions

- Maximum length of 16 characters
- Minimum length of 12 characters
- No restriction on the type of characters that can be entered
- When an initiator uses iSNS for target discovery, only normal session CHAP applies

Linux version

- CHAP is supported with Linux open-iscsi Initiator and the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.
- CHAP setup with Linux iSCSI Initiator is not supported with the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.

ATTO Macintosh Chap restrictions

The ATTO Macintosh iSCSI Initiator does not support CHAP at this time.

Recommended CHAP policies

- The same CHAP secret should not be configured for authentication of multiple initiators or multiple targets.
- Any CHAP secret used for initiator authentication must not be configured for the authentication of any target; and any CHAP secret used for target authentication must not be configured for authentication of any initiator.
- CHAP should be configured after the initial iSCSI Initiator/target login to validate initiator/target connectivity. The first initiator/target login also creates a discovered iSCSI Initiator entry on the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules that will be used in the CHAP setup.

iSCSI session types

iSCSI defines two types of sessions:

- **Discovery.** SCSI discovery allows an initiator to find the targets to which it has access.
- **Normal operational session.** A normal operational session is unrestricted.

CHAP is enforced on both the discovery and normal operational session.

The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CHAP modes

The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules support two CHAP modes:

- **Single-direction.** The target authenticates the identity of the initiator with the user-provided CHAP secret. To enable single-direction CHAP, you need to enable CHAP for a specific initiator record on the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules and input a corresponding CHAP secret from the iSCSI host.
- **Bi-directional.** The initiator and target authenticate identity of each other with the user-provided CHAP secrets. To enable bi-directional CHAP for a discovery session, you need to provide a CHAP secret for the initiator and for the iSCSI port for which you are performing discovery. To enable bi-directional CHAP for a normal session, you will need to provide a CHAP secret for the initiator and for the iSCSI-presented target that you are trying to log in to.
- Once CHAP is enabled, it is enforced for both the normal and discovery sessions. You only have the choice of what type (single or bi-directional) of CHAP to perform:
  - Single-direction CHAP during discovery and during normal session
  - Single-direction CHAP during discovery and bi-directional CHAP during normal session
  - Bi-directional CHAP during discovery and single–direction CHAP during normal session
  - Bi-directional CHAP during discovery and during normal session

Enabling single–direction CHAP during discovery and normal session

Table 22 (page 133) lists the parameters you use to enable single-direction CHAP.

Table 22 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module secret settings

iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module secret settings		MS Initiator secret settings	
Source	**Setting (example)**	**Action**	**Setting (example)**
iSCSI Port	N/A	General Tab Secret	N/A
Discovered iSCSI Initiator	CHAPsecret01	Add Target Portal	CHAPsecret01
iSCSI Presented Target	N/A	Log on to Target	CHAPsecret01
NOTE: These are examples of secret settings. Configure CHAP with settings that apply to your specific network environment.			

1. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules discovered iSCSI Initiator entry. CHAP can be enabled via CLI only. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI:
   a. If the iSCSI Initiator is not listed under `set chap` command:
      - HP Command View Option: add the initiator iqn name string via HP Command View's **add host** tab.
        - Go to the HP P6000 Command View and select **Hosts** then select **Add Host** tab and enter the iqn name string.
      - CLI Option: Enter the initiator add command and add the iSCSI Initiator that is about to do discovery.
   b. If the iSCSI Initiator is listed under set chap command, then enable CHAP secret. For example: CHAPsecret01:
      - Select the index of the iSCSI Initiator.
      - To Enable CHAP, select 0, then type the CHAP secret.

2. Enable CHAP for the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator:
   a. Click **Discovery**.
      - For manually discovering iSCSI target portals:
        a. Click **Add** under Target Portals.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSCSI port of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module.
        c. Click **Advanced**.
        d. Select the CHAP Login Information check box.
        e. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box. For example:

           `CHAPsecret01`

        f. Click **OK** and the initiator completes Target discovery.
      - Using iSNS for target discovery:
        a. Click **Add** under iSNS Servers.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSNS server.
        c. Click **OK**.
   b. Click **Targets**.
   c. Select the appropriate target for login.
   d. Click **Log On**.
   e. Click **Advanced**.
   f. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
   g. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box.
   h. Click **OK**.
   i. Click **OK** and the initiator completes normal login.

Enabling CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module-discovered iSCSI initiator entry

CHAP can be enabled via CLI only. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI:

1. If the iSCSI Initiator is not listed under set chap command:
   a. HP Command View Option: add the initiator iqn name string via HP Command View's **Add Host** tab.
      - Go to HP Command View and select **Hosts** then select the **Add Host** tab and enter the iqn name string.
   b. CLI Option: Enter the initiator add command and add the iSCSI Initiator that is about to do discovery.
2. If the iSCSI Initiator is listed under the `set chap` command, enable CHAP secret. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
   a. Select the index of the iSCSI Initiator.
   b. To Enable CHAP, select 0, then enter the CHAP secret.

Enable CHAP for the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator

1. Click **Discovery**. For manually discovering iSCSI target portals:
   a. Click **Add** under Target Portals.
   b. Enter the IP address of the iSCSI port of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module.
   c. Click **Advanced**.
   d. Select the CHAP Login Information checkbox.
   e. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's-discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box, for example, `CHAPsecret01`.
   f. Click **OK** and the initiator completes Target discovery. Using iSNS for target discovery:
      - Click **Add** under iSNS Servers.
      - Enter the IP address of the iSNS server.
      - Click **OK**.
2. Click **Targets** and select the appropriate target for login.
3. Click **Log On** and then click **Advanced**.
4. Select the CHAP Login Information checkbox.
5. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's-discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **OK** again.

Enable CHAP for the open-iscsi iSCSI Initiator

To enable CHAP in `open-iscsi`, you need to edit `/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file`:

1. Enable CHAP for both Discovery and Normal Session by:

```
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
```

2. Setup Username and Password for Initiator for Normal Session. For Example:

```
# To set a CHAP username and password for initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username = username
#node.session.auth.password = password
  node.session.auth.username = iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.
sanergy33
node.session.auth.password = CHAPSecret01
```

3. Setup Username and Password for Initiator for Discovery Session. For example:

```
# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for the initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = username
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = password
discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.
sanergy33
discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = CHAPSecret01
```

4. Save the file and start or restart iscsi:

   `[root@sanergy33 iscsi]# /etc/init.d/iscsi start` or `/etc/init.d/iscsi restart`

5. Using the `iscsiadm` do a discovery. For example:

```
[root@sanergy33 iscsi]# iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p
10.10.1.23
```

6. Using the iscsiadm do a login into the iSCSI Target. For example:

```
[root@sanergy33 iscsi]# iscsiadm --mode node --targetname
iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538 --login
```

The following is a sample `iscsid.conf` file for CHAP:

```
# *************
# CHAP Settings
# *************

# To enable CHAP authentication set node.session.auth.authmethod
# to CHAP. The default is None.
#node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP

# To set a CHAP username and password for initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username = username
node.session.auth.username = iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.sanergy33
#node.session.auth.password = password
node.session.auth.password = CHAPSecret01

# To set a CHAP username and password for target(s)
# authentication by the initiator, uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username_in = username_in
#node.session.auth.password_in = password_in

# To enable CHAP authentication for a discovery session to the target
# set discovery.sendtargets.auth.authmethod to CHAP. The default is None.
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP

# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for the initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = username
discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.sanergy3
3
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = password
discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = CHAPSecret01

# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for target(s)
# authentication by the initiator, uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username_in = username_in
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password_in = password_in
```

Enabling single–direction CHAP during discovery and bi-directional CHAP during normal session

Table 23 (page 136) lists the parameters you need to enable single-direction CHAP during discovery.

Table 23 Parameters enabling single-direction CHAP

		MS Initiator secret settings	
iSCSI Port	N/A	General Tab Secret	`hpstorageworks`
Discovered iSCSI Initiator	`CHAPsecret01`	Add Target Portal	`CHAPsecret0`
iSCSI Presented Target	`hpstorageworks`	Log on to Target	`CHAPsecret01`
Note: These are examples of secret settings. You must configure CHAP with settings that apply to your specific network environment.			

1. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller-discovered iSCSI Initiator entry. CHAP can be enabled via CLI only.

   To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller-discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:

   a. If the iSCSI Initiator is not listed under the `set chap` command:

      - HP Command View Option: add the initiator iqn name string via HP Command View's **Add Host** tab.
        - Go to HP Command View and select **Hosts** then select Tab **Add Host** and enter the iqn name string.
      - CLI Option: Enter the initiator add command and add the iSCSI Initiator that is about to do discovery.

   b. If the iSCSI Initiator is listed under set chap command, then enable CHAP secret. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.

      - Select the index of the iSCSI Initiator.
      - To Enable CHAP, select 0, then enter the CHAP secret.

2. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI presented target:

   - To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller Discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:
     - Enter the set CHAP command.
     - Select the Presented Target the initiator will log in to.
     - Enable CHAP and enter a CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`

3. Enable CHAP for the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator.
   a. Click the **General** tab.
   b. Click **Secret** in the middle of the screen.
   c. Click **Reset**.
   d. Enter the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI Presented Target CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.
   e. Click **Discovery**.
      - For manually discovering iSCSI target portals:
        a. Click **Add** under **Target Portals**.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSCSI port of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller.
        c. Click **Advanced**.
        d. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
        e. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator in the **Target Secret** box. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
        f. Click **OK** and the initiator completes target discovery.
      - Using iSNS for target discovery:
        a. Click **Add** under **iSNS Servers**.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSNS server.
        c. Click **OK**.
   f. Click **Targets**.
   g. Select the appropriate target for login.
   h. Click **Log On**.
   i. Click **Advanced**.
   j. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
   k. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator in the **Target Secret** box. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
   l. Select the **Mutual Authentication** check box.
   m. Click **OK**.
   n. Click **OK** and the initiator completes normal login.

Enabling bi-directional CHAP during discovery and single–direction CHAP during normal session

Table 24 (page 138) lists the parameters you need to enable bi-direction CHAP during discovery and bi-directional CHAP during normal session.

Table 24 Parameters enabling bi-direction CHAP

		MS Initiator secret settings	
iSCSI Port	`hpstorageworks`	General Tab Secret	`hpstorageworks`
Discovered iSCSI Initiator	`CHAPsecret01`	Add Target Portal	`CHAPsecret0`
iSCSI Presented Target	N/A	Log on to Target	`CHAPsecret01`
Note: These secret settings are for example only. Please configure CHAP with settings that apply to your specific network environment.			

1. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator entry. CHAP can be enabled via CLI only.

   To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:

   a. If the iSCSI Initiator is not listed under the `set chap` command:

      - HP Command View Option: add the initiator iqn name string via the HP Command View **Add Host** tab.

        Go to HP Command View and select **Hosts** then select the **Add Host** tab and enter the iqn name string.

      - CLI Option: Enter the `initiator add` command and add the iSCSI Initiator that is about to do discovery.

   b. If the iSCSI Initiator is listed under the `set chap` command, then enable CHAP secret. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.

      - Select the index of the iSCSI Initiator.
      - To Enable CHAP, select 0, then enter the CHAP secret.

2. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI port:

   a. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI port using HP P6000 Command View:

      - Select the appropriate iSCSI Controller, then select the **IP Ports** tab, then select the appropriate IP Port.
      - Under Security, select **Enabled in CHAP Status**, then enter the CHAP Secret. For example, `hpstorageworks`
      - Click the **Save Changes** tab to save the changes.

   b. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI port using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:

      - Enter the `set chap` command.
      - Select the appropriate Portal iqn name index that the initiator will log in to.
      - Select 0 to enable CHAP.
      - Enter a CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.

3. Enable CHAP for the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator.
   a. Click the **General** tab.
   b. Click **Secret** in the middle of the screen.
   c. Click **Reset**.
   d. Enter the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI Presented Target CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.
   e. Click **OK**.
   f. Click **Discovery**.
      - For manually discovering iSCSI target portals:
        a. Click **Add** under **Target Portals**.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSCSI port of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller.
        c. Click **Advanced**.
        d. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
        e. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
        f. Select the **Mutual Authentication** check box.
        g. Click **OK**.
        h. Click **OK** and the initiator completes Target discovery.
      - Using iSNS for Target discovery:
        a. Click **Add** under **iSNS Servers**.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSNS server.
        c. Click **OK**.
   g. Click **Targets**.
   h. Select the appropriate target for login.
   i. Click **Log On**.
   j. Click **Advanced**.
   k. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
   l. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
   m. Select the **Mutual Authentication** check box.
   n. Click **OK**.
   o. Click **OK** and the initiator completes normal login.

Enabling bi-directional CHAP during discovery and bi-directional CHAP during normal session

Table 25 (page 140) lists the parameters you need to enable bi–directional CHAP during discovery and bi-directional CHAP during normal session.

Table 25 Parameters enabling bi-direction CHAP

		MS Initiator secret settings	
iSCSI Port	`hpstorageworks`	General Tab Secret	`hpstorageworks`
Discovered iSCSI Initiator	`CHAPsecret01`	Add Target Portal	`CHAPsecret0`
iSCSI Presented Target	`hpstorageworks`	Log on to Target	`CHAPsecret01`
Note: These are examples of secret settings. You must configure CHAP with settings that apply to your specific network environment.			

1. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator entry. CHAP can be enabled via CLI only. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:
   a. If the iSCSI Initiator is not listed under set chap command:
      - HP Command View Option: add the initiator iqn name string via Command View's **Add Host** tab.
        - Go to HP P6000 Command View and select **Hosts** then select Tab **Add Host** and enter the iqn name string.
      - CLI Option: Enter the `initiator add` command and add the iSCSI Initiator that is about to do discovery.
   b. If the iSCSI Initiator is listed under set chap command, then enable CHAP secret. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
      a. Select the index of the iSCSI Initiator.
      b. To Enable CHAP, select 0, then type the CHAP secret.
2. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI port:
   a. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI port using HP P6000 Command View:
      - Select the appropriate iSCSI Controller, then select the **IP Ports** tab, then select the appropriate IP Port.
      - Under **Security**, select **Enabled in CHAP Status**, then enter the CHAP Secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.
      - Click the **Save Changes** tab to save the changes.
   b. To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI port using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:
      - Enter the `set chap` command.
      - Select the appropriate Portal iqn name index that the initiator will log in to.
      - Select 0 to enable CHAP.
      - Enter a CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.
3. Enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI presented target:
   - To enable CHAP for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller Discovered iSCSI Initiator entry using the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller CLI:
     - Enter the `set CHAP` command.
     - Select the Presented Target the initiator will log in to.
     - Enable CHAP and enter a CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.

4. Enable CHAP for the Microsoft iSCSI Initiator.
   a. Click the **General** tab.
   b. Click **Secret** in the middle of the screen.
   c. Click **Reset**.
   d. Enter the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller iSCSI Presented Target CHAP secret. For example: `hpstorageworks`.
   e. Click **OK**.
   f. Click **Discovery**.
      - For manually discovering iSCSI target portals:
        a. Click **Add** under **Target Portals**.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSCSI port of the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller.
        c. Click **Advanced**.
        d. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
        e. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
        f. Select the **Mutual Authentication** check box.
        g. Click **OK**.
        h. Click **OK** and the initiator completes target discovery.
      - Using iSNS for target discovery:
        a. Click **Add** under **iSNS Servers**.
        b. Enter the IP address of the iSNS server.
        c. Click **OK**.
   g. Click **Targets**.
   h. Select the appropriate target for login.
   i. Click **Log On**.
   j. Click **Advanced**.
   k. Select the **CHAP Login Information** check box.
   l. Enter the CHAP secret for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller discovered iSCSI Initiator in the Target Secret box. For example: `CHAPsecret01`.
   m. Select the **Mutual Authentication** check box.
   n. Click **OK**.
   o. Click **OK** and the initiator completes normal login.

Enable CHAP for the open-iscsi iSCSI Initiator

To enable CHAP in open-iscsi, you need to edit the `/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf` file.

1. Enable CHAP for both Discovery and Normal Session by:

```
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
```

2. Setup Username and Password for Initiator and Target for Normal Session. For Example:

```
# To set a CHAP username and password for initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username = username
#node.session.auth.password = password
  node.session.auth.username = iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.sanergy33
node.session.auth.password = CHAPSecret01
# To set a CHAP username and password for target(s)
# authentication by the initiator, uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username_in = username_in
node.session.auth.username_in = iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
#node.session.auth.password_in = password_in
node.session.auth.password_in = hpstorageworks
```

3. Setup Username and Password for Initiator and Portal for Discovery Session. For example:

```
# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for the initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = username
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = password
discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.sanergy33
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = CHAPSecret01
# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for target(s)
# authentication by the initiator, uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username_in = username_in
discovery.sendtargets.auth.username_in = iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password_in = password_in
discovery.sendtargets.auth.password_in = hpstorageworks
```

4. Save the file and start or restart iscsi:

   `[root@sanergy33 iscsi]# /etc/init.d/iscsi start or /etc/init.d/iscsi restart`

5. Using the `iscsiadm` do a discovery. For example:

   `[root@sanergy33 iscsi]# iscsiadm -m discovery -t sendtargets -p 10.10.1.23`

6. Using the `iscsiadm` do a login into the iSCSI Target. For example:

   `[root@sanergy33 iscsi]# iscsiadm --mode node --targetname iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538 –login`

   The following is a sample `iscsid.conf` file for CHAP:

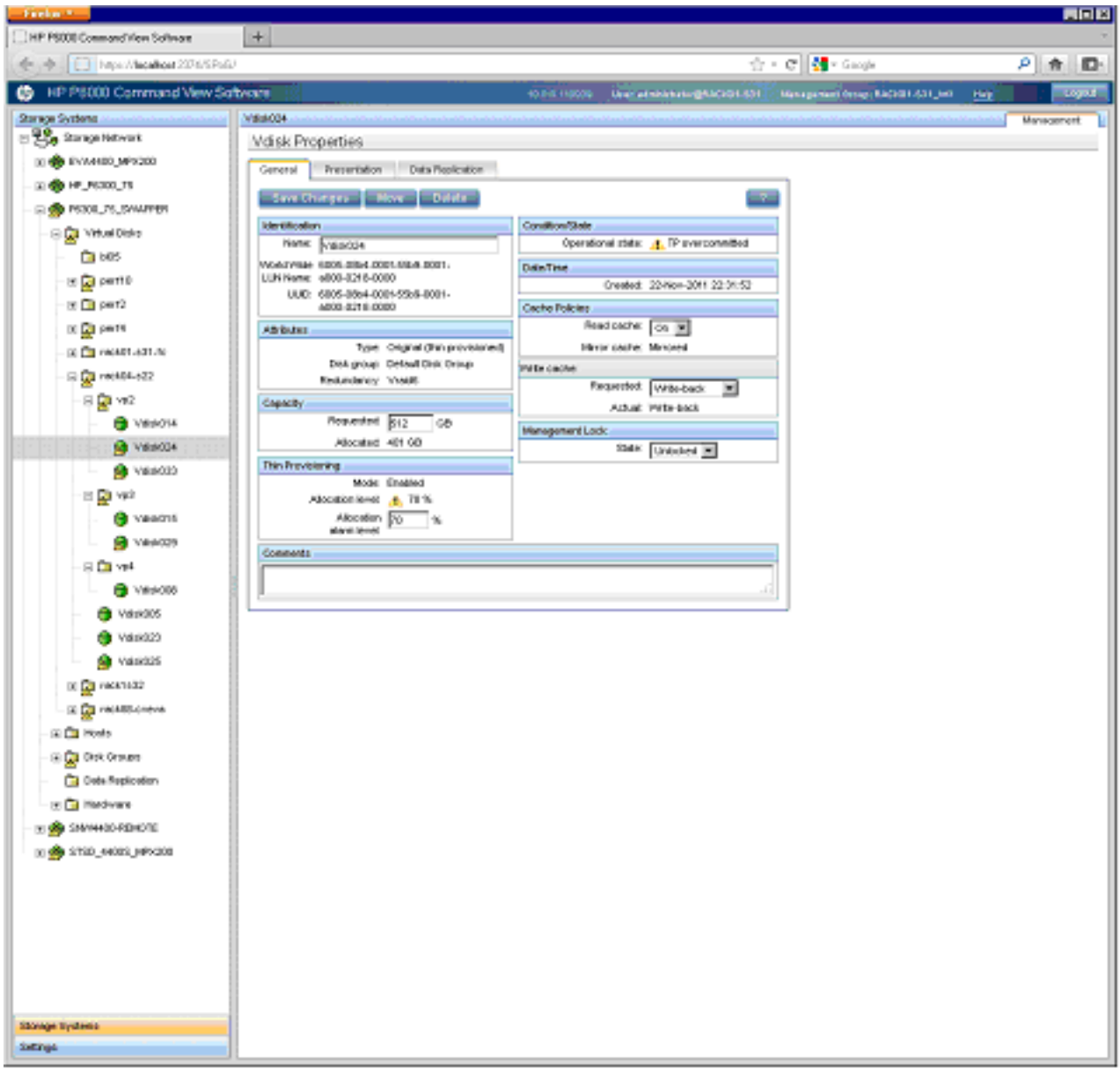
```
# *************
# CHAP Settings
# *************
# To enable CHAP authentication set node.session.auth.authmethod
# to CHAP. The default is None.
#node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP

# To set a CHAP username and password for initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username = username
node.session.auth.username =
iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.sanergy33
#node.session.auth.password = password
node.session.auth.password = CHAPSecret01

# To set a CHAP username and password for target(s)
# authentication by the initiator, uncomment the following lines:
#node.session.auth.username_in = username_in
node.session.auth.username_in =
iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
#node.session.auth.password_in = password_in
node.session.auth.password_in = hpstorageworks

# To enable CHAP authentication for a discovery session to the target
# set discovery.sendtargets.auth.authmethod to CHAP. The default is None.
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.authmethod = CHAP
discovery.sendtargets.auth.authmethod = CHAP

# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for the initiator
# authentication by the target(s), uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username = username
discovery.sendtargets.auth.username =
iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:fc813cac13.sanergy33
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = password
discovery.sendtargets.auth.password = CHAPSecret01

# To set a discovery session CHAP username and password for target(s)
# authentication by the initiator, uncomment the following lines:
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.username_in = username_in
discovery.sendtargets.auth.username_in =
iqn.2004-09.com.hp.fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
#discovery.sendtargets.auth.password_in = password_in
discovery.sendtargets.auth.password_in = hpstorageworks
```

iSCSI and FCoE thin provision handling

iSCSI and FCoE presented LUNs which experience the thin provision (TP) Overcommitted state, as detected by P6000 Command View and illustrated in Figure 68 (page 144) will generally be write-protected until the Overcommitted state is cleared. However, there is a special case for Windows and Windows 2008 FCoE or iSCSI initiators, the TP Overcommitted LUNs are masked and manual intervention through P6000 Command View is required to remove the mask by re-presenting the LUN(s) to the iSCSI or FCoE initiator(s).

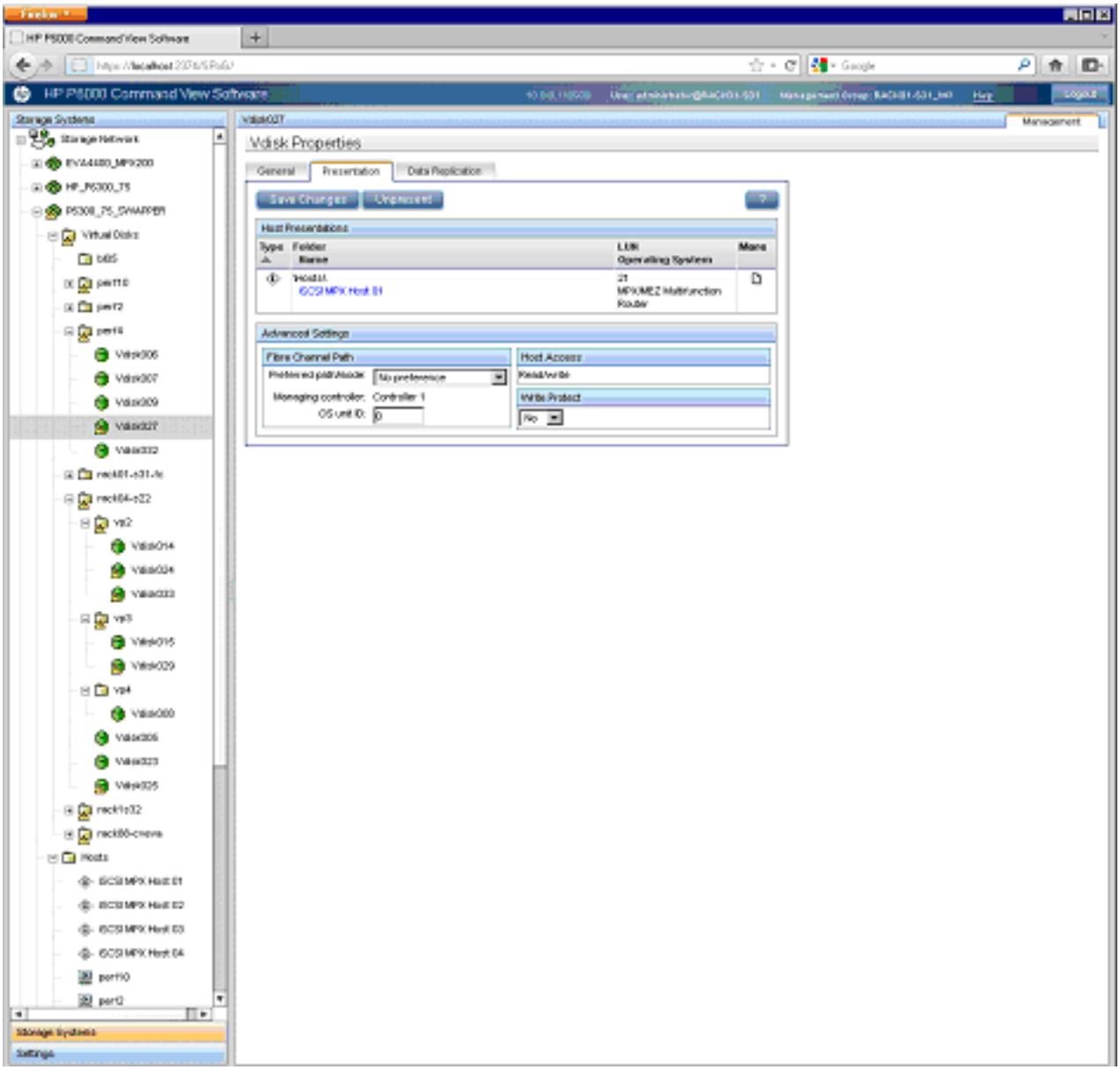
Note that the TP Overcommitted mask state, only for the iSCSI and FCoE presented LUNs, is cleared by a restart of both of the iSCSI controllers.

Figure 68 FCoE presented LUN reported as TP Overcommitted



The masking is visible by navigating to the LUN's presentation tab as illustrated in Figure 69 (page 145), where it can be seen that the LUN is presented to the P6000 iSCSI Host port, but no longer to a iSCSI or FCoE initiator. A user may walk through the Virtual Disks tabs and note each TP Overcommited LUN and then present after the TP Overcommited state is cleared. Or a user may first clear the TP Overcommitted state and then walk through the Virtual Disks presentation tabs and re-present each LUN listed in the iSCSI HOST 01,02,03,04 lists which are found to no longer be presented to iSCSI or FCoE initiators.

Figure 69 or Windows 2008 initiator iSCSIpresented LUN reported as TP Overcommitted



Lists of all presented LUNs, per Virtual Port Group, are always available by navigating to the HOSTs tab and then to the one of four iSCSI HOSTs VPgroups, as illustrated in Figure 70 (page 146).

Figure 70 iSCSI Host presented LUNs list

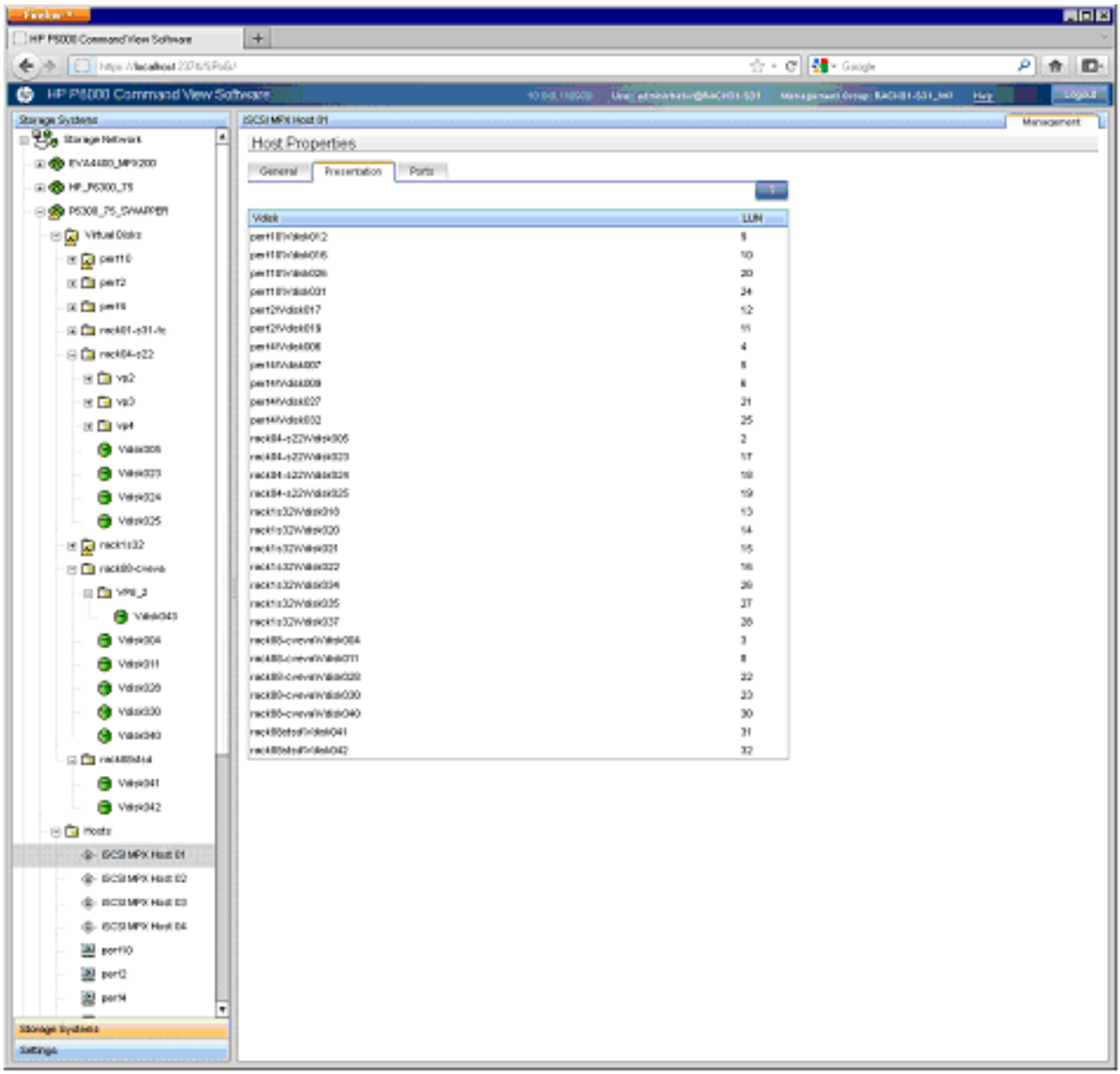
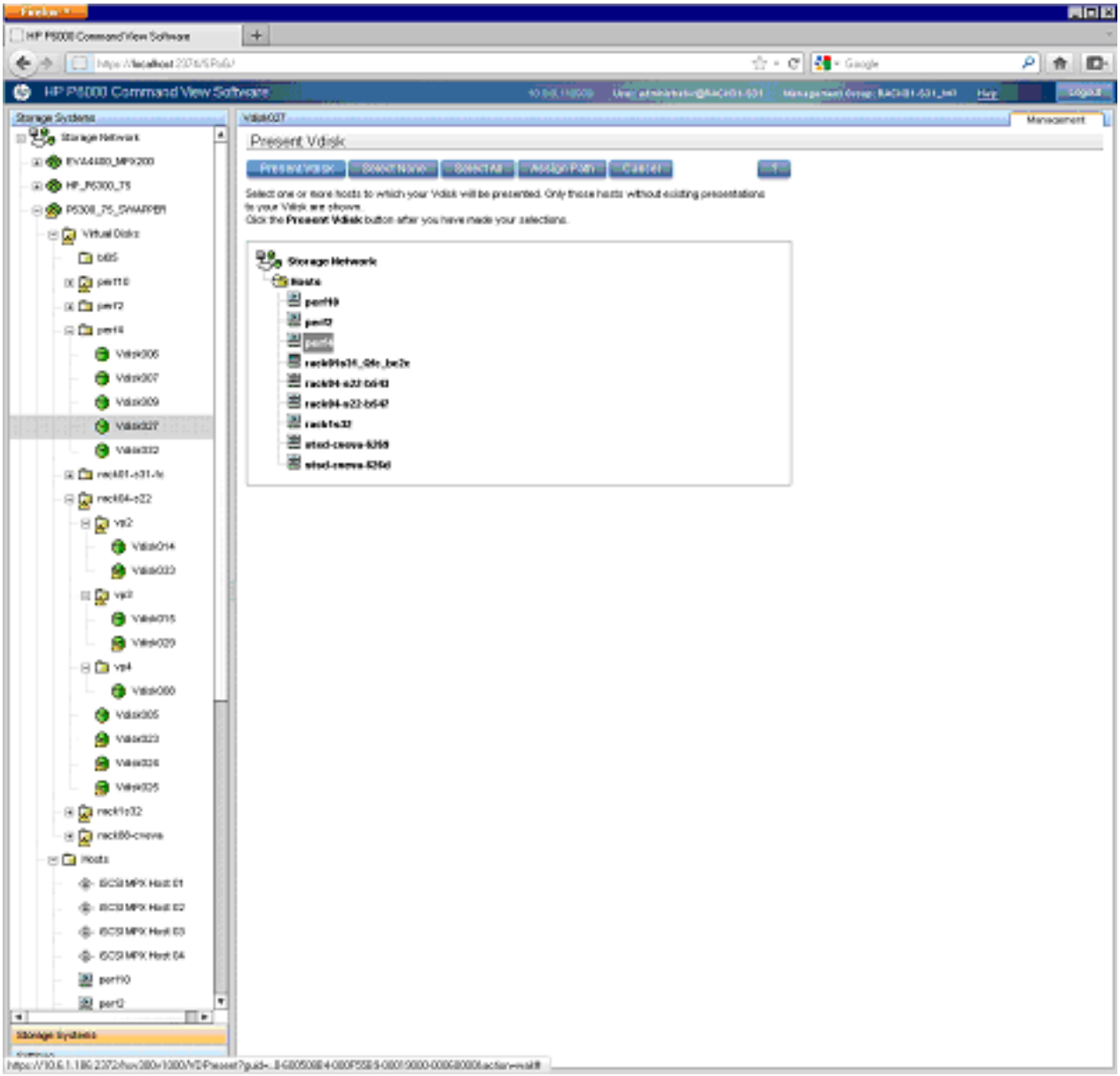


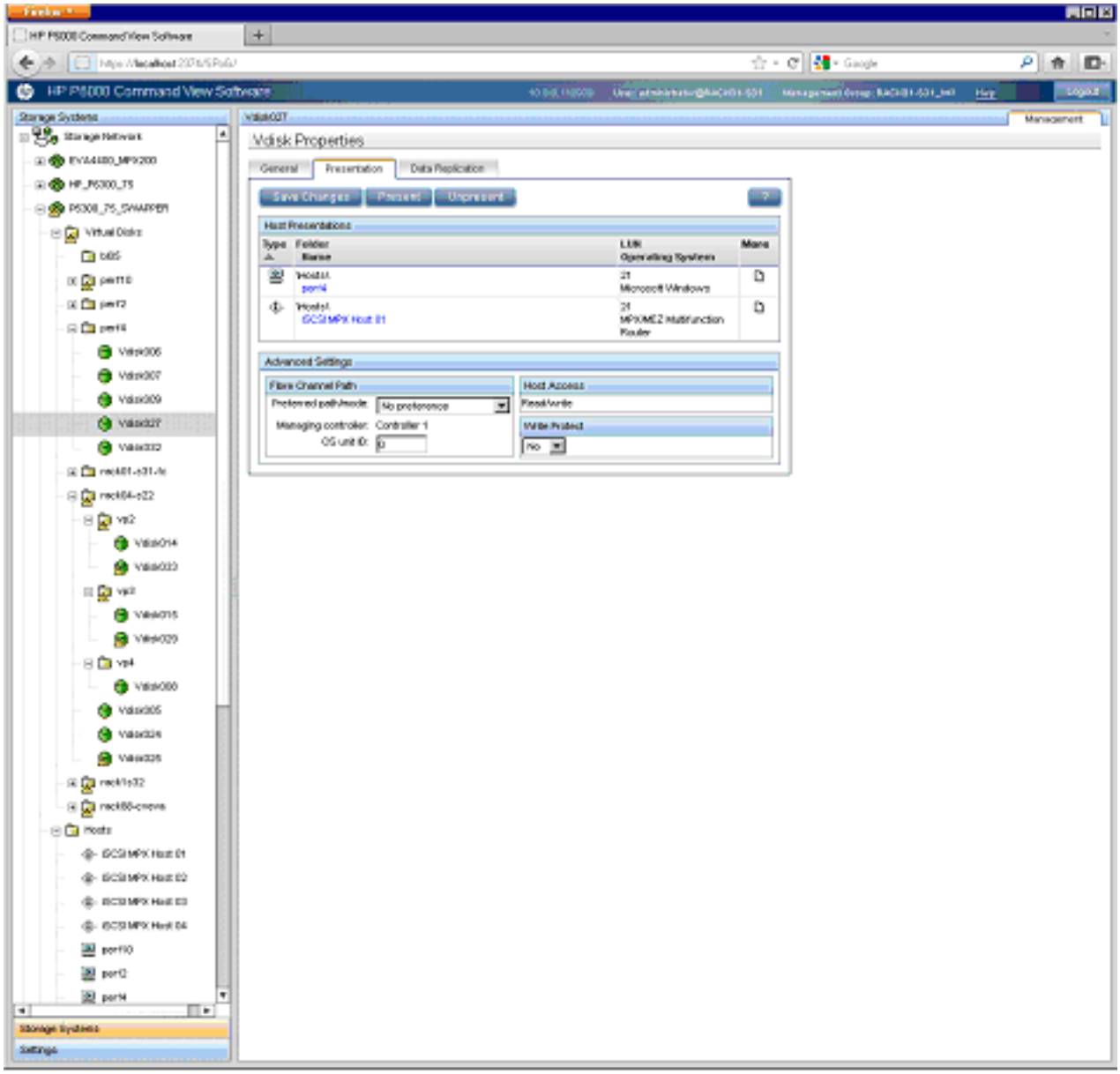
Figure 71 (page 147) shows an iSCSI LUN being re-presented.

Figure 71 iSCSI LUN re-presented to iSCSI initiator, after clearing TP Overcommitted state



The normal condition is illustrated in Figure 72 (page 148).

Figure 72 Normal view of iSCSI LUN presented to iSCSI initiator



6 Single path implementation

This chapter provides guidance for connecting servers with a single path host bus adapter (HBA) to the Enterprise Virtual Array (EVA) storage system with no multipath software installed. A single path HBA is defined as:

- A single HBA port to a switch with no multipathing software installed
- A single HBA port to a switch with multipathing software installed

HBA LUNs are not shared by any other HBA in the server or in the SAN. Failover action is different depending on which single path method is employed.

The failure scenarios demonstrate behavior when recommended configurations are employed, as well as expected failover behavior if guidelines are not met. To implement single adapter servers into a multipath EVA environment, configurations should follow these recommendations.

The purpose of single HBA configurations for non-mission critical storage access is to control costs. This chapter describes the configurations, limitations, and failover characteristics of single HBA servers under different operating systems. Several of the descriptions are based on a single HBA configuration resulting in a single path to the device, but OpenVMS has native multipath features by default.

NOTE: Tru64 and NetWare are not supported with the P63x0/P65x0 EVA.

With OpenVMS, a single HBA configuration will result in two paths to the device by having connections to both EVA controllers. Single HBA configurations are not single path configurations with these operating systems.

In addition, cluster configurations for OpenVMS provide enhanced availability and security. To achieve availability within cluster configurations, configure each member with its own HBAs and connectivity to shared LUNs. For further information on cluster configurations and attributes, see the appropriate operating system guide and the HP SAN Design Reference Guide.

NOTE: HP continually makes additions to its storage solution product line. For more information about the HP Fibre Channel product line, the latest drivers, and technical tips, and to view other documentation, see the HP website at:

http://www.hp.com/country/us/eng/prodserv/storage.html

Installation requirements

- The host must be placed in a zone with any EVA worldwide IDs (WWIDs) that access storage devices presented by the hierarchical storage virtualization (HSV) controllers to the single path HBA host. The preferred method is to use HBA and HSV WWIDs in the zone configurations.
- On HP-UX, Solaris, Microsoft Windows Server 2012, Microsoft Windows Server 2008, Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (32-bit), Windows 2000, Linux and IBM AIX operating systems, the zones consist of the single path HBA systems and one HSV controller port.
- On OpenVMS, the zones consist of the single HBA systems and two HSV controller ports. This results in a configuration where there are two paths per device, or multiple paths.

Recommended mitigations

EVA is designed for the mission-critical enterprise environment. When used with multipath software, high data availability and fault tolerance are achieved. In single path HBA server configurations, neither multipath software nor redundant I/O paths are present. Server-based operating systems are not designed to inherently recover from unexpected failure events in the I/O path (for example, loss of connectivity between the server and the data storage). It is expected that most operating systems will experience undesirable behavior when configured in non-high-availability configurations.

Because of the risks of using servers with a single path HBA, HP recommends the following actions:

- Use servers with a single path HBA that are not mission-critical or highly available.
- Perform frequent backups of the single path server and its storage.

Supported configurations

All examples detail a small homogeneous Storage Area Network (SAN) for ease of explanation. Mixing of dual and single path HBA systems in a heterogeneous SAN is supported. In addition to this document, reference and adhere to the *HP SAN Design Reference Guide* for heterogeneous SANs, located at:

http://www.hp.com/go/sandesign

General configuration components

All configurations require the following components:

- XCS controller software
- HBAs
- Fibre Channel switches

Connecting a single path HBA server to a switch in a fabric zone

Each host must attach to one switch (fabric) using standard Fibre Channel cables. Each host has its single path HBA connected through switches on a SAN to one port of an EVA.

Because a single path HBA server has no software to manage the connection and ensure that only one controller port is visible to the HBA, the fabric containing the single path HBA server, SAN switch, and EVA controller must be zoned. Configuring the single path by switch zoning and the LUNs by Selective Storage Presentation (SSP) allows for multiple single path HBAs to reside in the same server. A single path HBA server with the OpenVMS operating system should be zoned with two EVA controllers. See the *HP SAN Design Reference Guide* at the following HP website for additional information about zoning:

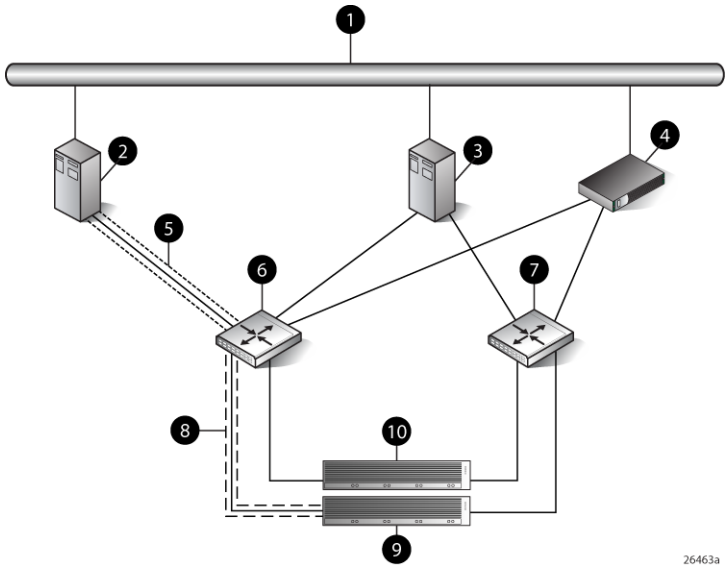
http://h18006.www1.hp.com/products/storageworks/ san/documentation.html

To connect a single path HBA server to a SAN switch:

1. Plug one end of the Fibre Channel cable into the HBA on the server.
2. Plug the other end of the cable into the switch.

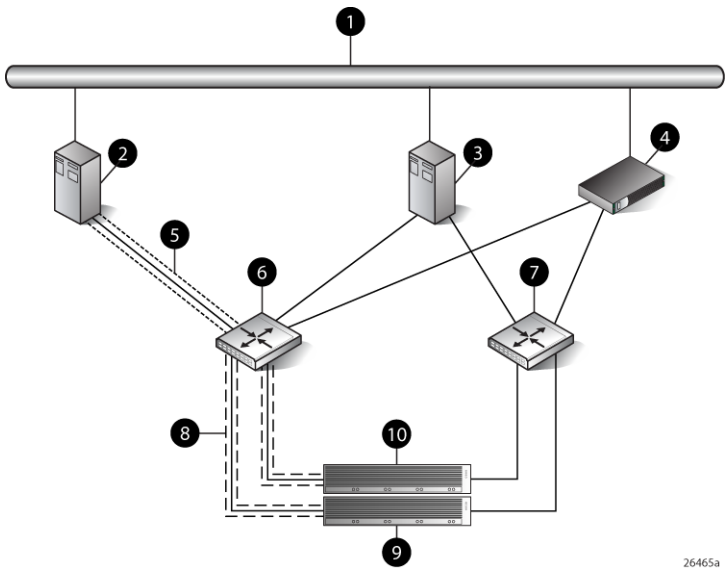
Figure 73 (page 151) and Figure 74 (page 151) represent configurations containing both single path HBA server and dual HBA server, as well as a SAN appliance, connected to redundant SAN switches and EVA controllers. Whereas the dual HBA server has multipath software that manages the two HBAs and their connections to the switch, the single path HBA has no software to perform this function. The dashed line in the figure represents the fabric zone that must be established for the single path HBA server. Note that in Figure 74 (page 151), servers with OpenVMS can be zoned with two controllers.

Figure 73 Single path HBA server without OpenVMS



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. Multiple single HBA paths
6. SAN switch 1
7. SAN switch 2
8. Fabric zone
9. Controller A
10. Controller B

Figure 74 Single path HBA server with OpenVMS



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. Multiple single HBA paths
6. SAN switch 1
7. SAN switch 2
8. Fabric zone
9. Controller A
10. Controller B

HP-UX configuration

Requirements

- Proper switch zoning must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- Single path HBA server cannot share LUNs with any other HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA host.
- Host 2 is a multiple HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 75 (page 153).

Risks

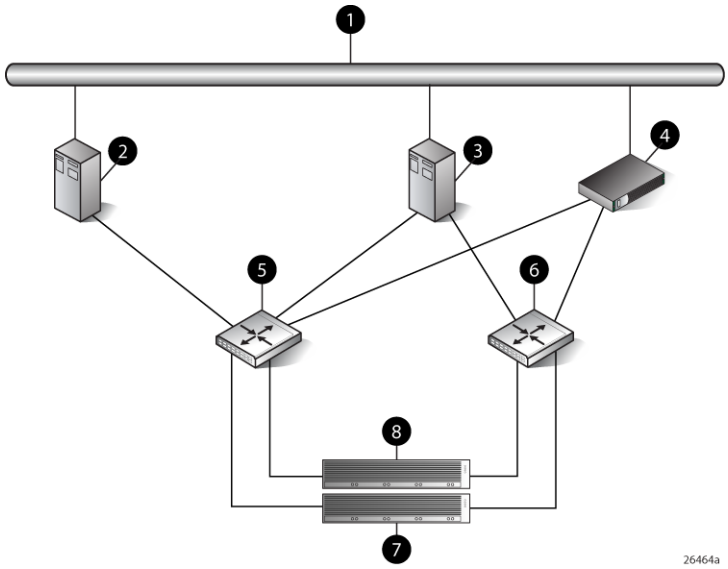
- Disabled jobs hang and cannot umount disks.
- Path or controller failure may results in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "HP-UX" (page 164).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single-path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is not supported.

Figure 75 HP-UX configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) ,Windows Server 2008 (32–bit) , and Windows Server 2012 (32–bit) configurations

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- Single path HBA server cannot share LUNs with any other HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA host.
- Host 2 is a multiple HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 76 (page 154).

Risks

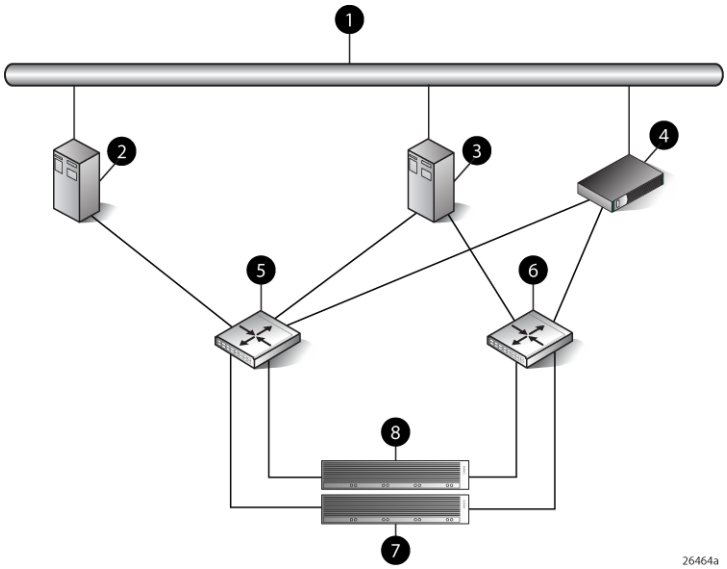
- Single path failure will result in loss of connection with the storage system.
- Single path failure may cause the server to reboot.
- Controller shutdown puts controller in a failed state that results in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "Windows Servers" (page 165).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is not supported on single path HBA servers.

Figure 76 Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) and Windows 2008 (32–bit) configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

Windows Server 2003 (64-bit) and Windows Server 2008 (64–bit) configurations

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- Single path HBA server cannot share LUNs with any other HBAs.

HBA configuration

- Hosts 1 and 2 are single path HBA hosts.
- Host 3 is a multiple HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 77 (page 155).

NOTE: Single path HBA servers running the Windows Server 2003 (x64) or Windows Server 2008 (x64) operating system will support multiple single path HBAs in the same server. This is accomplished through a combination of switch zoning and controller level SSP. Any single path HBA server will support up to four single path HBAs.

Risks

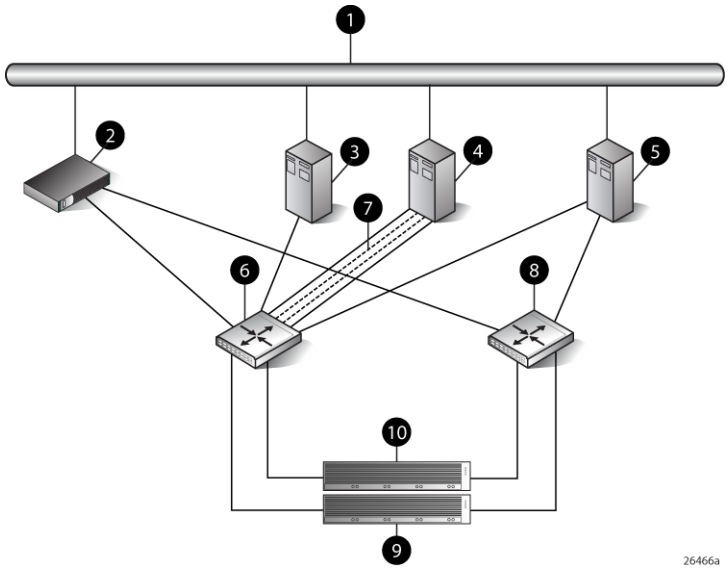
- Single path failure will result in loss of connection with the storage system.
- Single path failure may cause the server to reboot.
- Controller shutdown puts controller in a failed state that results in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "Windows Servers" (page 165).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is not supported on single path HBA servers.

Figure 77 Windows Server 2003 (64-bit) and Windows Server 2008 (64–bit) configurations



1. Network interconnection
2. Management server
3. Host 1
4. Host 2
5. Host 3
6. SAN switch 1
7. Multiple single HBA paths
8. SAN switch 2
9. Controller A
10. Controller B

Oracle Solaris configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- Single path HBA server cannot share LUNs with any other HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone

becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

- HBA must be properly configured to work in a single HBA server configuration. The user is required to:
  - Download and extract the contents of the TAR file.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA host.
- Host 2 is a multiple HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 78 (page 156).

Risks

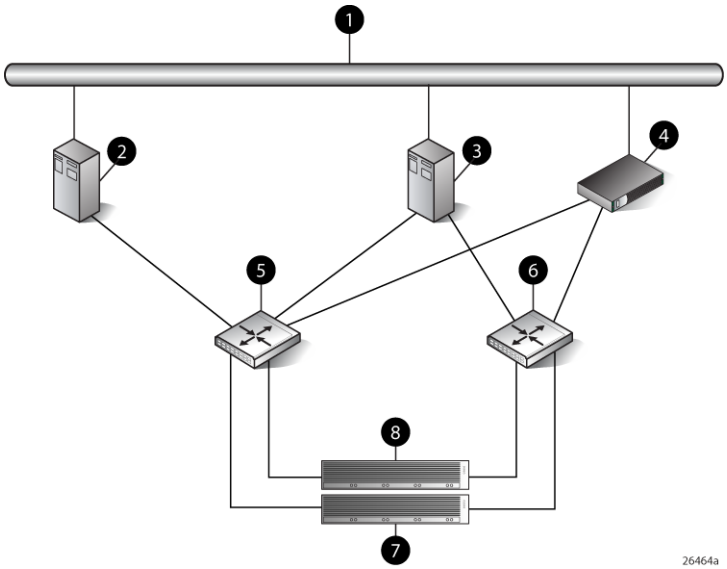
- Single path failure may result in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.
- Controller shutdown results in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "Oracle Solaris" (page 165).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is not supported.

Figure 78 Oracle Solaris configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

OpenVMS configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- All nodes with direct connection to a disk must have the same access paths available to them.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA host.
- Host 2 is a dual HBA host.

See Figure 79 (page 158).

Risks

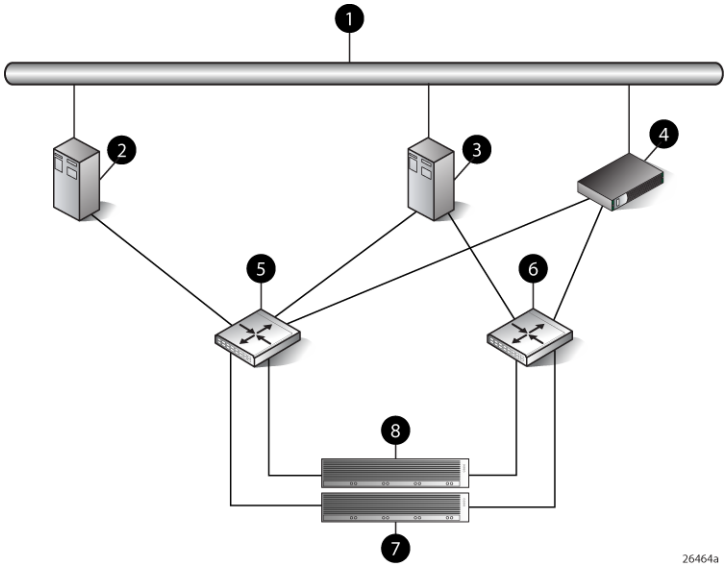
- For nonclustered nodes with a single path HBA, a path failure from the HBA to the SAN switch will result in a loss of connection with storage devices.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "OpenVMS" (page 165).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.

Figure 79 OpenVMS configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

Xen configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- All nodes with direct connection to a disk must have the same access paths available to them.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA.
- Host 2 is a dual HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 80 (page 159).

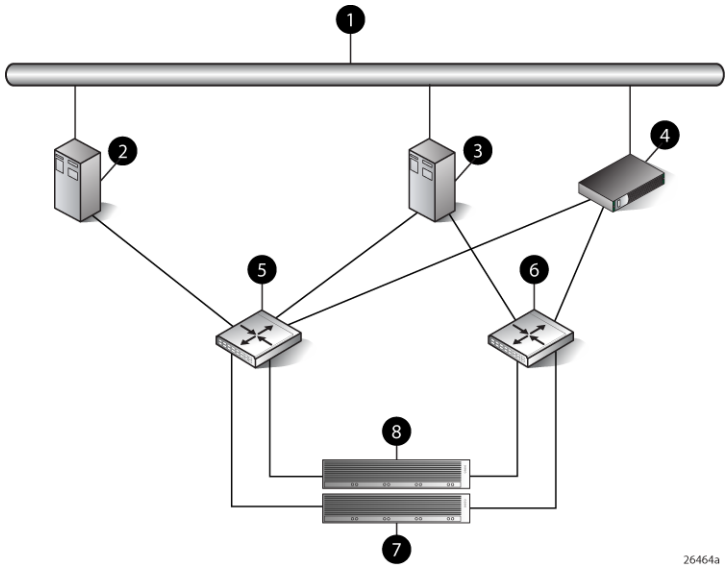
Risks

- Single path failure may result in data loss or disk corruption.

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is not supported.

Figure 80 Xen configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

Linux (32-bit) configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- All nodes with direct connection to a disk must have the same access paths available to them.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.
- Single HBA path to the host with MPIO driver enabled to provide recovery from controller on controller link failures.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA.
- Host 2 is a dual HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 81 (page 160).

Risks

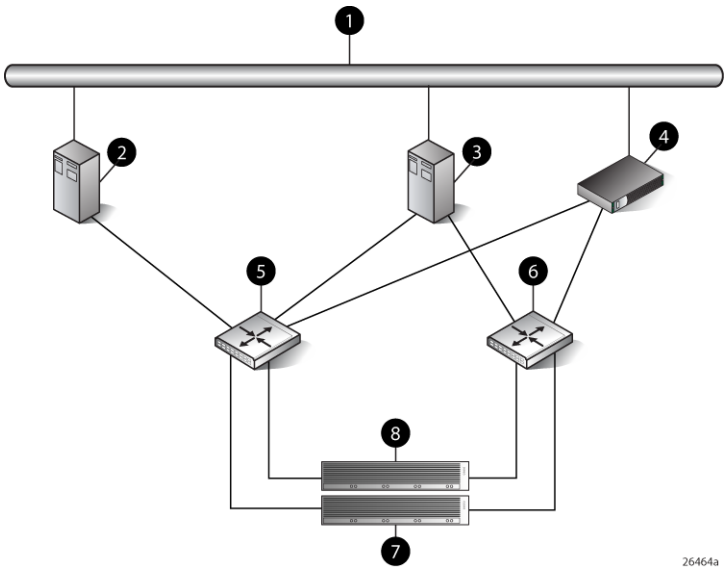
- Single path failure may result in data loss or disk corruption.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "Linux" (page 166).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single HBA path at the host server is not part of a cluster, unless in a Linux High Availability Cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is supported on single path HBA servers.

Figure 81 Linux (32-bit) configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

Linux (Itanium) configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- All nodes with direct connection to a disk must have the same access paths available to them.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same

controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

- Linux 64-bit servers can support up to 14 single or dual path HBAs per server. Switch zoning and SSP are required to isolate the LUNs presented to each HBA from each other.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA.
- Host 2 is a dual HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 82 (page 161).

Risks

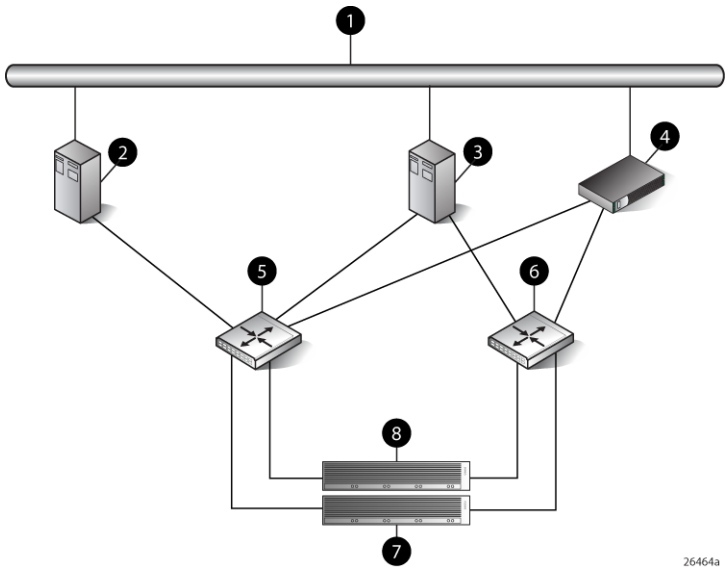
- Single path failure may result in data loss or disk corruption.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "Linux" (page 166).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is supported on single path HBA servers.

Figure 82 Linux (Itanium) configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

IBM AIX configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- Single path HBA server cannot share LUNs with any other HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA host.
- Host 2 is a dual HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 83 (page 163).

Risks

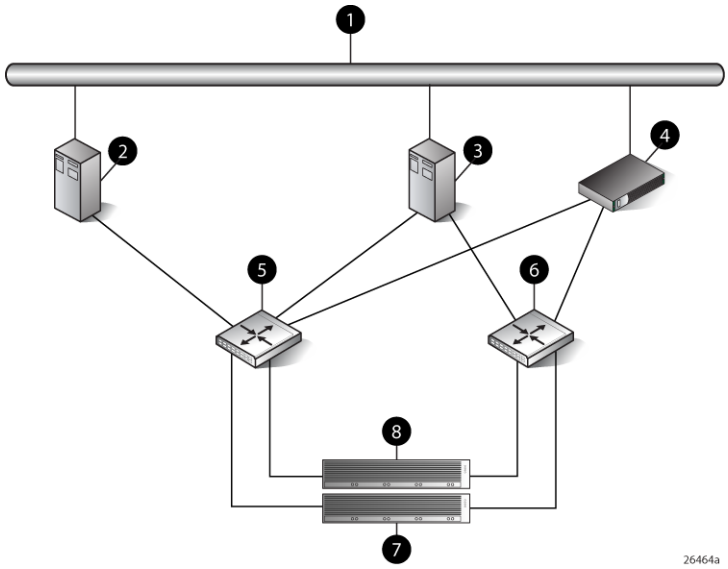
- Single path failure may result in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.
- Controller shutdown results in loss of data accessibility and loss of host data that has not been written to storage.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "IBM AIX" (page 167).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single path HBA server is not part of a cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is not supported.

Figure 83 IBM AIX Configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

VMware configuration

Requirements

- Switch zoning or controller level SSP must be used to ensure each single path HBA has an exclusive path to its LUNs.
- All nodes with direct connection to a disk must have the same access paths available to them.
- Single path HBA server can be in the same fabric as servers with multiple HBAs.
- In the use of snapshots and snapclones, the source virtual disk and all associated snapshots and snapclones must be presented to the single path hosts that are zoned with the same controller. In the case of snapclones, after the cloning process has completed and the clone becomes an ordinary virtual disk, you may present that virtual disk as you would any other ordinary virtual disk.

HBA configuration

- Host 1 is a single path HBA.
- Host 2 is a dual HBA host with multipathing software.

See Figure 84 (page 164).

Risks

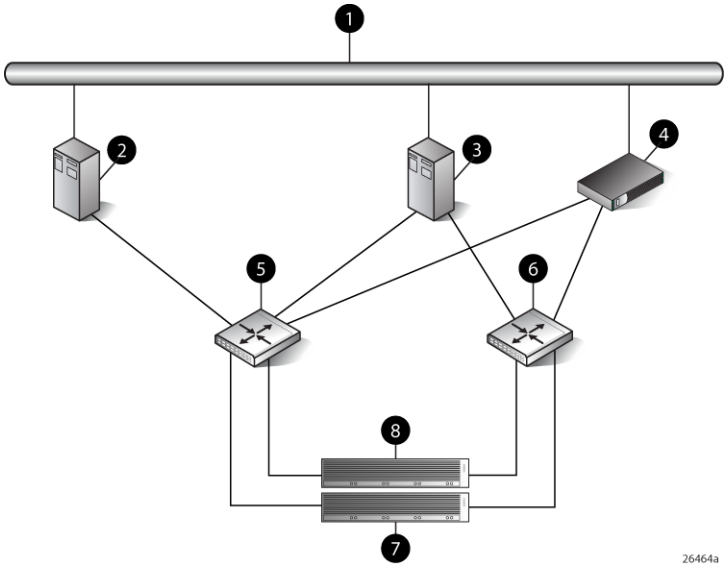
- Single path failure may result in data loss or disk corruption.

NOTE: For additional risks, see "VMware" (page 167).

Limitations

- HP P6000 Continuous Access is not supported with single path configurations.
- Single HBA path at the host server is not part of a cluster, unless in a VMware High Availability Cluster.
- Booting from the SAN is supported on single path HBA servers.

Figure 84 VMware configuration



1. Network interconnection
2. Single HBA server (Host 1)
3. Dual HBA server (Host 2)
4. Management server
5. SAN switch 1
6. SAN switch 2
7. Controller A
8. Controller B

Mac OS configuration

For information about Mac OS connectivity, see *Mac OS X Fibre Channel connectivity to the HP StorageWorks Enterprise Virtual Array Storage System Configuration Guide* (to download, see "Related documentation" (page 197)).

Failure scenarios

HP-UX

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	Extremely critical event on UNIX. Can cause loss of system disk.
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Job hangs, cannot umount disk, fsck failed, disk corrupted, need mkfs disk.
Controller failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Job hangs, cannot umount disk, fsck failed, disk corrupted, need mkfs disk.
Controller restart	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Job hangs, cannot umount disk, fsck failed, disk corrupted, need mkfs disk.

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server path failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Job hangs, cannot umount disk, fsck failed, disk corrupted, need mkfs disk.
Storage path failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Job hangs, replace cable, I/O continues. Without cable replacement job must be aborted; disk seems error free.

Windows Servers

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	OS runs a command called chkdsk when rebooting. Data lost, data that finished copying survived.
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	Write delay, server hangs until I/O is cancelled or cold reboot.
Controller failure	Write delay, server hangs or reboots. One controller failed, other controller and shelves critical, shelves offline. Volume not accessible. Server cold reboot, data lost. Check disk when rebooting.
Controller restart	Controller momentarily in failed state, server keeps copying. All data copied, no interruption. Event error warning error detected during paging operation.
Server path failure	Write delay, volume inaccessible. Host hangs and restarts.
Storage path failure	Write delay, volume disappears, server still running. When cables plugged back in, controller recovers, server finds volume, data loss.

Oracle Solaris

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	Check disk when rebooting. Data loss, data that finished copying survived.
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages on console, no access to CDE. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must newfs disk.
Controller failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages on console, no access to CDE. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must newfs disk.
Controller restart	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages on console, no access to CDE. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must newfs disk.
Server path failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages on console, no access to CDE. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must newfs disk.
Storage path failure	Short term: Job hung, data lost. Long term: Repeated error messages on console, no access to CDE. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must newfs disk.

OpenVMS

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	Nonclustered-Processes fail. Clustered—Other nodes running processes that used devices served from the single-path HBA failed over access

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
	to a different served path. When the single-path node crashes, only the processes executing on that node fail. In either case, no data is lost or corrupted.
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	I/O is suspended or process is terminated across this HBA until switch is back online. No data is lost or corrupted. The operating system will report the volume in a Mount Verify state until the MVTIMEOUT limit is exceeded, when it then marks the volume as Mount Verify Timeout. No data is lost or corrupted.
Controller failure	I/O fails over to the surviving controller. No data is lost or corrupted.
Controller restart	I/O is suspended or process is terminated across this HBA until EVA is back online. No data is lost or corrupted. The operating system will report the volume in a Mount Verify state until the MVTIMEOUT limit is exceeded, when it then marks the volume as Mount Verify Timeout.
Server path failure	If the LUN is not shared, I/O is suspended or process is terminated across this HBA until path is restored. If running OpenVMS 7.3-1 and the LUN is shared, another cluster node having direct access will take over serving the device, resulting in no loss of service. In either case, no data is lost or corrupted. The operating system will report the volume in a Mount Verify state until the MVTIMEOUT limit is exceeded, when it then marks the volume as Mount Verify Timeout.
Storage path failure	I/O is suspended or process is terminated across this HBA until path is restored. No data is lost or corrupted. The operating system will report the volume in a Mount Verify state until the MVTIMEOUT limit is exceeded, when it then marks the volume as Mount Verify Timeout.

Linux

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	OS reboots, automatically checks disks. HSV disks must be manually checked unless auto mounted by the system.
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	Short: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. HBA driver must be reloaded before failed drives can be recovered, fsck should be run on any failed drives before remounting.
Controller failure	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Cannot reload driver, need to reboot system, fsck should be run on any failed disks before remounting.
Controller restart	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Cannot reload driver, need to reboot system, fsck should be run on any failed disks before remounting.

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server path failure	Short: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. HBA driver must be reloaded before failed drives can be recovered, fsck should be run on any failed drives before remounting.
Storage path failure	Short: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. HBA driver must be reloaded before failed drives can be recovered, fsck should be run on any failed drives before remounting.

IBM AIX

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	Check disk when rebooting. Data loss, data that finished copying survived
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages in errpt output. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must crfs disk.
Controller failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages in errpt output. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must crfs disk.
Controller restart	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages in errpt output. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must crfs disk.
Server path failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages in errpt output. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must crfs disk.
Storage path failure	Short term: Data transfer stops. Possible I/O errors. Long term: Repeated error messages in errpt output. System reboot causes loss of data on disk. Must crfs disk.

VMware

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	OS reboots, automatically checks disks. HSV disks must be manually checked unless auto mounted by the system.
Switch failure (SAN switch disabled)	Short: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. HBA driver must be reloaded before failed drives can be recovered, fsck should be run on any failed drives before remounting.
Controller failure	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Cannot reload driver, need to reboot system, fsck should be run on any failed disks before remounting.
Controller restart	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Cannot reload driver, need to reboot system, fsck should be run on any failed disks before remounting.

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server path failure	Short: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. HBA driver must be reloaded before failed drives can be recovered, fsck should be run on any failed drives before remounting.
Storage path failure	Short: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. HBA driver must be reloaded before failed drives can be recovered, fsck should be run on any failed drives before remounting.

Mac OS

Fault stimulus	Failure effect
Server failure (host power-cycled)	OS reboots. Both HFS and StorNext replay journal on filesystem. Disk auto mounted by OS.
Switch failure	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O halts with I/O errors.
Controller failure	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O fails over to alternate storage controller if visible (by zoning). Otherwise, I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Can require a server reboot for full recovery.
Controller restart	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O fails over to alternate storage controller if visible (by zoning). Otherwise, I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Can require a server reboot for full recovery.
Server path failure	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O halts with I/O errors, data loss. Can require a server reboot for full recovery.
Storage path failure	Short term: I/O suspended, possible data loss. Long term: I/O fails over to alternate storage controller if available. Otherwise, I/O halts with I/O errors. Can require a server reboot for full recovery.

7 Troubleshooting

If the disk enclosure does not initialize

IMPORTANT: After a power failure, the system automatically returns to the last-powered state (On or Off) when A/C power is restored.

1. Ensure that the power on/standby button was pressed firmly and held for approximately three seconds.
2. Verify that the power on/standby button LED is green.
3. Verify that the power source is working:
   a. Verify that the power supplies are working by viewing the power supply LEDs. If necessary, remove and reinstall the power supplies to verify that they are seated properly.
   b. Remove and inspect AC power cords from both power supplies and reconnect them.

Diagnostic steps

Is the enclosure front fault LED amber?

Answer	Possible Reasons	Actions
No	System functioning properly.	No action required.
Yes	• Front Status and UID module might not be inserted properly, might have a damaged connector, or might have failed. • Possible error condition exists.	• Be sure that the Front Status and UID module is undamaged and is fully seated. • Check rear fault LEDs to isolate failed component. • Contact an authorized service provider for assistance.

Is the enclosure rear fault LED amber?

Answers	Possible Reasons	Actions
No	Functioning properly.	No action required
Yes	Rear power and UID module might not be inserted properly, might have a damaged connector, or might have failed.	• Be sure that the rear power and UID module is undamaged and is fully seated. • Contact an authorized service provider for assistance.

Is the power on/standby button LED amber?

Answer	Possible Reasons	Possible Solutions
No	System functioning properly.	No action required.
Yes	• The power on/standby button has not been pressed firmly or held long enough. • The system midplane and/or power button/LED assembly might need to be replaced.	• Firmly press the power on/standby button and hold for approximately three seconds. • Be sure that all components are fully seated. • Contact an authorized service provider for assistance.

Is the power supply LED amber?

Answers	Possible Reasons	Actions
No	• Both power cords not connected or AC power is unavailable. • Power supply functioning properly.	• Remove and inspect the AC power cords from both power supplies and reconnect them. • No action required.
Yes	• This supply is not receiving AC power, but the other supply is receiving AC power. **NOTE:** It is possible for one power supply to show a green status and the other supply to show an amber status. • Power supply might not be inserted properly, might have a damaged connector, or might have failed.	• Verify AC input power. • Be sure that the power supply is undamaged and is fully seated. • Be sure that all pins on connectors and components are straight. • Contact an authorized service provider for assistance.

Is the I/O module fault LED amber?

Answer	Possible Reasons	Possible Solutions
No	Functioning properly.	No action required.
Yes	• The I/O module is locked. • The I/O module has failed. • Other fault condition exists.	• Make sure that the I/O module is seated properly by pressing the I/O module firmly into its bay after the handle has clicked in place. **CAUTION:** Never remove an I/O module from the chassis while the status LED is green. Removing an active I/O module can result in data loss. • Contact an authorized service provider for assistance.

Is the fan LED amber?

Answers	Possible Reasons	Actions
No	Functioning properly.	No action required
Yes	Fan might not be inserted properly, might have a damaged connector, or might have failed.	• Be sure that the fan is undamaged and is fully seated. • Contact an authorized service provider for assistance.

Effects of a disk drive failure

When a disk drive fails, all virtual disks that are in the same array are affected. Each virtual disk in an array might be using a different fault-tolerance method, so each can be affected differently.

- RAID0 configurations cannot tolerate drive failure. If any physical drive in the array fails, all non-fault-tolerant (RAID0) logical drives in the same disk group also fail.
- RAID1+0 configurations can tolerate multiple drive failures as long as no failed drives are mirrored to one another (with no spares assigned).
- RAID5 configurations can tolerate one drive failure (with no spares assigned).
- RAID6 configurations can tolerate simultaneous failure of two drives (with no spares assigned).

Compromised fault tolerance

If more disk drives fail than the fault-tolerance method allows, fault tolerance is compromised, and the virtual disk fails.

Factors to consider before replacing disk drives

Before replacing a degraded drive:

- Be sure that the array has a current, valid backup.
- Use replacement drives that have a capacity at least as great as that of the smallest drive in the array. The controller immediately fails drives that have insufficient capacity.

To minimize the likelihood of fatal system errors, take these precautions when removing failed drives:

- Do not remove a degraded drive if any other drive in the array is offline (the online LED is off). In this situation, no other drive in the array can be removed without data loss.
- **Exceptions:**
  - When RAID1+0 is used, drives are mirrored in pairs. Several drives can be in a failed condition simultaneously (and they can all be replaced simultaneously) without data loss, as long as no two failed drives belong to the same mirrored pair.
  - When RAID6 is used, two drives can fail simultaneously (and be replaced simultaneously) without data loss.
  - If the offline drive is a spare, the degraded drive can be replaced.
- Do not remove a second drive from an array until the first failed or missing drive has been replaced and the rebuild process is complete. (The rebuild is complete when the Online LED on the front of the drive stops blinking.)

  Exceptions:
  - In RAID6 configurations, any two drives in the array can be replaced simultaneously.
  - In RAID1+0 configurations, any drives that are not mirrored to other removed or failed drives can be simultaneously replaced offline without data loss.

Automatic data recovery (rebuild)

When you replace a disk drive in an array, the controller uses the fault-tolerance information on the remaining drives in the array to reconstruct the missing data (the data that was originally on the replaced drive) and write it to the replacement drive. This process is called automatic data recovery, or rebuild. If fault tolerance is compromised, this data cannot be reconstructed and is likely to be permanently lost.

Time required for a rebuild

The time required for a rebuild varies considerably, depending on several factors:

- The priority that the rebuild is given over normal I/O operations
- The amount of I/O activity during the rebuild operation
- The rotational speed of the disk drives
- The availability of drive cache
- The model and age of the drives
- The amount of unused capacity on the drives
- The number of drives in the array (for RAID5 and RAID6)

Allow approximately 5 minutes per gigabyte without any I/O activity during the rebuild process. This figure is conservative, and newer drive models usually require less time to rebuild.

System performance is affected during the rebuild, and the system is unprotected against further drive failure until the rebuild has finished. Therefore, replace drives during periods of low activity when possible.

△ **CAUTION:** If the Online LED of the replacement drive stops blinking and the amber fault LED glows, or if other drive LEDs in the array go out, the replacement drive has failed and is producing unrecoverable disk errors. Remove and replace the failed replacement drive.

When automatic data recovery has finished, the online LED of the replacement drive stops blinking and begins to glow steadily.

Failure of another drive during rebuild

If a non-correctable read error occurs on another physical drive in the array during the rebuild process, the Online LED of the replacement drive stops blinking and the rebuild abnormally terminates. If this situation occurs, restart the server. The system might temporarily become operational long enough to allow recovery of unsaved data. In any case, locate the faulty drive, replace it, and restore data from backup.

Handling disk drive failures

If the controller was configured with hardware fault tolerance, complete the following steps after a disk drive failure:

1. Determine which physical drive failed. On hot-plug drives, an amber drive failure LED illuminates.
2. If the unit containing the failed drive does not support hot-plug drives, perform a normal shutdown.
3. Remove the failed drive and replace it with a drive that is of the same capacity. For hot-plug drives, after you secure the drive in the bay, the LEDs on the drive each flash once in an alternating pattern to indicate a successful connection. The online LED flashes, indicating that the controller recognized the drive replacement and began the recovery process.
4. Power up the server, if applicable.
5. The controller reconstructs the information on the new drive, based on information from the remaining physical drives in the logical drive. While reconstructing the data on hot-plug drives, the online LED flashes. When the drive rebuild is complete, the online LED is illuminated.

iSCSI module diagnostics and troubleshooting

Diagnostic information is also available through HP P6000 Command View and the CLI event logs and error displays. This section describes diagnostics.

iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE diagnostics

The iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE self test status and operational status are indicated by the MEZZ LED as shown in Figure 85 (page 173) and Table 26 (page 173).

Figure 85 Controller status LEDs

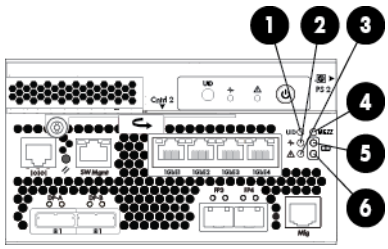


Table 26 Controller status LEDs

Item	LED	Indication
1	UID	Blue LED identifies a specific controller within the enclosure and the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module within the controller.
2		Green LED indicates controller health. LED flashes green during boot and becomes solid green after boot.

Table 26 Controller status LEDs *(continued)*

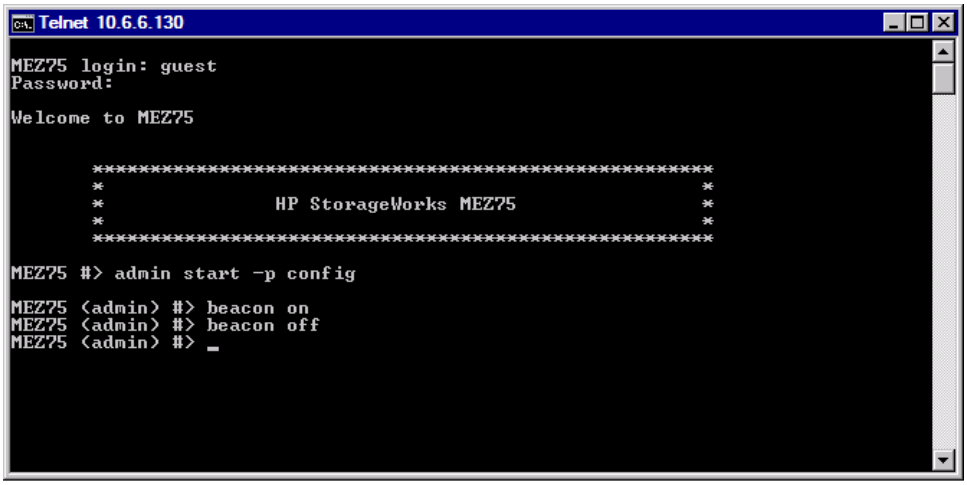
Item	LED	Indication
3	⚠	Flashing amber indicates a controller termination, or the system is inoperative and attention is required. Solid amber indicates that the controller cannot reboot, and that the controller should be replaced. If both the solid amber and solid blue LEDs are lit, the controller has completed a warm removal procedure, and can be safely swapped.
4	**MEZZ**	Amber LED indicates the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module status that is communicated to the array controller. Slow flashing amber LED indicates an IP address conflict on the management port. Solid amber indicates an iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module critical error, or shutdown.
5		Green LED indicates write-back cache status. Slow flashing green LED indicates standby power. Solid green LED indicates cache is good with normal AC power applied.
6		Amber LED indicates DIMM status. The LED is off when DIMM status is good. Slow flashing amber indicates DIMMs are being powered by battery (during AC power loss). Solid amber indicates a DIMM failure.

Locate the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module

A flashing UID beacon (blue LED) indicates the identification beacon is ON. There are two ways to identify the location of an iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module.

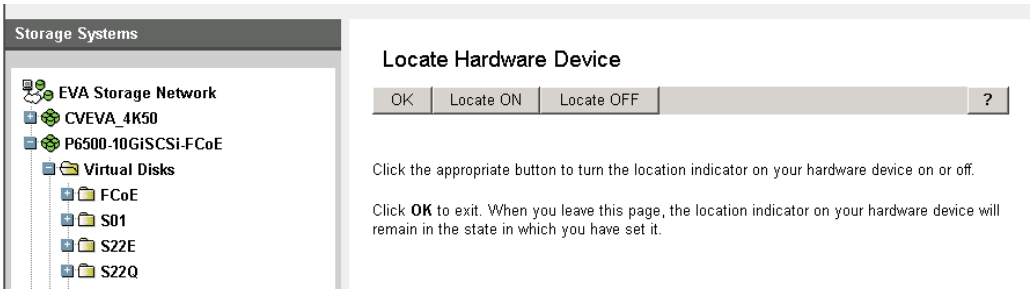
1. Enter the CLI command `beacon on` (see Figure 86 (page 174)).

Figure 86 `Beacon on` **command**



2. 2. In HP P6000 Command View, click the **General** tab and then click the **Locate** button. Use the **Locate ON** and **Locate OFF** buttons to control the blue LED (see Figure 87 (page 175)).

Figure 87 Locate Hardware Device



iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's log data

The iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules maintain logs that can be displayed or collected through the CLI. The log is persistent through reboots or power cycles. To view the log use the CLI command `show logs`.

See "iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages" (page 284) for log data descriptions.

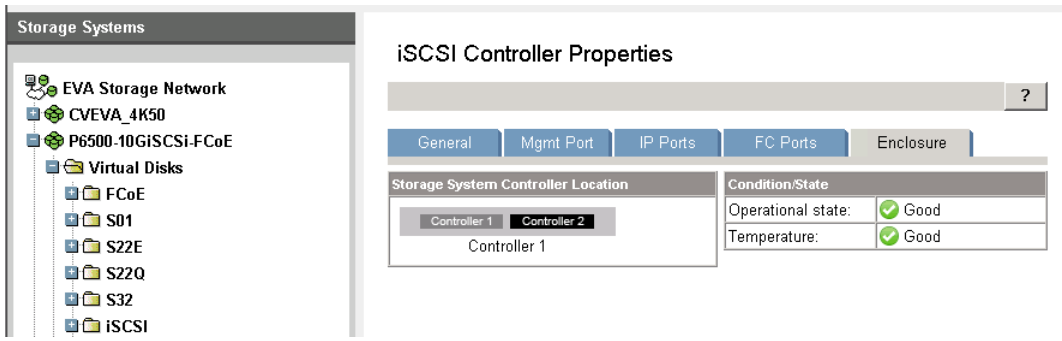
iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module statistics

Statistics are available via the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module CLI for the iSCSI and Fibre Channel ports. To view the statistics us the CLI command `show stats`.

Troubleshoot using HP P6000 Command View

HP P6000 Command View can display the properties for each iSCSI module. At a glance, you can check each module's software revision, serial number, temperature, and power/cooling status (see Figure 88 (page 175)).

Figure 88 iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE module properties



Issues and solutions

Issue: HP P6000 Command View does not discover the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules

Solution 1: Ensure that a DHCP server is available.

Solution 2: Set a static IP address on each iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE module through the CLI.

Solution 3: Ensure the HP P6000 Command View station is on the same subnet of the management ports.

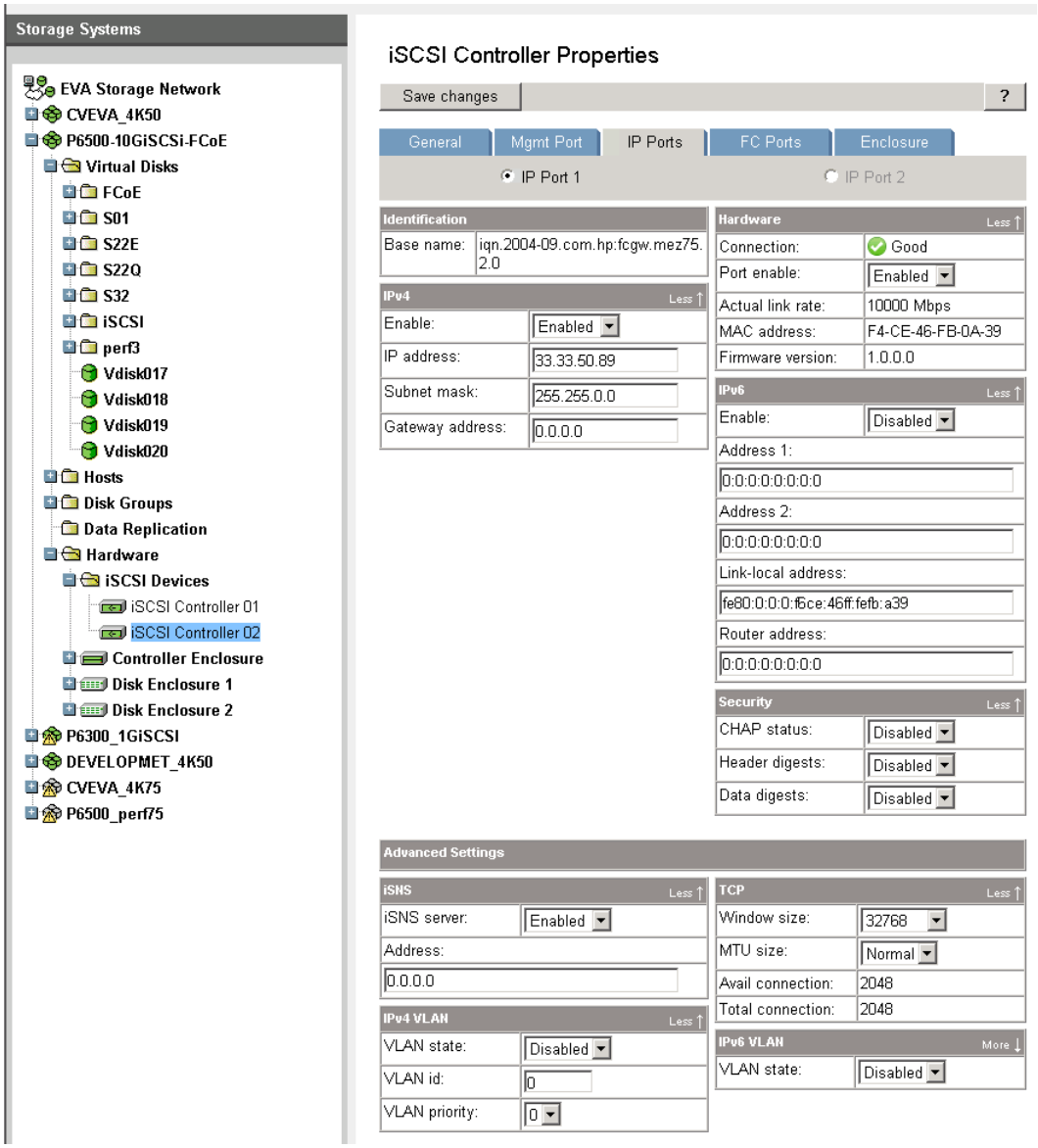
Solution 4: Enter the known IP address of the management port of the iSCSI modules in the HP P6000 Command View discovery screen.

Issue: Initiator cannot login to iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module target

Solution 1: Ensure the correct iSCSI port IP address is used

Solution 2: In HP P6000 Command View, for each iSCSI controller 01 and 02, click the **IP ports** tab, then expand the **TCP properties** under the **Advanced Settings**. There should be available connections; if not, choose another IP port to log in to or reduce the connections from other initiators by logging out from unused connections (see Figure 89 (page 176)).

Figure 89 IP Ports tab



Issue: Initiator logs in to iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller target but EVA assigned LUNs are not appearing on the initiator

Solution 1. The initiator needs to log in to the target where the EVA LUN was assigned.

Solution 2. The EVA LUN was assigned to a different iSCSI Host then was expected.

Issue: EVA presented virtual disk is not seen by the initiator

Solution 1. The initiator has to login to the proper iSCSI target. Match the virtual disk presentation properties as in Figure 90 (page 177) and Figure 91 (page 177) to the initiator's target login.

Figure 90 Host details

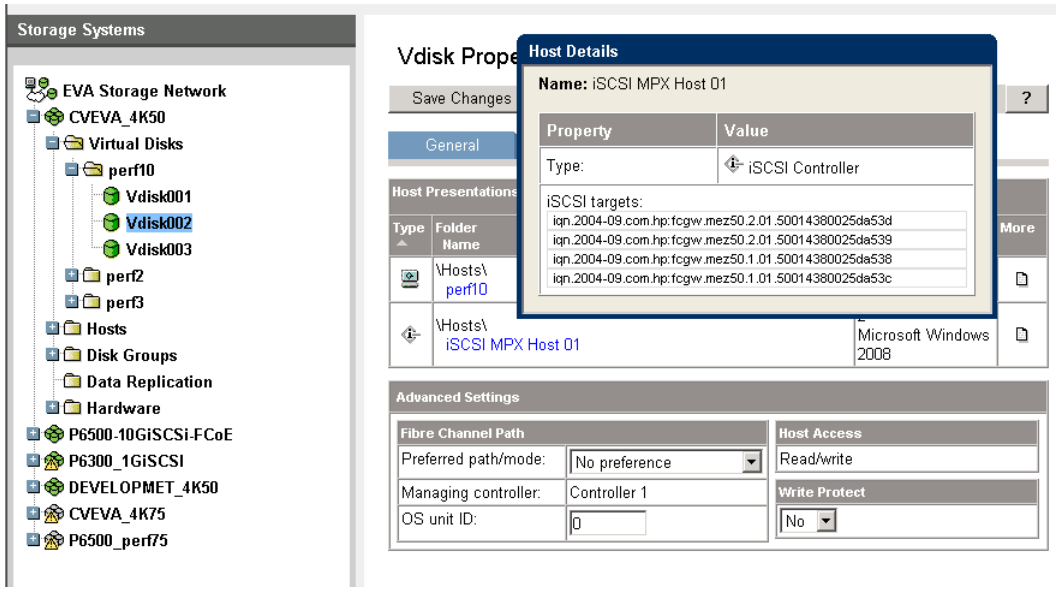
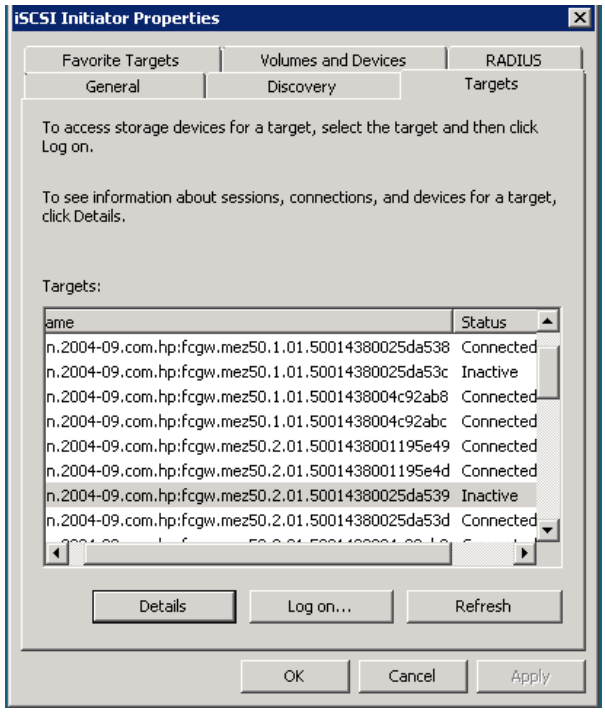


Figure 91 Target tab



Issue: Windows initiators may display `Reconnecting` if NIC MTU changes after connection has logged in.

Solution. Log out of those sessions and Log On again to re-establish the `Connected` state.

Issue: When communication between HP P6000 Command View and iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module is down, use following options:

Solution 1. Refresh using **Hardware > iSCSI Devices > iSCSI Controller 01 or 02 > Refresh** button.

Solution 2. If the IPv4 management port IP address is set:

1. Discover the controller. This option is exposed through iSCSI controller —> `Set options` —> `Discover controller`

2. Enter a valid IPv4 mgmt Ip address under Mgmt Port and click the **Save changes** button. If only IPv6 mgmt port IP address is set, enter a valid lPv6 management IP address under Mgmt Port and click the **Save changes** button.

NOTE: If you configure IPv6 on any iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's iSCSI port, you must also configure IPv6 on the HP P6000 Command View EVA management server.

HP P6000 Command View issues and solutions

Issue	Solution
Discovered iSCSI Controller not found with selected EVA.	Click the Refresh button on the iSCSI Controller properties page. Check management port connection. Check the iSCSI Controller Properties Condition/State of the FC ports.
Not a supported configuration. Both HP Storage Works iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules should belong to same chassis/enclosure.	Only iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules that are in the same controller chassis are supported for connectivity.
Not a supported configuration. HP iSCSI/FCoE module cannot be discovered with this EVA.	Check FCoE zoning/connectivity to the EVA.
The virtual disk operation has failed. Please make sure that FC target connections are online.	Check all iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module FC Ports Condition/State. Check that the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module and HP P6000 Command View are in a consistent state, each with the same hosts and presented LUNs. You may have to use the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI to `reset factory` or `reset mappings`, and remove all presentations and hosts from HP P6000 Command View.
IP port of iSCSI controller 01 and 02 should be enabled to change the corresponding port attributes.	Enable port.
Command not supported with this version of HP iSCSI.	Check software version. Code load latest revision if necessary.
Unable to process command at this time. Check all connections as iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's Fibre Channel ports are unavailable.	Check the status of the P6000 controller health and the MEZZ status for failed conditions. Ensure that the P6000 FC ports are up.
Invalid iSCSI Controller configuration file extension.	Ensure the correct file is being used to restore configuration.
Operation failed; iSCSI controller code load file cannot open/read.	File may be invalid or corrupt. Retrieve another copy of firmware file.
iSCSI Controller code load process have been failed.	Process may have been interrupted during code load, try again.
Invalid iSCSI controller code load file extension.	Ensure the correct file is being used.
iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE LUN presentation: Operation Failed! The virtual disk operation has failed. Please make sure that the FC target connections are online.	A result of HP P6000 Command View and the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE LUN mask being inconsistent while trying to map a LUN that is already mapped or is offline. This can result from misuse of the CLI or making LUN masking changes while a module or controller is down. Use the CLI to reset mappings/reboot or reset factory/reboot, then unmap all presented LUNs, deleting the iSCSI HOSTs and also removing both iSCSI controllers. The CLI `show luns`, `show luninfo`, and `show initiators_lunmask` commands can provide information on which LUNs are causing the inconsistency.

Volume information mismatch across cveva and Optimize ReTrim used space	There can be a mismatch on the Vdisk allocated size in comparison with the host volume size shown by optimizer (slab count and volume information).
Space reclaim is very minimal for iSCSI LUN during the file deletion.	Based on the controller load, the efficiency of space reclamation might vary and the reclamation not start immediately. Reclaim of the specified space (or majority of the specified space) may complete over a period of time and may not be instantly.
Thin Provisioning Threshold and Resource Exhaustion Test (LOGO) Failed	The system event log when the threshold limit of the vdisk is reached, When the system event log reaches the threshold limit on the vdisk, the user can see an event on the LUN utilization capacity and pool availability capacity for LUN is restricted by either size of LUN or available capacity in pool.

8 Error messages

This list of error messages is in order by status code value, 0 to 243.

Table 27 Error Messages

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
0 Successful Status	The SCMI command completed successfully.	No corrective action required.
1 Object Already Exists	The object or relationship already exists.	Delete the associated object and try the operation again. Several situations can cause this message: Presenting a LUN to a host: • Delete the current association or specify a different LUN number. Storage cell initialize: • Remove or erase disk volumes before the storage cell can be successfully created. Adding a port WWN to a host: • Specify a different port WWN. Adding a disk to a disk group: • Delete the specified disk volume before creating a new disk volume.
2 Supplied Buffer Too Small	The command or response buffer is not large enough to hold the specified number of items. This can be caused by a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
3 Object Already Assigned	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
4 Insufficient Available Data Storage	There is insufficient storage available to perform the request.	Reclaim some logical space or add physical hardware.
5 Internal Error	An unexpected condition was encountered while processing a request.	Report the error to product support.
6 Invalid status for virtual disk	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
7 Invalid Class	The supplied class code is of an unknown type. This can be caused by a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
8 Invalid Function	The function code specified with the class code is of an unknown type.	Report the error to product support.
9 Invalid Logical Disk Block State	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
10 Invalid Loop Configuration	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
11 Invalid parameter	There are insufficient resources to fulfill the request, the requested value is not supported, or the parameters supplied are invalid. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
12 Invalid Parameter handle	The supplied handle is invalid. This can indicate a user error, program error, or a storage cell in an uninitialized state. In the following cases, the storage cell is in an uninitialized state, but no action is required: Storage cell discard (informational message): Storage cell look up object count (informational message): Storage cell look up object (informational message):	In the following cases, the message can occur because the operation is not allowed when the storage cell is in an uninitialized state. If you see these messages, initialize the storage cell and retry the operation. Storage cell set device addition policy Storage cell set name Storage cell set time Storage cell set volume replacement delay Storage cell free command lock Storage cell set console lun id
13 Invalid Parameter Id	The supplied identifier is invalid. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
14 Invalid Quorum Configuration	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
15 Invalid Target Handle	The supplied target handle is invalid. This can indicate a user or program error (Case 1), or Volume set requested usage (Case 2): The operation could not be completed because the disk has never belonged to a disk group and therefore cannot be added to a disk group.	Case 1: Report the error to product support. Case 2: To add additional capacity to the disk group, use the management software to add disks by count or capacity.
16 Invalid Target Id	The supplied target identifier is invalid. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
17 Invalid Time	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
18 Media is Inaccessible	The operation could not be completed because one or more of the disk media was inaccessible.	Report the error to product support.
19 No Fibre Channel Port	The Fibre Channel port specified is not valid. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
20 No Image	There is no firmware image stored for the specified image number.	Report the error to product support.
21 No Permission	The disk device is not in a state to allow the specified operation.	The disk device must be in either maintenance mode or in a reserved state for the specified operation to proceed.
22 Storage system not initialized	The operation requires a storage cell to exist.	Create a storage cell and retry the operation.
23 Not a Loop Port	The Fibre Channel port specified is either not a loop port or is invalid. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
24 Not a Participating Controller	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
25 Objects in your system are in use, and their state prevents the operation you wish to perform.	Several states can cause this message: Case 1: The operation cannot be performed because an association exists a related object, or the object is in a progress state. Case 2: The supplied virtual disk handle is already an attribute of another derived unit. This may indicate a programming error. Case 3: One or more LUNs are presented to EVA hosts that are based on this virtual disk. Case 4: Virtual disk clear data lost: The virtual disk is in the non-mirrored delay window. Case 5: LDAD discard: The operation cannot be performed because one or more virtual disks still exist, the disk group still may be recovering its capacity, or this is the last disk group that exists. Case 6: LDAD resolve condition: The disk group contains a disk volume that is in a data-lost state. This condition cannot be resolved. Case 7: Physical store erase volume: The disk is a part of a disk group and cannot be erased. Case 8: Storage cell discard: The storage cell contains one or more virtual disks or LUN presentations. Case 9: Storage cell client discard: = The EVA host contains one or more LUN presentations. Case 10: Virtual disk discard: The virtual disk is in use and cannot be discarded. This may indicate a programming error. Case 11: Virtual disk set capacity: The capacity cannot be modified because the virtual disk has a dependency on either a snapshot or snapclone. Case 12: Virtual disk set disk cache policy: The virtual disk cache policy cannot be modified while the virtual disk is presented and enabled. Case 13: VOLUME set requested usage: The disk volume is already a member of a disk group or is in the state of being removed from a disk group. Case 14: GROUP discard: The Continuous Access group cannot be discarded as one or more virtual disk members exist.	Case 1: Either delete the associated object or resolve the in progress state. Case 2: Report the error to product support. Case 3: Unpresent the LUNs before deleting this virtual disk. Case 4: Resolve the delay before performing the operation. Case 5: Delete any remaining virtual disks or wait for the used capacity to reach zero before the disk group can be deleted. If this is the last remaining disk group, uninitialize the storage cell to remove it. Case 6: Report the error to product support. Case 7: The disk must be in a reserved state before it can be erased. Case 8: Delete the virtual disks or LUN presentations before uninitializing the storage cell. Case 9: Delete the LUN presentations before deleting the EVA host. Case 10: Report the error to product support. Case 11: Resolve the situation before attempting the operation again. Case 12: Resolve the situation before attempting the operation again. Case 13: Select another disk or remove the disk from the disk group before making it a member of a different disk group. Case 14: Remove the virtual disks from the group and retry the operation.
26 Parameter Object Does Not Exist	The operation cannot be performed because the object does not exist. This can indicate a user or program error. VOLUME set requested usage: The disk volume set requested usage cannot be performed because the disk group does not exist. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
27 Target Object Does Not Exist	The operation cannot be performed because the object does not exist. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
28 Timeout	A timeout has occurred in processing the request.	Verify the hardware connections and that communication to the device is successful.
29 Unknown Id	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
30 Unknown Parameter Handle	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
31 Unrecoverable Media Error	The operation could not be completed because one or more of the disk media had an unrecoverable error.	Report the error to product support.
32 Invalid State	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
33 Transport Error	A SCMI transport error has occurred.	Verify the hardware connections, communication to the device, and that the management software is operating successfully.
34 Volume is Missing	The operation could not be completed because the drive volume is in a missing state.	Resolve the condition and retry the request. Report the error to product support.
35 Invalid Cursor	The supplied cursor or sequence number is invalid. This may indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
36 Invalid Target for the Operation	The specified target virtual disk already has an existing data sharing relationship. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
37 No More Events	There are no more events to retrieve. (This message is informational only.)	No action required.
38 Lock Busy	The command lock is busy and being held by another process.	Retry the request at a later time.
39 Time Not Set	The storage system time is not set. The storage system time is set automatically by the management software.	Report the error to product support.
40 Not a Supported Version	The requested operation is not supported by this firmware version. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
41 No Logical Disk for Vdisk	This is an internal error.	Report the error to product support.
42 Virtual disk Presented	The virtual disk specified is already presented to the client and the requested operation is not allowed.	Delete the associated presentation(s) and retry the request.
43 Operation Denied On Slave	The request is not allowed on the slave controller. This can indicate a user or program error.	Report the error to product support.
44 Not licensed for data replication	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
45 Not DR group member	The operation cannot be performed because the virtual disk is not a member of a Continuous Access group.	Configure the virtual disk to be a member of a Continuous Access group and retry the request.
46 Invalid DR mode	The operation cannot be performed because the Continuous Access group is not in the required mode.	Configure the Continuous Access group correctly and retry the request.
47 The target DR member is in full copy, operation rejected	The operation cannot be performed because at least one of the virtual disk members is in a copying state.	Wait for the copying state to complete and retry the request.
48 Security credentials needed. Please update your system's ID and password in the Storage System Access menu.	The management software is unable to log in to the storage system. The storage system password has been configured.	Use the management software to save the password specified so communication can proceed.
49 Security credentials supplied were invalid. Please update your system's ID and password in the Storage System Access menu.	The management software is unable to login to the device. The storage system password may have been re-configured or removed.	Use the management software to set the password to match the device so communication can proceed.
50 Security credentials supplied were invalid. Please update your system's ID and password in the Storage System Access menu.	The management software is already logged in to the device. (This message is informational only.)	No action required.
51 Storage system connection down	The Continuous Access group is unable communicate to the remote site.	Verify that devices are powered on and that device hardware connections are functioning correctly. In particular, validate that the inter-site link is functioning correctly.
52 DR group empty	No virtual disks are members of the Continuous Access group.	Add one or more virtual disks as members and retry the request.
53 Incompatible attribute	The request cannot be performed because one or more of the attributes specified is incompatible.	Retry the request with valid attributes for the operation. Currently, this error code is only used for mirror clone operations, and is returned when a fracture or invert is requested and all operations are not alike.
54 Vdisk is a DR group member	The requested operation cannot be performed on a virtual disk that is already a member of a data replication group.	Remove the virtual disk as a member of a data replication group and retry the request.
55 Vdisk is a DR log unit	The requested operation cannot be performed on a virtual disk that is a log unit.	No action required.
56 Cache batteries failed or missing.	The battery system is missing or discharged.	Report the error to product support.
57 Vdisk is not presented	The virtual disk member is not presented to a client.	The virtual disk member must be presented to a client before this operation can be performed.
58 Other controller failed	The other controller failed during the execution of this operation.	Retry the operation once controller failout is complete.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
59 Maximum Number of Objects Exceeded.	Case 1: The maximum number of items allowed has been reached. Case 2: The maximum number of EVA hosts has been reached. Case 3: The maximum number of port WWNs has been reached.	Case 1: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the items and retry the operation. Case 2: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the EVA hosts and retry the operation. Case 3: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the port WWNs and retry the operation.
60 Max size exceeded	Case 1: The maximum number of items already exist on the destination storage cell. Case 2: The size specified exceeds the maximum size allowed. Case 3: The presented user space exceeds the maximum size allowed. Case 4: The presented user space exceeds the maximum size allowed. Case 5: The size specified exceeds the maximum size allowed. Case 6: The maximum number of EVA hosts already exist on the destination storage cell. Case 7: The maximum number of EVA hosts already exist on the destination storage cell. Case 8: The maximum number of Continuous Access groups already exist.	Case 1: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the items on the destination storage cell and retry the operation. Case 2: Use a smaller size and retry the operation. Case 3: No action required. Case 4: No action required. Case 5: Use a smaller size and try this operation again. Case 6: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the EVA hosts and retry the operation. Case 7: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the virtual disks on the destination storage cell and retry the operation. Case 8: If this operation is still desired, delete one or more of the groups and retry the operation.
61 Password mismatch. Please update your system's password in the Storage System Access menu. Continued attempts to access this storage system with an incorrect password will disable management of this storage system.	The login password entered on the controllers does not match.	Reconfigure one of the storage system controller passwords, then use the management software to set the password to match the device so communication can proceed.
62 DR group is merging	The operation cannot be performed because the Continuous Access connection is currently merging.	Wait for the merge operation to complete and retry the request.
63 DR group is logging	The operation cannot be performed because the Continuous Access connection is currently logging.	Wait for the logging operation to complete and retry the request.
64 Connection is suspended	The operation cannot be performed because the Continuous Access connection is currently suspended	Resolve the suspended mode and retry the request.
65 Bad image header	The firmware image file has a header checksum error.	Retrieve a valid firmware image file and retry the request.
66 Bad image	The firmware image file has a checksum error.	Retrieve a valid firmware image file and retry the request.
67 Obsolete	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
68 Obsolete	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
69 Obsolete	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
70 Image incompatible	The firmware image file is incompatible with the current system configuration. Version conflict in upgrade or downgrade not allowed.	Retrieve a valid firmware image file and retry the request
71 Bad image segment	The firmware image download process has failed because of a corrupted image segment.	Verify that the firmware image is not corrupted and retry the firmware download process.
72 Image already loaded	The firmware version already exists on the device.	No action required.
73 Image Write Error	The firmware image download process has failed because of a failed write operation.	Verify that the firmware image is not corrupted and retry the firmware download process.
74 Virtual Disk Sharing	Case 1: The operation cannot be performed because the virtual disk or snapshot is part of a snapshot group. Case 2: The operation may be prevented because a snapclone or snapshot operation is in progress. If a snapclone operation is in progress, the parent virtual disk should be discarded automatically after the operation completes. If the parent virtual disk has snapshots, then you must delete the snapshots before the parent virtual disk can be deleted. Case 3: The operation cannot be performed because either the previous snapclone operation is still in progress, or the virtual disk is already part of a snapshot group. Case 4: A capacity change is not allowed on a virtual disk or snapshot that is a part of a snapshot group. Case 5: The operation cannot be performed because the virtual disk or snapshot is a part of a snapshot group.	Case 1: No action required. Case 2: No action required. Case 3: If a snapclone operation is in progress, wait until the snapclone operation has completed and retry the operation. Otherwise, the operation cannot be performed on this virtual disk. Case 4: No action required. Case 5: No action required.
75 Bad Image Size	The firmware image file is not the correct size.	Retrieve a valid firmware image file and retry the request.
76 Image Busy	The controller is currently processing a firmware download. Retry the request once the firmware download process is complete.	Retry the request once the firmware download process is complete.
77 Volume Failure Predicted	The disk volume specified is in a predictive failed state.	Report the error to product support.
78 Invalid object condition for this command.	The current condition or state is preventing the request from completing successfully.	Resolve the condition and retry the request.
79 Snapshot (or snapclone) deletion in progress. The requested operation is currently not allowed. Please try again later.	The current condition of the snapshot, snapclone, or parent virtual disk is preventing the request from completing successfully.	Wait for the operation to complete and retry the request.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
80 Invalid Volume Usage	The disk volume is already a part of a disk group.	Resolve the condition by setting the usage to a reserved state, wait for the usage to change to this state, and retry the request.
81 Minimum Volumes In Disk Group	The disk volume usage cannot be modified, as the minimum number of disks exist in the disk group.	Resolve the condition by adding additional disks and retry the request.
82 Shutdown In Progress	The controller is currently shutting down.	No action required.
83 Controller API Not Ready, Try Again Later	The device is not ready to process the request.	Retry the request at a later time.
84 Is Snapshot	This is a snapshot virtual disk and cannot be a member of a Continuous Access group.	No action required.
85 Cannot add or remove DR group member. Mirror cache must be active for this Vdisk. Check controller cache condition.	An incompatible mirror policy of the virtual disk is preventing it from becoming a member of a Continuous Access group.	Modify the mirror policy and retry the request.
86 HP P6000 Command View has detected this array as inoperative. Contact HP Service for assistance.	Case 1: A virtual disk is in an inoperative state and the request cannot be processed. This is due to a loss of cache data from power/controller loss or disk drive failure.	Report the error to product support.
	Case 2: The snapclone cannot be associated with a virtual disk that is in an inoperative state. HP P6000 Command View has detected this array as inoperative. Contact HP Services for assistance.	
	Case 3: The snapshot cannot be associated with a virtual disk that is in an inoperative state. This is due to a loss of cache data from power/controller loss or disk drive failure.	
87 Disk group inoperative	The disk group is in an inoperative state and cannot process the request.	Report the error to product support.
88 Storage system inoperative	The storage system is inoperative and cannot process the request because all disk groups have lost sufficient drives such that no data is available.	Report the error to product support.
89 Failsafe Locked	The request cannot be performed because the Continuous Access group is in a failsafe locked state.	Resolve the condition and retry the request.
90 Data Flush Incomplete	The disk cache data need to be flushed before the condition can be resolved.	Retry the request later.
91 Redundancy Mirrored Inoperative	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
92 Duplicate LUN	The LUN number is already in use by another client of the storage system.	Select another LUN number and retry the request.
93 Other remote controller failed	While the request was being performed, the remote storage system controller terminated.	Retry the request once remote controller failout is complete.
94 Unknown remote Vdisk	The remote storage system specified does not exist.	Correctly select the remote storage system and retry the request.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
95 Unknown remote DR group	The remote Continuous Access group specified does not exist.	Correctly select the remote Continuous Access group retry the request.
96 PLDMC failed	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
97 Storage system could not be locked. System busy. Try command again.	Another process has already taken the SCMI lock on the storage system.	Retry the request later.
98 Error on remote storage system.	While the request was being performed, an error occurred on the remote storage system.	Resolve the condition and retry the request
99 The DR operation can only be completed when the source-destination connection is down. If you are doing a destination DR deletion, make sure the connection link to the source DR system is down or do a failover operation to make this system the source.	The request failed because the operation cannot be performed on a Continuous Access connection that is up.	Resolve the condition and retry the request.
100 Login required - password changed.	The management software is unable to log into the device as the password has changed.	The storage system password may have been re-configured or removed. The management software must be used to set the password up to match the device so communication can proceed.
101 Maximum logins	The maximum number of login sessions allowed to the storage system has been reached.	Log out of a management agent session before attempting a new login.
102 Invalid Cookie	The command cookie sent in the attempted command is invalid.	Retry the operation later. If the error persists, report the error to product support.
103 Login Timed Out	The login session is no longer valid due to timeout.	Log in again.
104 Maximum Snapshot Depth	The virtual disk has reached the maximum number of allowed snapshots.	Remove a snapshot before attempting this command again.
105 Attribute Mismatch	Case 1: Creation of the virtual disk failed due to an invalid capacity value. Case 2: Virtual disk mirror policy does not match other snapshots.	Case 1: Specify a valid capacity value. Case 2: Choose a valid mirror policy value.
106 Password Not Set	Management agent was not able to log in because password is not set.	Set a password before logging in. Without a password no login is required.
107 Not Host Port	Invalid port when trying to get host port information.	Check if the port number refers to a valid host port and try again.
108 Duplicate LUN WWID	A virtual disk with this WWID is already presented.	Unpresent the already presented virtual disk or change the WWID of this virtual disk.
109 System Inoperative	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
110	This is an internal error.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
Snapclone Active		
111 EMU Load Busy	The operation cannot be completed while the drive enclosures are undergoing code load.	Wait several minutes for the drive enclosure code load to finish, then retry the operation.
112 Duplicate User Name	An existing Continuous Access group already has this user name.	Change the user name for the new Continuous Access group or delete the existing Continuous Access group with the same name.
113 Drive Reserved For Code Load	The operation is not allowed because the drive is in a migrate code load state.	Allow the drive to finish code load.
114 Already Presented	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
115 Invalid Remote Storage Cell	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
116 No Management Interface Lock	The SCMI lock context in StorageCell is empty where the lock is expected to be taken by the management agent.	Retry the operation later. If the error persists, report the error to product support.
117 Maximum Members	The specified Continuous Access group already has the maximum number of members.	Use another Continuous Access group or remove members from the existing Continuous Access group.
118 Maximum Destinations	The specified Continuous Access group is attempting to use a new destination past the maximum number.	Use an existing destination or stop using a destination.
119 Empty User Name	The user name field for the specified Continuous Access group is empty.	Populate the user name field.
120 Storage Cell Exists	The command is not valid when a StorageCell is already formed and the NSC is operating normally as a member of the storage cell.	Use the command form designed to be used when no storage sell exists yet.
121 Already Open	The requested session is already open on this NSC. It cannot be opened for multiple session operation.	Close the requested session before attempting this command again.
122 Session Not Open	The requested session was not established by opening the session.	Open the requested session before attempting this command again.
123 Not Marked Inoperative	Case 1: The specified Continuous Access group cannot complete the operation until the disk group is marked permanently data lost. Case 2: The specified virtual disk is not in the thin provisioned overcommit state.	Case 1: Resolve the RAID inoperative condition in the disk group. Case 2: Command is unnecessary on a non thin provisioned overcommit virtual disk.
124 Media Not Available	Drive activity prevents the operation from being completed at this time.	Retry the operation later. If the error persists, report the error to product support.
125 Battery System Failed	The batteries do not allow the warm plug of a controller.	Resolve degraded battery situation.
126 Member is Cache Data Lost	The virtual disk is cache data lost.	Resolve the cache data lost situation on the virtual disk.
127 Internal Lock Collision	The resource needed to execute the request is in use by internal DRM process. The operation can be retried later.	Retry the operation later. If the error persists, report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
128 OCP Error	EVA 6400/8400 only. A generic error was detected with the OCP interface.	Ensure other OCP is on and try again. If the problem persists, report the error to product support.
129 Mirror Temporarily Offline	The virtual disk is not mirrored to the other controller.	Ensure other controller is operative.
130 Failsafe Mode Enabled	Cannot perform operation because FAILSAFE is enabled on Group.	Disable Failsafe mode on Group.
131 Drive FW Load Abort Due to VRaid0 Vdisk	The drive firmware cannot be downloaded to the drive because it is being used for RAID0 data. One or more RAID0 virtual disks would be inoperable if the drive were to be loaded.	Migrate RAID0 data to another disk group or a more protective redundancy before retrying the drive update.
132 FC Ports Unavailable	There is a diagnostic problem with the indicated port.	Report the error to product support.
133 Only Two Remote Relations Are Allowed	Only two remote relationships are allowed.	Need to reconfigure configuration to only have two remote destinations.
134 The Requested SRC Mode is Not Possible	The existing drive configuration does not support the requested SRC mode.	Report the error to product support.
135 Source Group Discarded, but the Destination Group NOT Discarded	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
136 Invalid DRM Group Tunnel Specified	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
137 Specified DRM Log Size Too Small	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
138 Invalid Disk Group Specified	The disk group requested for the attempted command is not valid.	Retry command using an appropriate disk group identifier.
139 DRM Group is Already Read-Only	Data replication group is already read-only.	Disable read-only mode in group.
140 DRM Group is Already Active-Active	Data replication group is already active-active.	Disable active-active mode in group.
141 DILX Is Already Running	The requested operation cannot be completed while Disk In Line Exerciser is in progress.	Retry command after DILX is complete.
142 DILX Is Not Running	Disk In Line Exerciser cannot be stopped because it is not running.	No corrective action required.
143 Invalid User Defined Log Size	Invalid user defined log size.	Reissue operation with a valid log size
144 Invalid Second Handle Paramed	Invalid data replication group identifier specified.	Retry the command with an existing data replication group.
145 DRM Group Already Auto Suspended	Data replication group already auto suspended.	Unsuspend group and reissue operation.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
146 Specified Option Iis Not Yet Implemented	An unsupported code load attempt was made.	Code load the EVA firmware with a supported method.
147 DRM Group Is Already “Present Only”	Data replication group is already present_only.	Disable active-active or read-only and retry operation.
148 The Presented Unit Identifier Is Invalid	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
149 Internal SCS Error	This is an internal error.	Report the error to product support.
150 Invalid SCS Function Code	This is an internal error.	Report the error to product support.
151 Unsupported SCS Function Code	The command is not supported.	Report the error to product support.
152 Init PS Failed	The requested command cannot be completed because a physical drive is failed.	Replace the failed drive and retry the command.
153 Target Bad Identifier	The object identifier included with the command is invalid. This can indicate a user or program error.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
154 Physcial Store Is Volume	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
155 Bad Volume Usage	The requested "usage" of the volume is not a valid value. This can indicate a user or program error.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
156 Bad LDAD Usage	The requested "usage" of the volume is not a consistent with the disk group indicated. This can indicate a user or program error.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
157 No LDAD Handle	The disk group requested for the attempted command is not valid.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
158 Bad Quorum Flag	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
159 Internal Tag Invalid	The command parameters do not correlate to an object in the system. This can indicate a user or program error.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
160 Internal Tag Bad UUID	The command parameters do not correlate to an object in the system. This can indicate a user or program error.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
161 Too Many Physical Store Tags	When attempting to initialize the storage cell, either the command is attempted with too many drives, or the drive list has duplicate entries.	Ensure that a supported number of drives are used to initialize the storage cell, and that the drives are each included only once.
162 Bad Routine	This error indicates that a product support command is invalid or no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
163 No Tag For Identifier	The identifier supplied with the command does not correspond to an object in the system.	Verify that the parameters of the command are correct and retry.
164 Bad Loop Number	This error only applies to product support commands.	Report the error to product support.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
165 Too Many Port WWNs	The system has reached the limit of client adapters, so the command attempted cannot add another.	Remove an adapter connection before attempting the command again.
166 Port WWN Not Found	The port WWN supplied with the command is not correct.	Retry the command with an accurate port WWN.
167 No Virtual Disk For Presented Unit	The virtual disk identifier supplied with the command is not correct.	Retry the command with an accurate virtual disk identifier.
168 No Client For Presented Unit	The client identifier supplied with the command is not correct.	Retry the command with an accurate client identifier.
169 Unsupported	The command is not supported.	Either the data replication destination is a different version that does not support the command, or the command is only executable by product support.
170 SCS Operation Failed	This is an internal error.	Report the error to product support.
171 Has Members	Operation cannot be completed because it's group has members.	Remove members from group and retry operation.
172 Incompatible Preferred Mask	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
173 Too Few Volume Tags	Not enough volumes have been selected for creation of a disk group or addition to a disk group.	Retry operation with more available drives.
174 ILF Debug Flag Not Set	This error relates to the ILF product support feature.	Report the error to product support.
175 Invalid Physical Object Identifier	The drive is not valid for the specified command.	Report the error to product support.
176 Too Few Drives	There are not enough available drives to create the requested storage cell.	Add more disks to the array and retry.
177 Too Few Physical Store Tags	Supplied tag list contains fewer than the minimum required number of drives.	Add more disks to the tag list and retry.
178 Unexpected SCS Error	This is an internal error.	Report the error to product support.
179 Unsupported Capacity	Case 1: A physical disk whose capacity is larger than the maximum supported physical disk capacity was detected. Case 2: A shrink operation on an existing virtual disk would shrink the virtual disk beneath the minimum supported virtual disk capacity. Case 3: An expand operation on an existing virtual disk or the creation of a new virtual disk results in a virtual disk larger than the maximum supported virtual disk capacity.	Case 1: Remove the unsupported drive and retry operation. Case 2: Retry the shrink operation, leaving the minimum supported virtual disk space in the virtual disk. Case 3: Retry the operation using a smaller, supported capacity.
180 Insufficient Memory	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
181 Insufficient Drive Type	There were not enough available drives of the requested type to complete the operation.	Add more drives of the requested type or change the requested drive type.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
182 Mixed Drive Types	The supplied list of drives contained multiple drive types.	Correct the list such that only one type of drive is used.
183 Already On	An attempt to enable the OCP Locate LED failed because the LED is already enabled.	No corrective action required.
184 Already Off	An attempt to disable the OCP Locate LED failed because the LED is already disabled.	No corrective action required.
185 Virtual Disk Info Failed	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
186 No Derived Unit for Virtual Disk	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
187 Invalid on DRM Mixed Configurations	A data replication configuration is using an unsupported mix of firmware versions on the source and destination side.	Upgrade the source and/or destination arrays to bring the mix into compliance.
188 Invalid Port Specified	The supplied port number is invalid.	Correct the port parameter and retry command.
189 Unknown Group	Specified data replication group not found.	Check the data replication group parameter and retry.
190 Target Object Is Inoperative	The empty container being converted to a snapshot or snapclone is inoperative.	Heal the inoperative condition and then retry the attach operation.
191 Invalid Read16 Operand	A reserved opcode was passed via SCMI command.	Report the error to product support.
192 Invalid Controller	A SCMI command was passed with an invalid destination controller.	Report the error to product support.
193 Invalid Read16 Special Page	An invalid page code was requested via SCMI command.	Report the error to product support.
194 Cannot Set Failsafe	Cannot set Failsafe mode while the group is in asynchronous mode.	Change asynchronous mode and retry operation.
195 Invalid Logical Disk	Case 1: An attach operation was attempted using a non-empty container. Case 2: A mirror clone operation was attempted using a virtual disk that was not a mirror clone.	Case 1: Retry operation using an empty container. Case 2: Retry operation using a mirror clone.
196 LDAD Mismatch	An attach operation attempted to attach an empty container from one disk group to the target virtual disk from a different disk group.	Retry the attach, using an empty container in the same disk group as the target virtual disk.
197 Empty Container	An operation was attempted on an empty container.	Retry with an non-empty virtual disk.
198 Unsupported for Active-Active Mode	A non-mirrored caching policy was requested in Active-Active mode.	Select a different caching policy.
199 Incompatible Redundancy	A snapshot or snapclone was requested with a RAID type greater than the original virtual disk.	Retry operation using a RAID type less than or equal to the RAID type of the original virtual disk.
200 Unsupported Snap Tree	A snapshot or snapclone was requested with a different RAID type different from the existing snapshots or snapclones.	Retry operation using the same RAID type as the existing snapshots or snapclones.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
201 No Path To DR Destination	Attempt to create a data replication group failed because of a loss of communication with the remote site.	Verify/re-establish communication to the remote site.
202 Nonexistent Group	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
203 Invalid Asynch Log Size	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
204 Reserve Asynch Log Capacity	Failed to reserve additional space for data replication log disk capacity.	Report the error to product support.
205 Not In Synchronous Mode	Data replication operation attempted while in asynchronous mode.	Change data replication group asynchronous mode and retry operation.
206 Instant Restore In Progress	An instant restore operation is in progress on this virtual disk (or another related virtual disk).	Retry request later (after instant restore has completed).
207 Mirror Clone	Cannot perform this operation on a mirror clone device.	No action required.
208 Mirror Clone Synchronizing	Cannot perform operation while mirror clone is resynchronizing.	No action required.
209 Has Mirror Clone	Cannot perform operation because device or associated device is a mirror clone.	No action required.
210 Invalid Remote Node	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
211 Incompatible Instant Restore Node	Cannot perform Instant Restore operation because device or associated device is a mirror clone.	No action required.
212 The DR Group Is Not Suspended	Cannot perform an Instant Restore operation because data replication group is NOT suspended.	Suspend data replication group and retry operation.
213 Snap Tree Mismatch	Cannot start an Instant Restore operation because the virtual disks are not in a Business Copy sharing relationship.	Report the error to product support.
214 Original Logical Disk	Cannot start an Instant Restore operation on the original virtual disk.	Report the error to product support.
215 LDAD Downgraded	The drive is in the process of regenerating , reverting, or missing.	Retry the request later.
216 Insufficient Quorums	Not enough quorum disks for redundancy to do drive code load.	Report the error to product support.
217 Already Complete	The requested operation has already been completed.	No action required.
218 Maintenance Mode	A drive is in maintenance mode.	Take drive out of maintenance mode and retry command.
219 Deleting Invalid Snapshots	A drive or associated drive in the tree which is a snapshot is being deleted.	Retry the request later.
220 Temporary Sync Set	A data replication device is transitioning from async/sync or sync/async.	Retry the request later.
221 Max Instant Restores	Maximum Instant Restores in progress. Need to wait for one to finish.	Wait for an Instant Restore to finish then retry the request.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
222 Fail Not Locked	Storage Cell Not Locked. The requestor must have a valid command lock before attempting this command.	Retry the operation later. If the error persists, report the error to product support.
223 Fail Lock Busy	Storage Cell Lock Busy. The requestor does not have the command lock to perform this command.	Retry the operation later. If the error persists, report the error to product support.
224 "Is Defer Copy" Set	Command not allowed while data replication group is set to DEFER COPY mode.	Take data replication group out of DEFER COPY mode and retry command.
225 Related Operation Failed	This operation failed because of another operation error occurring on the user supplied command list.	Report the error to product support.
226 Log Shrink In Progress	A log disk shrink is in progress.	Retry the request later.
227 Log Deallocation In Progress	A log disk deallocation is in progress.	Retry the request later.
228 Reserved WWN	A host adapter could not be added.	Report the error to product support.
229 Incompatible LDAD Type	The disk group is of improper redundancy type.	Change the disk group to the proper redundancy and retry the command.
230 Cannot Clear Multiple Inoperatives	The system needs to resynchronize in order to clear multiple inoperable conditions.	Perform a resynchronization or restart of the controllers.
231 DR Group Async Operation	The data replication group is performing a add, remove, or shrink operation.	Wait until the operation is done then retry.
232 Remove Log Full	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
233 DR Groups Exist	The operation cannot proceed because an active data replication group exists.	Delete the data replication group and retry.
234 Cannot Resolve a Raid6 Inoperative	This error is no longer supported.	Report the error to product support.
235 Invalid DR Destination Redundancy Type	Data replication destination does not support the source requested RAID type.	Ensure both sides of the data replication system are the same firmware and retry.
236 Unsupported Large Virtual Disk	This operation is not supported on large virtual disks.	The virtual disk must be smaller than 2 TB to proceed.
237 Unsupported Thin Provisioning	This operation is not supported on thin provision virtual disks.	The operation is not supported on this firmware.
238 SCSI Sensebyte Check Condition	The operation caused a check condition.	Ensure the EVA is in a good state and retry.
239 Virtual Disk Thin Provision Overcommit	The EVA ran out of space and a thin provision virtual disk needs to expand.	Add more disks and retry.
240 Same Disk Group and Redundancy	The virtual disks have the same disk group and raid redundancy.	Review the supported process of online LUN migration and retry.
241 Unstable Device Configuration	Some disk drives are in exception processing or the back-end is unstable.	Ensure the EVA is in a good state and retry.

Table 27 Error Messages *(continued)*

Status code value	Meaning	How to correct
242 Event Not Found	The event was not found.	Report the error to product support.
243 Unsupported Drive	There were not enough drives to complete the operation and some unsupported drives were detected.	Replace the unsupported drives with supported drives and retry.

9 Support and other resources

Contacting HP

HP technical support

For worldwide technical support information, see the HP support website:

http://www.hp.com/support

Before contacting HP, collect the following information:

- Product model names and numbers
- Technical support registration number (if applicable)
- Product serial numbers
- Error messages
- Operating system type and revision level
- Detailed questions

Subscription service

HP recommends that you register your product at the Subscriber's Choice for Business website:

http://www.hp.com/go/e-updates

After registering, you will receive e-mail notification of product enhancements, new driver versions, firmware updates, and other product resources.

Documentation feedback

HP welcomes your feedback.

To make comments and suggestions about product documentation, please send a message to **storagedocsFeedback@hp.com**. All submissions become the property of HP.

Related documentation

Documents

For documents referenced in this guide, see the **Manuals** page on the Business Support Center website:

http://www.hp.com/support/manuals

In the Storage section, click **Disk Storage Systems** and then select **HP P6300/P6500 Enterprise Virtual Array Systems** under P6000/EVA Disk Arrays.

Websites

- HP:
  http://www.hp.com
- HP Storage:
  http://www.hp.com/go/storage
- HP Partner Locator:
  http://www.hp.com/service_locator

- HP Software Downloads:
  http://www.hp.com/support/manuals
- HP Software Depot:
  http://www.software.hp.com
- HP Single Point of Connectivity Knowledge (SPOCK):
  http://www.hp.com/storage/spock
- HP SAN manuals:
  http://www.hp.com/go/sdgmanuals

Typographic conventions

Table 28 Document conventions

Convention	Element
Blue text: Table 28 (page 198)	Cross-reference links and e-mail addresses
Blue, underlined text: http://www.hp.com	Website addresses
Bold text	• Keys that are pressed • Text typed into a GUI element, such as a box • GUI elements that are clicked or selected, such as menu and list items, buttons, tabs, and check boxes
Italic text	Text emphasis
`Monospace` text	• File and directory names • System output • Code • Commands, their arguments, and argument values
`Monospace, italic` text	• Code variables • Command variables
`Monospace, bold` text	Emphasized monospace text
. . .	Indication that the example continues.
WARNING!	An alert that calls attention to important information that if not understood or followed can result in personal injury.
CAUTION:	An alert that calls attention to important information that if not understood or followed can result in data loss, data corruption, or damage to hardware or software.
IMPORTANT:	An alert that calls attention to additional or supplementary information.
TIP:	An alert that calls attention to helpful hints and shortcuts.

Customer self repair

HP customer self repair (CSR) programs allow you to repair your EVA product. If a CSR part needs replacing, HP ships the part directly to you so that you can install it at your convenience. Some

parts do not qualify for CSR. Your HP-authorized service provider will determine whether a repair can be accomplished by CSR.

For more information about CSR, contact your local service provider, or see the CSR website:

http://www.hp.com/go/selfrepair

Rack stability

Rack stability protects personnel and equipment.

⚠ **WARNING!** To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to equipment:

- Extend leveling jacks to the floor.
- Ensure that the full weight of the rack rests on the leveling jacks.
- Install stabilizing feet on the rack.
- In multiple-rack installations, fasten racks together securely.
- Extend only one rack component at a time. Racks can become unstable if more than one component is extended.

A Regulatory compliance notices

Regulatory compliance identification numbers

For the purpose of regulatory compliance certifications and identification, this product has been assigned a unique regulatory model number. The regulatory model number can be found on the product nameplate label, along with all required approval markings and information. When requesting compliance information for this product, always refer to this regulatory model number. The regulatory model number is not the marketing name or model number of the product.

Product specific information:

HP _____

Regulatory model number: _____

FCC and CISPR classification: _____

These products contain laser components. See Class 1 laser statement in the "Laser compliance notices" (page 204) section.

Federal Communications Commission notice

Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and Regulations has established Radio Frequency (RF) emission limits to provide an interference-free radio frequency spectrum. Many electronic devices, including computers, generate RF energy incidental to their intended function and are, therefore, covered by these rules. These rules place computers and related peripheral devices into two classes, A and B, depending upon their intended installation. Class A devices are those that may reasonably be expected to be installed in a business or commercial environment. Class B devices are those that may reasonably be expected to be installed in a residential environment (for example, personal computers). The FCC requires devices in both classes to bear a label indicating the interference potential of the device as well as additional operating instructions for the user.

FCC rating label

The FCC rating label on the device shows the classification (A or B) of the equipment. Class B devices have an FCC logo or ID on the label. Class A devices do not have an FCC logo or ID on the label. After you determine the class of the device, refer to the corresponding statement.

Class A equipment

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at personal expense.

Class B equipment

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment

off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit that is different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or television technician for help.

Declaration of Conformity for products marked with the FCC logo, United States only

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

For questions regarding this FCC declaration, contact us by mail or telephone:

- Hewlett-Packard Company P.O. Box 692000, Mail Stop 510101 Houston, Texas 77269-2000
- Or call 1-281-514-3333

Modification

The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Hewlett-Packard Company may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Cables

When provided, connections to this device must be made with shielded cables with metallic RFI/EMI connector hoods in order to maintain compliance with FCC Rules and Regulations.

Canadian notice (Avis Canadien)

Class A equipment

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la class A respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

Class B equipment

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la class B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

European Union notice

This product complies with the following EU directives:

- Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC
- EMC Directive 2004/108/EC

Compliance with these directives implies conformity to applicable harmonized European standards (European Norms) which are listed on the EU Declaration of Conformity issued by Hewlett-Packard for this product or product family.

This compliance is indicated by the following conformity marking placed on the product:

CE	This marking is valid for non-Telecom products and EU harmonized Telecom products (e.g., Bluetooth).

Certificates can be obtained from http://www.hp.com/go/certificates.
Hewlett-Packard GmbH, HQ-TRE, Herrenberger Strasse 140, 71034 Boeblingen, Germany

Japanese notices

Japanese VCCI-A notice

この装置は，クラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。 VCCI－A

Japanese VCCI-B notice

この装置は，クラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は，家庭環境で使用することを目的としていますが，この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると，受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。
取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。 VCCI－B

Japanese VCCI marking

Japanese power cord statement

製品には、同梱された電源コードをお使い下さい。
同梱された電源コードは、他の製品では使用出来ません。

Please use the attached power cord.
The attached power cord is not allowed to use with other product.

Korean notices

Class A equipment

A급 기기 (업무용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 업무용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기이오니 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 만약 잘못판매 또는 구입하였을 때에는 가정용으로 교환하시기 바랍니다.

Class B equipment

B급 기기 (가정용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 가정용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기로서 주거지역에서는 물론 모든지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

Taiwanese notices

BSMI Class A notice

警告使用者:

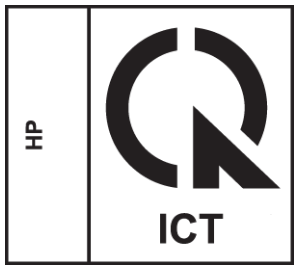
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

Taiwan battery recycle statement

Turkish recycling notice

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: EEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur

Vietnamese Information Technology and Communications compliance marking



Laser compliance notices

English laser notice

This device may contain a laser that is classified as a Class 1 Laser Product in accordance with U.S. FDA regulations and the IEC 60825-1. The product does not emit hazardous laser radiation.

⚠ **WARNING!** Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein or in the laser product's installation guide may result in hazardous radiation exposure. To reduce the risk of exposure to hazardous radiation:

- Do not try to open the module enclosure. There are no user-serviceable components inside.
- Do not operate controls, make adjustments, or perform procedures to the laser device other than those specified herein.
- Allow only HP Authorized Service technicians to repair the unit.

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration implemented regulations for laser products on August 2, 1976. These regulations apply to laser products manufactured from August 1, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States.

Dutch laser notice

WAARSCHUWING: dit apparaat bevat mogelijk een laser die is geclassificeerd als een laserproduct van Klasse 1 overeenkomstig de bepalingen van de Amerikaanse FDA en de richtlijn IEC 60825-1. Dit product geeft geen gevaarlijke laserstraling af.

Als u bedieningselementen gebruikt, instellingen aanpast of procedures uitvoert op een andere manier dan in deze publicatie of in de installatiehandleiding van het laserproduct wordt aangegeven, loopt u het risico te worden blootgesteld aan gevaarlijke straling. Het risico van blootstelling aan gevaarlijke straling beperkt u als volgt:

- Probeer de behuizing van de module niet te openen. U mag zelf geen onderdelen repareren.
- Gebruik voor de laserapparatuur geen andere knoppen of instellingen en voer geen andere aanpassingen of procedures uit dan die in deze handleiding worden beschreven.
- Alleen door HP geautoriseerde technici mogen het apparaat repareren.

French laser notice

AVERTISSEMENT : cet appareil peut être équipé d'un laser classé en tant que Produit laser de classe 1 et conforme à la réglementation de la FDA américaine et à la norme 60825-1 de l'IEC. Ce produit n'émet pas de rayonnement dangereux.

L'utilisation de commandes, de réglages ou de procédures autres que ceux qui sont indiqués ici ou dans le manuel d'installation du produit laser peut exposer l'utilisateur à des rayonnements dangereux. Pour réduire le risque d'exposition à des rayonnements dangereux :

- Ne tentez pas d'ouvrir le boîtier renfermant l'appareil laser. Il ne contient aucune pièce dont la maintenance puisse être effectuée par l'utilisateur.
- Tout contrôle, réglage ou procédure autre que ceux décrits dans ce chapitre ne doivent pas être effectués par l'utilisateur.
- Seuls les Mainteneurs Agréés HP sont habilités à réparer l'appareil laser.

German laser notice

VORSICHT: Dieses Gerät enthält möglicherweise einen Laser, der nach den US-amerikanischen FDA-Bestimmungen und nach IEC 60825-1 als Laserprodukt der Klasse 1 zertifiziert ist. Gesundheitsschädliche Laserstrahlen werden nicht emittiert.

Die Anleitungen in diesem Dokument müssen befolgt werden. Bei Einstellungen oder Durchführung sonstiger Verfahren, die über die Anleitungen in diesem Dokument bzw. im Installationshandbuch des Lasergeräts hinausgehen, kann es zum Austritt gefährlicher Strahlung kommen. Zur Vermeidung der Freisetzung gefährlicher Strahlungen sind die folgenden Punkte zu beachten:

- Versuchen Sie nicht, die Abdeckung des Lasermoduls zu öffnen. Im Inneren befinden sich keine Komponenten, die vom Benutzer gewartet werden können.
- Benutzen Sie das Lasergerät ausschließlich gemäß den Anleitungen und Hinweisen in diesem Dokument.
- Lassen Sie das Gerät nur von einem HP Servicepartner reparieren.

Italian laser notice

AVVERTENZA: AVVERTENZA Questo dispositivo può contenere un laser classificato come prodotto laser di Classe 1 in conformità alle normative US FDA e IEC 60825-1. Questo prodotto non emette radiazioni laser pericolose.

L'eventuale esecuzione di comandi, regolazioni o procedure difformi a quanto specificato nella presente documentazione o nella guida di installazione del prodotto può causare l'esposizione a radiazioni nocive. Per ridurre i rischi di esposizione a radiazioni pericolose, attenersi alle seguenti precauzioni:

- Non cercare di aprire il contenitore del modulo. All'interno non vi sono componenti soggetti a manutenzione da parte dell'utente.
- Non eseguire operazioni di controllo, regolazione o di altro genere su un dispositivo laser ad eccezione di quelle specificate da queste istruzioni.
- Affidare gli interventi di riparazione dell'unità esclusivamente ai tecnici dell'Assistenza autorizzata HP.

Japanese laser notice

警告:本製品には、US FDA規則およびIEC 60825-1に基づくClass 1レーザー製品が含まれている場合があります。本製品は人体に危険なレーザー光は発しません。

本書およびレーザー製品のインストール ガイドに示されている以外の方法で制御、調整、使用した場合、人体に危険な光線にさらされる場合があります。人体に危険な光線にさらされないため、以下の項目を守ってください。

- モジュール エンクロージャを開けないでください。ユーザーが取り扱えるコンポーネントは含まれていません。
- 本書に示されている以外の方法で、レーザー デバイスを制御、調整、使用しないでください。
- HPの正規サービス技術者のみが本ユニットの修理を許可されています。

Spanish laser notice

ADVERTENCIA: Este dispositivo podría contener un láser clasificado como producto de láser de Clase 1 de acuerdo con la normativa de la FDA de EE.UU. e IEC 60825-1. El producto no emite radiaciones láser peligrosas.

El uso de controles, ajustes o manipulaciones distintos de los especificados aquí o en la guía de instalación del producto de láser puede producir una exposición peligrosa a las radiaciones. Para evitar el riesgo de exposición a radiaciones peligrosas:

- No intente abrir la cubierta del módulo. Dentro no hay componentes que el usuario pueda reparar.
- No realice más operaciones de control, ajustes o manipulaciones en el dispositivo láser que los aquí especificados.
- Sólo permita reparar la unidad a los agentes del servicio técnico autorizado HP.

Recycling notices

English recycling notice

Disposal of waste equipment by users in private household in the European Union

This symbol means do not dispose of your product with your other household waste. Instead, you should protect human health and the environment by handing over your waste equipment to a designated collection point for the recycling of waste electrical and electronic equipment. For more information, please contact your household waste disposal service

Bulgarian recycling notice

Изхвърляне на отпадъчно оборудване от потребители в частни домакинства в Европейския съюз

Този символ върху продукта или опаковката му показва, че продуктът не трябва да се изхвърля заедно с другите битови отпадъци. Вместо това, трябва да предпазите човешкото здраве и околната среда, като предадете отпадъчното оборудване в предназначен за събирането му пункт за рециклиране на неизползваемо електрическо и електронно борудване. За допълнителна информация се свържете с фирмата по чистота, чиито услуги използвате.

Czech recycling notice

Likvidace zařízení v domácnostech v Evropské unii

Tento symbol znamená, že nesmíte tento produkt likvidovat spolu s jiným domovním odpadem. Místo toho byste měli chránit lidské zdraví a životní prostředí tím, že jej předáte na k tomu určené sběrné pracoviště, kde se zabývají recyklací elektrického a elektronického vybavení. Pro více informací kontaktujte společnost zabývající se sběrem a svozem domovního odpadu.

Danish recycling notice

Bortskaffelse af brugt udstyr hos brugere i private hjem i EU

Dette symbol betyder, at produktet ikke må bortskaffes sammen med andet husholdningsaffald. Du skal i stedet den menneskelige sundhed og miljøet ved at afl evere dit brugte udstyr på et dertil beregnet indsamlingssted for af brugt, elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr. Kontakt nærmeste renovationsafdeling for yderligere oplysninger.

Dutch recycling notice

Inzameling van afgedankte apparatuur van particuliere huishoudens in de Europese Unie

Dit symbool betekent dat het product niet mag worden gedeponeerd bij het overige huishoudelijke afval. Bescherm de gezondheid en het milieu door afgedankte apparatuur in te leveren bij een hiervoor bestemd inzamelpunt voor recycling van afgedankte elektrische en elektronische apparatuur. Neem voor meer informatie contact op met uw gemeentereinigingsdienst.

Estonian recycling notice

Äravisatavate seadmete likvideerimine Euroopa Liidu eramajapidamistes

See märk näitab, et seadet ei tohi visata olmeprügi hulka. Inimeste tervise ja keskkonna säästmise nimel tuleb äravisatav toode tuua elektriliste ja elektrooniliste seadmete käitlemisega egelevasse kogumispunkti. Küsimuste korral pöörduge kohaliku prügikäitlusettevõtte poole.

Finnish recycling notice

Kotitalousjätteiden hävittäminen Euroopan unionin alueella

Tämä symboli merkitsee, että laitetta ei saa hävittää muiden kotitalousjätteiden mukana. Sen sijaan sinun on suojattava ihmisten terveyttä ja ympäristöä toimittamalla käytöstä poistettu laite sähkö- tai elektroniikkajätteen kierrätyspisteeseen. Lisätietoja saat jätehuoltoyhtiöltä.

French recycling notice

Mise au rebut d'équipement par les utilisateurs privés dans l'Union Européenne

Ce symbole indique que vous ne devez pas jeter votre produit avec les ordures ménagères. Il est de votre responsabilité de protéger la santé et l'environnement et de vous débarrasser de votre équipement en le remettant à une déchetterie effectuant le recyclage des équipements électriques et électroniques. Pour de plus amples informations, prenez contact avec votre service d'élimination des ordures ménagères.

German recycling notice

Entsorgung von Altgeräten von Benutzern in privaten Haushalten in der EU

Dieses Symbol besagt, dass dieses Produkt nicht mit dem Haushaltsmüll entsorgt werden darf. Zum Schutze der Gesundheit und der Umwelt sollten Sie stattdessen Ihre Altgeräte zur Entsorgung einer dafür vorgesehenen Recyclingstelle für elektrische und elektronische Geräte übergeben. Weitere Informationen erhalten Sie von Ihrem Entsorgungsunternehmen für Hausmüll.

Greek recycling notice

Απόρριψη άχρηστου εξοπλισμού από ιδιώτες χρήστες στην Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση

Αυτό το σύμβολο σημαίνει ότι δεν πρέπει να απορρίψετε το προϊόν με τα λοιπά οικιακά απορρίμματα. Αντίθετα, πρέπει να προστατέψετε την ανθρώπινη υγεία και το περιβάλλον παραδίδοντας τον άχρηστο εξοπλισμό σας σε εξουσιοδοτημένο σημείο συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση άχρηστου ηλεκτρικού και ηλεκτρονικού εξοπλισμού. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες, επικοινωνήστε με την υπηρεσία απόρριψης απορριμμάτων της περιοχής σας.

Hungarian recycling notice

A hulladék anyagok megsemmisítése az Európai Unió háztartásaiban

Ez a szimbólum azt jelzi, hogy a készüléket nem szabad a háztartási hulladékkal együtt kidobni. Ehelyett a leselejtezett berendezéseknek az elektromos vagy elektronikus hulladék átvételére kijelölt helyen történő beszolgáltatásával megóvja az emberi egészséget és a környezetet.További információt a helyi köztisztasági vállalattól kaphat.

Italian recycling notice

Smaltimento di apparecchiature usate da parte di utenti privati nell'Unione Europea

Questo simbolo avvisa di non smaltire il prodotto con i normali rifi uti domestici. Rispettare la salute umana e l'ambiente conferendo l'apparecchiatura dismessa a un centro di raccolta designato per il riciclo di apparecchiature elettroniche ed elettriche. Per ulteriori informazioni, rivolgersi al servizio per lo smaltimento dei rifi uti domestici.

Latvian recycling notice

Europos Sąjungos namų ūkio vartotojų įrangos atliekų šalinimas

Šis simbolis nurodo, kad gaminio negalima išmesti kartu su kitomis buitinėmis atliekomis. Kad apsaugotumėte žmonių sveikatą ir aplinką, pasenusią nenaudojamą įrangą turite nuvežti į elektrinių ir elektroninių atliekų surinkimo punktą. Daugiau informacijos teiraukitės buitinių atliekų surinkimo tarnybos.

Lithuanian recycling notice

Nolietotu iekārtu iznīcināšanas noteikumi lietotājiem Eiropas Savienības privātajās mājsaimniecībās

Šis simbols norāda, ka ierīci nedrīkst utilizēt kopā ar citiem mājsaimniecības atkritumiem. Jums jārūpējas par cilvēku veselības un vides aizsardzību, nododot lietoto aprīkojumu otrreizējai pārstrādei īpašā lietotu elektrisko un elektronisko ierīču savākšanas punktā. Lai iegūtu plašāku informāciju, lūdzu, sazinieties ar savu mājsaimniecības atkritumu likvidēšanas dienestu.

Polish recycling notice

Utylizacja zużytego sprzętu przez użytkowników w prywatnych gospodarstwach domowych w krajach Unii Europejskiej

Ten symbol oznacza, że nie wolno wyrzucać produktu wraz z innymi domowymi odpadkami. Obowiązkiem użytkownika jest ochrona zdrowa ludzkiego i środowiska przez przekazanie zużytego sprzętu do wyznaczonego punktu zajmującego się recyklingiem odpadów powstałych ze sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego. Więcej informacji można uzyskać od lokalnej firmy zajmującej wywozem nieczystości.

Portuguese recycling notice

Descarte de equipamentos usados por utilizadores domésticos na União Europeia

Este símbolo indica que não deve descartar o seu produto juntamente com os outros lixos domiciliares. Ao invés disso, deve proteger a saúde humana e o meio ambiente levando o seu equipamento para descarte em um ponto de recolha destinado à reciclagem de resíduos de equipamentos eléctricos e electrónicos. Para obter mais informações, contacte o seu serviço de tratamento de resíduos domésticos.

Romanian recycling notice

Casarea echipamentului uzat de către utilizatorii casnici din Uniunea Europeană

Acest simbol înseamnă să nu se arunce produsul cu alte deșeuri menajere. În schimb, trebuie să protejați sănătatea umană și mediul predând echipamentul uzat la un punct de colectare desemnat pentru reciclarea echipamentelor electrice și electronice uzate. Pentru informații suplimentare, vă rugăm să contactați serviciul de eliminare a deșeurilor menajere local.

Slovak recycling notice

Likvidácia vyradených zariadení používateľmi v domácnostiach v Európskej únii

Tento symbol znamená, že tento produkt sa nemá likvidovať s ostatným domovým odpadom. Namiesto toho by ste mali chrániť ľudské zdravie a životné prostredie odovzdaním odpadového zariadenia na zbernom mieste, ktoré je určené na recykláciu odpadových elektrických a elektronických zariadení. Ďalšie informácie získate od spoločnosti zaoberajúcej sa likvidáciou domového odpadu.

Spanish recycling notice

Eliminación de los equipos que ya no se utilizan en entornos domésticos de la Unión Europea

Este símbolo indica que este producto no debe eliminarse con los residuos domésticos. En lugar de ello, debe evitar causar daños a la salud de las personas y al medio ambiente llevando los equipos que no utilice a un punto de recogida designado para el reciclaje de equipos eléctricos y electrónicos que ya no se utilizan. Para obtener más información, póngase en contacto con el servicio de recogida de residuos domésticos.

Swedish recycling notice

Hantering av elektroniskt avfall för hemanvändare inom EU

Den här symbolen innebär att du inte ska kasta din produkt i hushållsavfallet. Värna i stället om natur och miljö genom att lämna in uttjänt utrustning på anvisad insamlingsplats. Allt elektriskt och elektroniskt avfall går sedan vidare till återvinning. Kontakta ditt återvinningsföretag för mer information.

Battery replacement notices

Dutch battery notice

Verklaring betreffende de batterij

WAARSCHUWING: dit apparaat bevat mogelijk een batterij.

- Probeer de batterijen na het verwijderen niet op te laden.
- Stel de batterijen niet bloot aan water of temperaturen boven 60° C.
- De batterijen mogen niet worden beschadigd, gedemonteerd, geplet of doorboord.
- Zorg dat u geen kortsluiting veroorzaakt tussen de externe contactpunten en laat de batterijen niet in aanraking komen met water of vuur.
- Gebruik ter vervanging alleen door HP goedgekeurde batterijen.

Batterijen, accu's en accumulators mogen niet worden gedeponeerd bij het normale huishoudelijke afval. Als u de batterijen/accu's wilt inleveren voor hergebruik of op de juiste manier wilt vernietigen, kunt u gebruik maken van het openbare inzamelingssysteem voor klein chemisch afval of ze terugsturen naar HP of een geautoriseerde HP Business of Service Partner.

Neem contact op met een geautoriseerde leverancier of een Business of Service Partner voor meer informatie over het vervangen of op de juiste manier vernietigen van accu's.

French battery notice

Avis relatif aux piles

AVERTISSEMENT : cet appareil peut contenir des piles.

- N'essayez pas de recharger les piles après les avoir retirées.
- Évitez de les mettre en contact avec de l'eau ou de les soumettre à des températures supérieures à 60°C.
- N'essayez pas de démonter, d'écraser ou de percer les piles.
- N'essayez pas de court-circuiter les bornes de la pile ou de jeter cette dernière dans le feu ou l'eau.
- Remplacez les piles exclusivement par des pièces de rechange HP prévues pour ce produit.

Les piles, modules de batteries et accumulateurs ne doivent pas être jetés avec les déchets ménagers. Pour permettre leur recyclage ou leur élimination, veuillez utiliser les systèmes de collecte publique ou renvoyez-les à HP, à votre Partenaire Agréé HP ou aux agents agréés.

Contactez un Revendeur Agréé ou Mainteneur Agréé pour savoir comment remplacer et jeter vos piles.

German battery notice

Hinweise zu Batterien und Akkus

VORSICHT: Dieses Produkt enthält unter Umständen eine Batterie oder einen Akku.

- Versuchen Sie nicht, Batterien und Akkus außerhalb des Gerätes wieder aufzuladen.
- Schützen Sie Batterien und Akkus vor Feuchtigkeit und Temperaturen über 60°.
- Verwenden Sie Batterien und Akkus nicht missbräuchlich, nehmen Sie sie nicht auseinander und vermeiden Sie mechanische Beschädigungen jeglicher Art.
- Vermeiden Sie Kurzschlüsse, und setzen Sie Batterien und Akkus weder Wasser noch Feuer aus.
- Ersetzen Sie Batterien und Akkus nur durch die von HP vorgesehenen Ersatzteile.

Batterien und Akkus dürfen nicht über den normalen Hausmüll entsorgt werden. Um sie der Wiederverwertung oder dem Sondermüll zuzuführen, nutzen Sie die öffentlichen Sammelstellen, oder setzen Sie sich bezüglich der Entsorgung mit einem HP Partner in Verbindung.

Weitere Informationen zum Austausch von Batterien und Akkus oder zur sachgemäßen Entsorgung erhalten Sie bei Ihrem HP Partner oder Servicepartner.

Italian battery notice

Istruzioni per la batteria

AVVERTENZA: Questo dispositivo può contenere una batteria.

- Non tentare di ricaricare le batterie se rimosse.
- Evitare che le batterie entrino in contatto con l'acqua o siano esposte a temperature superiori a 60° C.
- Non smontare, schiacciare, forare o utilizzare in modo improprio la batteria.
- Non accorciare i contatti esterni o gettare in acqua o sul fuoco la batteria.
- Sostituire la batteria solo con i ricambi HP previsti a questo scopo.

Le batterie e gli accumulatori non devono essere smaltiti insieme ai rifiuti domestici. Per procedere al riciclaggio o al corretto smaltimento, utilizzare il sistema di raccolta pubblico dei rifiuti o restituirli a HP, ai Partner Ufficiali HP o ai relativi rappresentanti.

Per ulteriori informazioni sulla sostituzione e sullo smaltimento delle batterie, contattare un Partner Ufficiale o un Centro di assistenza autorizzato.

Japanese battery notice

バッテリに関する注意

警告:本製品はバッテリを内蔵している場合があります。

- バッテリを取り外している場合は、充電しないでください。
- バッテリを水にさらしたり、60°C (140°F) 以上の温度にさらさないでください。
- バッテリを誤用、分解、破壊したり、穴をあけたりしないでください。
- 外部極を短絡させたり、火や水に投棄しないでください。
- バッテリを交換する際は、HP指定の製品と交換してください。

バッテリ、バッテリ パック、蓄電池は一般の家庭廃棄物と一緒に廃棄しないでください。リサイクルまたは適切に廃棄するため、公共の収集システム、HP、HPパートナー、またはHPパートナーの代理店にお送りください。

バッテリ交換および適切な廃棄方法についての情報は、HPのサポート窓口にお問い合わせください。

Spanish battery notice

Declaración sobre las baterías

ADVERTENCIA: Este dispositivo podría contener una batería.

- No intente recargar las baterías si las extrae.
- Evite el contacto de las baterías con agua y no las exponga a temperaturas superiores a los 60 °C (140 °F).
- No utilice incorrectamente, ni desmonte, aplaste o pinche las baterías.
- No cortocircuite los contactos externos ni la arroje al fuego o al agua.
- Sustituya las baterías sólo por el repuesto designado por HP.

Las baterías, los paquetes de baterías y los acumuladores no se deben eliminar junto con los desperdicios generales de la casa. Con el fin de tirarlos al contenedor de reciclaje adecuado, utilice los sistemas públicos de recogida o devuélvalas a HP, un distribuidor autorizado de HP o sus agentes.

Para obtener más información sobre la sustitución de la batería o su eliminación correcta, consulte con su distribuidor o servicio técnico autorizado.

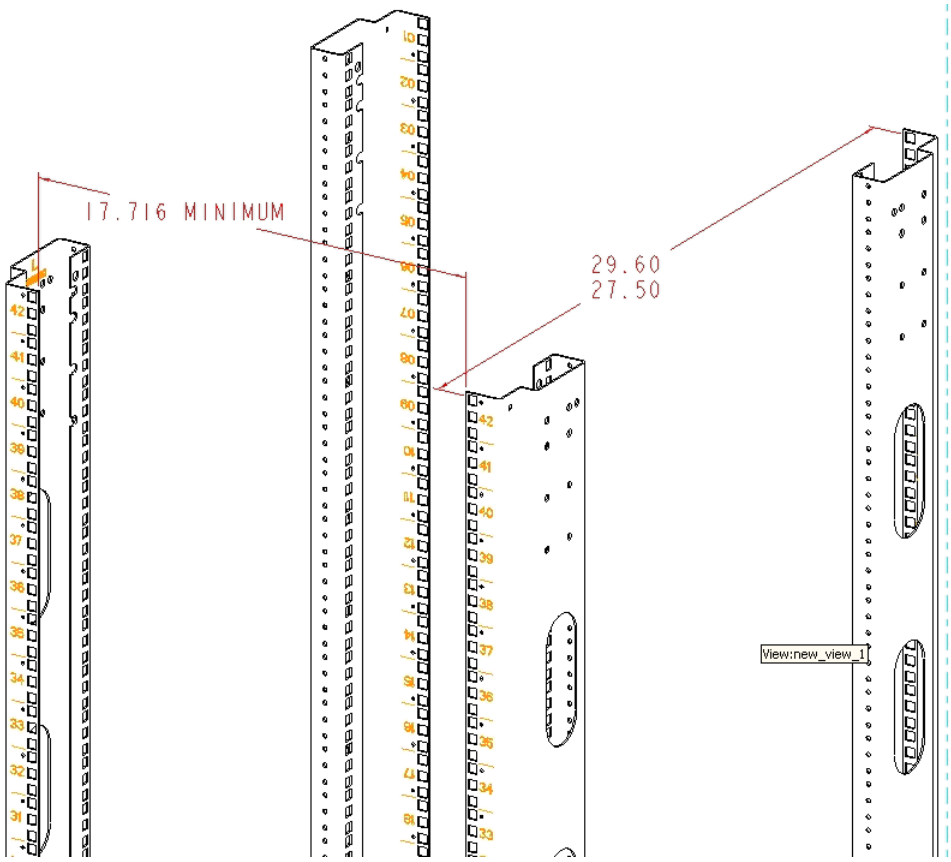
B Non-standard rack specifications

The appendix provides information on the requirements when installing the P63x0/P65x0 EVA in a non-standard rack. All the requirements must be met to ensure proper operation of the storage system.

Internal component envelope

EVA component mounting brackets require space to be mounted behind the vertical mounting rails. Room for the mounting of the brackets includes the width of the mounting rails and needed room for any mounting hardware, such as screws, clip nuts, etc. Figure 92 (page 213) shows the dimensions required for the mounting space for the EVA product line. It does not show required space for additional HP components such as servers.

Figure 92 Mounting space dimensions



EIA310-D standards

The rack must meet the Electronic Industries Association, (EIA), Standard 310-D, Cabinets, Racks and Associated Equipment. The standard defines rack mount spacing and component dimensions specified in U units.

Copies of the standard are available for purchase at http://www.eia.org/.

EVA cabinet measures and tolerances

EVA component rack mount brackets are designed to fit cabinets with mounting rails set at depths from 27.5 inches to 29.6 inches, inside rails to inside rails.

Weights, dimensions and component CG measurements

Cabinet CG dimensions are reported as measured from the inside bottom of the cabinet (Z), the leading edge of the vertical mounting rails (Y), and the centerline of the cabinet mounting space (X). Component CG measurements are measured from the bottom of the U space the component is to occupy (Z), the mounting surface of the mounting flanges (Y), and the centerline of the component (X).

Determining the CG of a configuration may be necessary for safety considerations. CG considerations for CG calculations do not include cables, PDU's and other peripheral components. Some consideration should be made to allow for some margin of safety when estimating configuration CG.

Estimating the configuration CG requires measuring the CG of the cabinet the product will be installed in. Use the following formula:

$\Sigma d_{component} W = d_{system\ cg} W$

where $d_{component}$= the distance of interest and W = Weight

The distance of a component is its CG's distance from the inside base of the cabinet. For example, if a loaded disk enclosure is to be installed into the cabinet with its bottom at 10U, the distance for the enclosure would be (10*1.75)+2.7 inches.

Airflow and Recirculation

Component Airflow Requirements

Component airflow must be directed from the front of the cabinet to the rear. Components vented to discharge airflow from the sides must discharge to the rear of the cabinet.

Rack Airflow Requirements

The following requirements must be met to ensure adequate airflow and to prevent damage to the equipment:

- If the rack includes closing front and rear doors, allow 830 square inches (5,350 sq cm) of hole evenly distributed from top to bottom to permit adequate airflow (equivalent to the required 64 percent open area for ventilation).
- For side vented components, the clearance between the installed rack component and the side panels of the rack must be a minimum of 2.75 inches (7 cm).
- Always use blanking panels to fill all empty front panel U-spaces in the rack. This ensures proper airflow. Using a rack without blanking panels results in improper cooling that can lead to thermal damage.

Configuration Standards

EVA configurations are designed considering cable length, configuration CG, serviceability and accessibility, and to allow for easy expansion of the system. If at all possible, it is best to configure non HP cabinets in a like manner.

UPS Selection

This section provides information that can be used when selecting a UPS for use with the EVA. The four HP UPS products listed in Table 29 (page 215) are available for use with the EVA and are included in this comparison. Table 30 (page 215) identifies the amount of time each UPS can sustain power under varying loads and with various UPS ERM (Extended Runtime Module) options.

NOTE: The specified power requirements reflect fully loaded enclosures (14 disks).

Table 29 HP UPS models and capacities

UPS Model	Capacity (in watts)
R1500	1340
R3000	2700
R5500	4500
R12000	12000

Table 30 UPS operating time limits

Load (percent)	Minutes of operation		
	With standby battery	With 1 ERM	With 2 ERMs
R1500			
100	5	23	49
80	6	32	63
50	13	57	161
20	34	146	290
R3000			
100	5	20	
80	6.5	30	
50	12	45	
20	40	120	
R5500			
100	7	24	46
80	9	31	60
50	19	61	106
20	59	169	303
R12000			
100	5	11	18
80	7	15	24
50	14	28	41
20	43	69	101

Shock and vibration specifications

Table 31 (page 216) lists the product operating shock and vibration specifications. This information applies to products weighing 45 Kg (100 lbs) or less.

NOTE: HP EVA products are designed and tested to withstand the operational shock and vibration limits specified in Table 31 (page 216). Transmission of site vibrations through non-HP racks exceeding these limits could cause operational failures of the system components.

Table 31 Operating Shock/Vibration

Shock test with half sine pulses of 10 G magnitude and 10 ms duration applied in all three axes (both positive and negative directions).
Sine sweep vibration from 5 Hz to 500 Hz to 5 Hz at 0.1 G peak, with 0.020" displacement limitation below 10 Hz. Sweep rate of 1 octave/minute. Test performed in all three axes.
Random vibration at 0.25 G rms level with uniform spectrum in the frequency range of 10 to 500 Hz. Test performed for two minutes each in all three axes.
Drives and other items exercised and monitored running appropriate exerciser (UIOX, P-Suite, etc.) with appropriate operating system and hardware.

C Command reference

This chapter lists and describes the P6000 iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI commands in alphabetical order. Each command description includes its syntax, keywords, notes, and examples.

Command syntax

The HP P6000 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI command syntax uses the following format:

```
Command     keyword
            keyword [value]
            keyword [value1] [value2]
```

The command is followed by one or more keywords. Consider the following rules and conventions:

- Commands and keywords are case insensitive.
- Required keyword values appear in standard font within brackets; for example, [value].
- Optional keyword values appear in *italics* within brackets; for example, [*value*].
- In command prompts, <*1*> or <*2*> indicates which module, 01 or 02, is being managed.

Command line completion

The command line completion feature makes entering and repeating commands easier. Table 32 (page 217) describes the command line completion keystrokes.

Table 32 Command line completion keystrokes

Keystroke	Description
TAB	Completes the command line. Enter at least one character and press the TAB key to complete the command line. If more than one possibility exists, press the TAB key again to display all possibilities.
UP ARROW	Scrolls backward through the list of previously entered commands.
DOWN ARROW	Scrolls forward through the list of previously entered commands.
CTRL+A	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the command line.
CTRL+B	Moves the cursor to the end of the command line.

Authority requirements

The various set commands perform tasks that may require you to be in an administrator session. Note that:

- Commands related to monitoring tasks are available to all account names.
- Commands related to configuration tasks are available only within an Admin session. An account must have admin authority to enter the admin start command, which opens an admin session (see admin command).

Commands

This section lists and describes the HP P6000 iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI commands in alphabetical order. Each command description includes its syntax, keywords, notes, and examples.

Admin

Opens and closes an administrator (admin) session. Any command that changes the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's configuration must be entered in an Admin session. An inactive Admin session times out after 15 minutes.

Authority	Admin session	

Syntax	`admin`	`start (or begin)`
		`end (or stop)`
		`cancel`

Keywords	`start` (or `begin`)	Opens the Admin session.
	`end` (or `stop`)	Closes the Admin session. The logout, shutdown, and reset commands also end an Admin session.
	`cancel`	Terminates an Admin session opened by another user. Use this keyword with care because it terminates the Admin session without warning the other user and without saving pending changes.

NOTE: Closing a Telnet window during an Admin session does not release the session. When using Telnet, you must either wait for the Admin session to time out, or use the `admin cancel` command.

Example: The following example shows how to open and close an Admin session:

```
MEZ50 <1>#> admin start
Password : config
MEZ50 <1> (admin) #>
.
.
.
MEZ50 <1> (admin) #> admin end
MEZ50 <1> #>
```

Beacon

Enables or disables the flashing of the blue UID beacon LED.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`beacon`	`on` `off`
Keywords	`on`	Turns on the flashing of the controller blue UID beacon.
	`off`	Turns off the flashing of the controller blue UID beacon.

Example: The following example turns the controller blue UID beacon on and then off.

```
MEZ50 <1>#> beacon on
MEZ50 <1#> beacon off
```

Clear

Removes all entries (events) from the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's log file or resets the FC and iSCSI statistic counters.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`clear`	`logs` `stats`

Keywords	`logs`	Clears all entries from the module's log file.
	`stats`	Resets the statistic counters.

Examples: The following examples show the clear commands:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> clear logs
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> clear stats
```

Date

Displays or sets the date and time. To set the date and time, you must enter the information in the format **`MMDDhhmmCCYY`** (numeric representation of month-date-hour-minute-century-year). The new date and time takes effect immediately. Each module has its own independent date set. Properly setting the date ensures that event log entries are dated correctly. The date must be set prior to applying any feature keys or licenses.

Authority	Admin session required to set the date and time. No authority is required to display the current date and time.	
Syntax	`date`	`[`*`MMDDhhmmCCYY`*`]`
Keywords	`[MMDDhhmmCCYY]`	Specifies the date, which requires an Admin session. If you omit [MMDDhhmmCCYY], the command displays the current date, which does not require an Admin session.

NOTE: Always set the time using Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM). You must disable the network time protocol (NTP) to set the time with the date command.

Examples: The following examples show the setting and then the display of the date:

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> date

  Tue May 24 18:33:41 UTC 2011

MEZ50_02 (admin) #> date ?
Please enter time in Universal (UTC) timezone.
Note that Universal (UTC) time may not be the same as your local time.
  Usage:  date [<MMDDhhmmCCYY>]
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> date 052513272011

  Wed May 25 13:27:00 UTC 2011

MEZ50_02 (admin) #>
```

Exit

Exits the command line interface and returns you to the login prompt (same as the `quit` command).

Authority	None
Syntax	`exit`

Example 1: The `exit` command logs the session out. The following example shows the exit command:

```
MEZ50 #>exit
Connection to host lost.
```

FRU

Saves and restores the module's configuration.

Authority	Admin session to restore	
Syntax	`FRU`	`restore` `save`
Keywords	`restore`	The `fru restore` command requires that you first FTP the `tar` file containing the configuration to the module. When you issue this command, the system prompts you to enter the restore level. You can fully restore the module's configuration (all configuration parameters and LUN mappings) or restore only the LUN mappings. The restored configuration does not take effect until the module is rebooted.
	`save`	Creates a `tar` file containing the module's persistent data, configuration, and LUN mappings. The file is stored in the module's `/var/ftp` directory. You must then FTP the tar file from the module.

Example 1: The following is an example of the `fru restore` command:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> fru restore
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will
follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept
the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before
reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to
do so.
Type of restore (0=full, 1=mappings only) [full]
FRU restore completed.
Please reboot the system for configuration to take affect.
```

Example 2: The following is an example of the `fru save` command:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> fru save
FRU save completed. Configuration File is HP_StorageWorks_MEZnn_FRU.bin
Please use FTP to extract the file out from the System.
```

Help

Displays a list of the commands and their syntax using the basic `help` command for iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules:

```
MEZ50 <1>#> help
```

CLI command	iSCSI module CLI command qualifier	iSCSI/FCoE module CLI command qualifier
admin	`[ begin | end | start | stop | cancel ]`	`[ begin | end | start | stop | cancel ]`
beacon	`[ on | off ]`	`[ on | off ]`
date	`<MMDDhhmmCCYY>`	`<MMDDhhmmCCYY>`
clear	`[ logs | stats ]`	`[ logs | stats ]`
exit		
fru	`[ restore | save ]`	`[ restore | save ]`
help		
history		
image	`[ cleanup | list | unpack ]` `image cleanup`	`[ cleanup | list | unpack ]` `image cleanup`

CLI command	iSCSI module CLI command qualifier	iSCSI/FCoE module CLI command qualifier
	image list image unpack [ ]	image list image unpack [ ]
initiator	[add | mod | rm]	[add | mod | rm]
logout		
lunmask	[add | rm]	[add | rm]
passwd		
ping		
quit		
reboot		
reset	[factory | mappings]	[factory | mappings]
save	[capture | logs | traces]	[capture | logs | traces]
set	[alias | chap | fc | features | iscsi | isns | mgmt | ntp | properties | snmp | system] set alias set chap set fc [<PORT_NUM>] set isns set mgmt set ntp set properties set snmp [trap_destinations [<DEST_NUM>]] set system	[alias | chap | chassis | fc | features | iscsi | isns | mgmt | ntp | properties | snmp | system | vpgroups] set alias set chap set fc [<PORT_NUM>] set isns set mgmt set ntp set properties set snmp [trap_destinations [<DEST_NUM>]] set system set vpgroups [vpgroup index]
show	[chap | fc | features | initiators | initiators_lunmask | iscsi | isns | logs | luninfo | luns | lunmask | memory | mgmt | ntp | perf | presented_targets | properties | snmp | stats | system | targets] show chap show fc [<PORT_NUM>] show features show initiators [fc | iscsi] show initiators_lunmask show iscsi [<PORT_NUM>] show isns show logs [<ENTRIES> show luninfo show luns show lunmask show memory show mgmt show ntp show perf [byte | init_rbyte | init_wbyte | tgt_rbyte | tgt_wbyte] show presented_targets [fc | iscsi] show properties show snmp show stats show system show targets [fc | iscsi]	[chap | chassi | fc | features | feature_keys | initiators | iostats | iscsi | isns | logs | luninfo | luns | memory | mgmt | ntp | perf | presented_initiators | presented_targets | properties | snmp | stats | system | targets | vpgroups] show chap show fc [<PORT_NUM>] show features show feature_keys show initiators [fc | iscsi] show iscsi [<PORT_NUM > show isns show logs [<ENTRIES>] show luninfo show luns show memory show mgmt show ntp show perf [byte | init_rbyte | init_wbyte | tgt_rbyte | tgt_wbyte] show presented_initiators [fc | iscsi] show presented_targets [fc | iscsi] show properties show rpcinfo show snmp show stats show system show targets [fc | iscsi] show vpgroups [vpgroup index]
shutdown		
target	[rm]	[rm]
targetmap	[add | rm]	[add | rm]

CLI command	iSCSI module CLI command qualifier	iSCSI/FCoE module CLI command qualifier
traceroute		
		iSCSI Server Connectivity Command Set: ========== lunmask [add | rm] show [initiators_lunmask | lunmask] show initiators_lunmask show lunmask

History

Displays a numbered list of the previously entered commands.

Authority	None
Syntax	`history`

Example: :

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> history
1: save capture
2: admin start
3: admin start
4: save logs
5: save fru
6: fru save
7: save traces
8: save capture
9: image list
10: show system
11: show mgmt
12: history
13: history
MEZ50_02 (admin) #>
```

Image

Updates the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's firmware image and cleans up (removes) the image files in the module's `/var/ftp` directory.

Authority	Admin session	

Syntax	`image`	`cleanup`
		`list [`*`file`*`]`
		`unpack [`*`file`*`]`

Keywords	`cleanup`	Removes all firmware image files in the module's `/var/ftp` directory. These are files transferred by the user when updating the module's firmware image.
	`list [file]`	Displays a list of the firmware image files in the module's `/var/ftp` directory.
	`upack [file]`	Unpacks the firmware image file specified in the [file] parameter and installs the firmware image on the module. Before using this command, you must first transfer the firmware image file to the module's `/var/ftp` directory using FTP. To activate the new firmware, you must reboot the module.

Example 1:

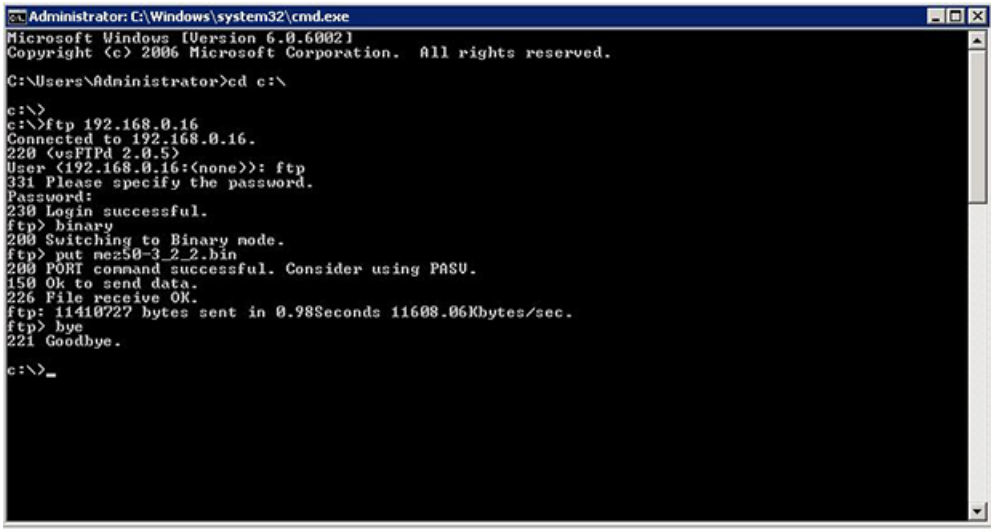
```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> image cleanup
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> image list
  No images found in system.
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> image list
  mez50-3_0_4_1.bin
Only the file name is displayed as a response to this command.
```

The software image file is placed using ftp to the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module as shown in Figure 93 (page 223).

Figure 93 FTP to iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module



Example 3:

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> image unpack
  Usage:  image unpack   [ <file> ]
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> image unpack mez50-3_0_4_1.bin
  Unpack Completed.  A reboot is required for the FW to take affect.
  Do you wish to reboot the System at the current time (y/n):  y
  System will now be rebooted...
MEZ50_02 #>
```

Initiator

Adds, modifies, and removes an initiator in the module's database.

Authority	Admin session	

Syntax	`initiator`	`add`
		`mod`
		`remove`

Keywords	`add`	Adds an initiator to the module's database.
	`mod`	Modifies the settings of an initiator.
	`remove`	Removes a logged out initiator. You cannot remove an initiator that is currently logged in.

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> initiator add
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key
```

```
to do so.
Only valid iSCSI name characters will be accepted.  Valid characters include lower-case alphabetical (a-z),
numerical (0-9), colon, hyphen, and period.
iSCSI Initiator Name (Max = 223 characters)  [  ]iqn.1995.com.microsoft:server1
  OS Type (0=Windows,     1=Linux,    2=Solaris,
           3=OpenVMS,     4=VMWare,   5=Mac OS X,
           6=Windows2008, 7=Windows2012, 8=Other)                [Windows     ] 6
  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> initiator mod
  Index   (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----   ----------------------
  0       iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf2.sanbox.com
  1       iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com
  2       iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf10.sanbox.com
  3       iqn.1995.com.microsoft:server1
  Please select an Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  3
  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
  OS Type (0=Windows,     1=Linux,    2=Solaris,
           3=OpenVMS,     4=VMWare,   5=Mac OS X,
           6=Windows2008, 7=Windows2012,8=Other)                      [Windows2008 ] 6
  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 3:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> initiator rm
  Warning: This command will cause the removal of all mappings and maskings
           associated with the initiator that is selected.  All connections
           involving the selected initiator will be dropped.
  Index  Status    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----  ------    ----------------------
  0      LoggedIn  iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf2.sanbox.com
  1      LoggedIn  iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com
  2      LoggedIn  iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf10.sanbox.com
  3      LoggedOut iqn.1995.com.microsoft:server1
  Please select a 'LoggedOut' Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  3
  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 4:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> initiator mod

  Index   Type    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----   -----   ----------------------
  0       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d,21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d
  1       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f,21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f
  2       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53
  3       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54
  4       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d
  5       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e
  6       FCOE    20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77,10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77
  7       FCOE    20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73,10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73
  8       FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b,21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b
  9       FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69,10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69
  10      FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d,10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d
  11      FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c,21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c
  12      FCOE    20:01:00:00:ab:cd:20:88,20:01:00:00:12:3a:45:68
  13      FCOE    20:01:00:00:2a:8f:2a:50,20:01:00:00:a5:a5:ff:f8
  14      ISCSI   iqn.1995.com.microsoft:server1

  Please select an Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  14

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  OS Type (0=Windows,     1=Linux,  2=Solaris,
           3=OpenVMS,     4=VMWare, 5=Mac OS X,
           6=Windows2008, 7=Windows2012 8=HP-UX,  9=AIX,
           10=Other)                                      [Windows2008 ] 6

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Logout

Exits the command line interface and returns you to the login prompt.

Authority	None
Syntax	`logout`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> logout
(none) login:
```

Lunmask

Maps a target LUN to an initiator, and also removes mappings. The CLI prompts you to select from a list of virtual port groups, targets, LUNs, and initiators.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`lunmask`	`add` `remove`
Keywords	`add`	Maps a LUN to an initiator. After you enter the command, the CLI displays a series of prompts from which you choose the initiator, target, and LUN from lists of existing devices.
	`remove`	Removes the mapping of a LUN from an initiator. After you enter the command, the CLI displays a series of prompts from which you choose the initiator, target, and LUN from lists of existing devices.

Example 1: The following example shows the `lunmask add` command.

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> lunmask add

  Index    Mapped   (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----    ------   ----------------------
  0        Yes      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf2.sanbox.com
  1        Yes      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com
  2        Yes      iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf10.sanbox.com

  Please select an Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

  Index    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----    ----------------------
  0        50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38
  1        50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c

  Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  0

  LUN
  ----
  0
  1
  2
  3
  4
  5
  6
  7
  8
  9
  10
  11
```

```
  12
  13

  Please select a LUN to present to the initiator ('q' to quit):  12

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.

MEZ50 (admin) #> lunmask rm

  Index   (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----   ----------------------
  0       50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38
  1       50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c

  Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  0

  LUN
  ----
  0
  1
  2
  3
  4
  5
  6
  7
  8
  9
  10
  11
  12
  13

  Please select a LUN presented to the initiator ('q' to quit):  12
  Index   Initiator
  -----   -----------------
  0       iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com

  Please select an Initiator to remove ('a' to remove all, 'q' to quit):  0

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 2: The following shows an example of the `lunmask add` command with virtual port groups.

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> lunmask add

  Index   Type    Mapped  (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----   ----    ------  ----------------------
  0       FCOE    Yes     20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d,21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d
  1       FCOE    Yes     20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f,21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f
  2       FCOE    No      20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53
  3       FCOE    No      20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54
  4       FCOE    No      20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d
  5       FCOE    No      20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e
  6       FCOE    Yes     20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77,10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77
  7       FCOE    Yes     20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73,10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73
  8       FCOE    No      20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b,21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b
  9       FCOE    Yes     20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69,10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69
  10      FCOE    Yes     20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d,10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d
  11      FCOE    No      20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c,21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c

  Please select an Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  10

  Index   (VpGroup Name)
  -----   --------------
  1       VPGROUP_1
  2       VPGROUP_2
```

```
3       VPGROUP_3
4       VPGROUP_4

Multiple VpGroups are currently 'ENABLED'.
Please select a VpGroup from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

Index   (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
-----   ----------------------
0       50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
1       50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c

Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  0

Index  (LUN/VpGroup)
-----  -------------
0      0/VPGROUP_1
1      1/VPGROUP_1
2      2/VPGROUP_1
3      3/VPGROUP_1
4      4/VPGROUP_1
5      5/VPGROUP_1
6      6/VPGROUP_1
7      7/VPGROUP_1
8      8/VPGROUP_1
9      9/VPGROUP_1
10     10/VPGROUP_1
11     11/VPGROUP_1
12     12/VPGROUP_1

Please select a LUN to present to the initiator ('q' to quit):  12

Index   (IP/WWNN)                (MAC/WWPN)
-----   -----------              ------------
0       20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43  21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
1       20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44  21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44

Please select a portal to map the target from the list above ('q' to quit):  0
FC presented target WWPN [50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68     ] :

Target Device is already mapped on selected portal.
```

Example 3: The following example shows the `lunmask rm` (remove) command.

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> lunmask rm

Index   (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
-----   ----------------------
0       50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38
1       50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c

Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

LUN
----
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13

Please select a LUN presented to the initiator ('q' to quit):  12
```

```
  Index    Initiator
  -----    -----------------
  0        iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com

  Please select an Initiator to remove ('a' to remove all, 'q' to quit):  0

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 4: The following shows an example of the `lunmask rm` command with virtual port groups.

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> lunmask rm

  Index    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----    ----------------------
  0        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  1        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c

  Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  0

  Index    (VpGroup Name)
  -----    --------------
  1        VPGROUP_1
  2        VPGROUP_2
  3        VPGROUP_3
  4        VPGROUP_4

  Multiple VpGroups are currently 'ENABLED'.
  Please select a VpGroup from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

  Index   (LUN/VpGroup)
  -----   -------------
  0       0/VPGROUP_1
  1       1/VPGROUP_1
  2       2/VPGROUP_1
  3       3/VPGROUP_1
  4       4/VPGROUP_1
  5       5/VPGROUP_1
  6       6/VPGROUP_1
  7       7/VPGROUP_1
  8       8/VPGROUP_1
  9       9/VPGROUP_1
  10      10/VPGROUP_1
  11      11/VPGROUP_1
  12      12/VPGROUP_1

  Please select a LUN presented to the initiator ('q' to quit):  12
  Index    Type     Initiator
  -----    ----     -----------------
  0        FC       20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d
  1        FC       20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f
  2        FCOE     20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d

  Please select an Initiator to remove ('a' to remove all, 'q' to quit):  2

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Passwd

Changes the guest and administrator passwords.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`passwd`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> passwd
Press 'q' and the ENTER key to abort this command.
Select password to change (0=guest, 1=admin) : 1
account OLD password : ******
account NEW password (6-128 chars) : ******
please confirm account NEW password : ******
Password has been changed.
```

Ping

Verifies the connectivity of management and GE ports. This command works with both IPv4 and IPv6.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`ping`

Example 1: Ping through an iSCSI data port to another iSCSI data port.

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> ping

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  IP Address (IPv4 or IPv6)                 [0.0.0.0] 33.33.52,91
  Invalid IP Address.

  IP Address (IPv4 or IPv6)                 [0.0.0.0] 33.33.52.91
  Iteration Count (0=Continuously)          [0      ] 8
  Outbound Port (0=Mgmt, 1=GE1, 2=GE2, ...) [Mgmt   ] 1
  Size Of Packet (Min=1, Max=1472  Bytes)   [56     ]

  Pinging 33.33.52.91 with 56 bytes of data:

  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms
  Reply from 33.33.52.91: bytes=64 time=<0.1ms

  Ping Statistics for 33.33.52.91:
      Packets:  Sent  = 8,  Received = 8, Lost = 0
  Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
      Minimum = 0.0ms, Maximum = 0.1ms, Average = 0.0ms
```

Example 2: Ping through the mgmt port to another mgmt port.

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> ping

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  IP Address (IPv4 or IPv6)                 [0.0.0.0] 10.6.0.194
  Iteration Count (0=Continuously)          [0      ] 8
  Outbound Port (0=Mgmt, 1=GE1, 2=GE2, ...) [Mgmt   ] 0
  Size Of Packet (Min=1, Max=1472  Bytes)   [56     ]

  Pinging 10.6.0.194 with 56 bytes of data:

  Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=1.3ms
  Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms
  Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms
```

```
Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms
Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms
Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms
Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms
Reply from 10.6.0.194: bytes=56 time=0.1ms

Ping Statistics for 10.6.0.194:
    Packets:  Sent  = 8,  Received = 8, Lost = 0
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
    Minimum = 0.1ms, Maximum = 1.3ms, Average = 0.2ms
```

Quit

Exits the command line interface and returns you to the login prompt (same as the `exit` command).

Authority	None
Syntax	`quit`

Example 1: The following example shows the quit command for the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> quit
MEZ50 login:
```

Reboot

Restarts the module firmware.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`reboot`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> reboot
Are you sure you want to reboot the System (y/n): y
System will now be rebooted...
```

Reset

Restores the module configuration parameters to the factory default values. The `reset factory` command deletes all LUN mappings, as well as all persistent data regarding targets, LUNs, initiators, virtual port group settings, log files, iSCSI and MGMT IP addresses, FC and Ethernet port statistics, and passwords. This command also restores the factory default IP addresses. The `reset mappings` command clears only the LUN mappings.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`reset`	`factory` `mappings`
Keywords	`factory`	
	`mappings`	

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> reset factory
Are you sure you want to restore to factory default settings (y/n): y
Please reboot the System for the settings to take affect
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> reset mappings
Are you sure you want to reset the mappings in the system (y/n): y
Please reboot the System for the settings to take affect.
```

Save

Saves logs and traces.

Authority	Admin session	

Syntax	`save`	`capture`
		`logs`
		`traces`

Keywords	`capture`	The `save capture` command creates a debug file that captures all debug dump data. After the command completes, you must FTP the debug capture file from the module.
	`logs`	The `save logs` command creates a tar file that contains the module's log data, storing the file in the module's `/var/ftp` directory. After the command completes, you must FTP the log's tar file from the module.
	`traces`	The `save traces` command creates a tar file that contains the module's dump data, storing the tar file in the module's `/var/ftp` directory. After the command completes, you must FTP the trace's tar file from the module. After executing this command, the system notifies you if the module does not have any dump data. Each time it generates dump data, the system adds an event log entry.

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> save capture
Debug capture completed. Package is System_Capture.tar.gz
Please use FTP to extract the file out from the System.
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> save logs
Save Event Logs completed. Package is System_Evl.tar.gz
Please use FTP to extract the file out from the System.
```

Example 3: Save traces is not supported by the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE modules.

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> save traces

  Save ASIC Traces failed.
```

Set

Configures general iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE parameters, as well as parameters that are specific to the FC, iSCSI, and management ports.

Command	iSCSI module	iSCSI/FCoE module

Set	`alias`
	`chap`
	`fc [<PORT_NUM>]`
	`features`
	`iscsi [<PORT_NUM>]`
	`isns`
	`mgmt`
	`ntp`
	`properties`
	`snmp [trap_destinations [<DEST_NUM>]]`
	`system`
		`alias`
		`chap`
		`chassis`
		`fc [<PORT_NUM>]`
		`features`
		`iscsi [<PORT_NUM>]`
		`isns`
		`mgmt`
		`ntp`
		`properties`
		`snmp [trap_destinations [<DEST_NUM>]]`
		`system`
		`vpgroups [vpgroup index]`

Keywords	`alias`	Assigns alias name to a presented iSCSI target. See the "set alias command" (page 232)
	`chap`	Sets the CHAP secrets. See the "set CHAP command" (page 233)
	`fc [<PORT_NUM>]`	Sets the FC port parameters. "set FC command" (page 233)
	`features`	Applies license keys to the module. See the "set features command" (page 234)
	`iscsi [<PORT_NUM>]`	Sets the iSCSI port parameters. See the "set iSCSI command" (page 235)
	`isns`	Sets the Internet simple name service (iSNS) parameters. See the "set iSNS command" (page 236)
	`mgmt`	Sets the management port parameters. See the "set mgmt command" (page 236)
	`ntp`	Sets the network time protocol (NTP) parameters. See the "set NTP command" (page 237)
	`properties`	Configures CLI properties for the module. See the "set properties command" (page 237)
	`snmp [trap_destinations [<DEST_NUM>]]`	Sets the simple network management protocol (SNMP) parameters. Sets system parameters such as symbolic name and log level. See the "set SNMP command" (page 238)
	`system`	Sets system parameters such as symbolic name and log level. See the "set system command" (page 239)
	`vpgroups [vpgroup index]`	Sets virtual port groups (VPGs) on the module. See the "set VPGroups command" (page 239)

Set alias

Allows an alias name to be assigned to a presented iSCSI target.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set alias`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <2> (admin) #> set alias
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
Index (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
----- ----------------------
  0       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.01.50001fe150070ce9
  1       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.02.50001fe150070ce9
  2       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.03.50001fe150070ce9
  3       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.04.50001fe150070ce9
  4       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.01.50001fe150070cec
  5       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.02.50001fe150070cec
  6       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.03.50001fe150070cec
  7       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.04.50001fe150070cec
Please select a iSCSI node from the list above ('q' to quit): 0
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
```

Set CHAP

Provides for the configuration of the challenge handshake authentication protocol (CHAP).

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set chap`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> set chap
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow. Enter a
new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If you
wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press 'q' or
'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
Index iSCSI Name
----- ----------
  0       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.0
  1       iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.1
  2      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.01.50001fe150070ce9
  3      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.02.50001fe150070ce9
  4      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.03.50001fe150070ce9
  5      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.04.50001fe150070ce9
  6      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.01.50001fe150070cec
  7      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.02.50001fe150070cec
  8      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.03.50001fe150070cec
  9      iqn.1986-03.com.hp:fcgw.MEZ50.0834e00025.b1.04.50001fe150070cec
Please select a presented target from the list above ('q' to quit): 2
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value. If
you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list press
'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
CHAP (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled] 0
CHAP Secret (Max = 100 characters) [ ] ****
All attribute values for that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set FC

Configures an FC port.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`set fc`	[<*PORT_NUM*>]
Keywords	[<*PORT_NUM*>]	The number of the FC port to be configured.

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> set fc

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  WARNING:
  The following command might cause a loss of connections to both ports.

  Configuring FC Port: 1
  --------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                  [Enabled   ]
  Link Rate (0=Auto, 1=1Gb, 2=2Gb, 4=4Gb, 8=8GB)     [Auto      ]
  Frame Size  (0=512B, 1=1024B, 2=2048B)             [2048      ]
  Execution Throttle (Min=16, Max=65535)             [256       ]

  All attribute values for Port 1 that have been changed will now be saved.

  Configuring FC Port: 2
   -------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                  [Enabled   ]
```

```
  Link Rate (0=Auto, 1=1Gb, 2=2Gb, 4=4Gb, 8=8GB)      [Auto      ]
  Frame Size  (0=512B, 1=1024B, 2=2048B)              [2048      ]
  Execution Throttle (Min=16, Max=65535)              [256       ]

  All attribute values for Port 2 that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> set fc

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  WARNING:
  The following command might cause a loss of connections to both ports.

  Configuring FC Port: 1
  -------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                   [Enabled   ]
  Link Rate (0=Auto, 1=1Gb, 2=2Gb, 4=4Gb, 8=8GB)      [Auto      ]
  Frame Size  (0=512B, 1=1024B, 2=2048B)              [2048      ]
  Execution Throttle (Min=16, Max=65535)              [256       ]

  All attribute values for Port 1 that have been changed will now be saved.

  Configuring FC Port: 2
   -------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                   [Enabled   ]
  Link Rate (0=Auto, 1=1Gb, 2=2Gb, 4=4Gb, 8=8GB)      [Auto      ]
  Frame Size  (0=512B, 1=1024B, 2=2048B)              [2048      ]
  Execution Throttle (Min=16, Max=65535)              [256       ]

  All attribute values for Port 2 that have been changed will now be saved.

  Configuring FC Port: 3
   -------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                   [Enabled   ]
  Frame Size  (0=512B, 1=1024B, 2=2048B)              [2048      ]
  Execution Throttle (Min=16, Max=65535)              [256       ]

  All attribute values for Port 3 that have been changed will now be saved.

  Configuring FC Port: 4
   -------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                   [Enabled   ]
  Frame Size  (0=512B, 1=1024B, 2=2048B)              [2048      ]
  Execution Throttle (Min=16, Max=65535)              [256       ]

  All attribute values for Port 4 that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set features

Applies license keys to the module. The date and time must be set on the module prior to applying a new feature key. (This option is not currently supported. It will be supported in a future release.)

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set features`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> set features

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
```

```
Enter feature key to be saved/activated:
```

Set iSCSI

Configures an iSCSI port.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`set iscsi`	[<*PORT_NUM*>]
Keywords	[<*PORT_NUM*>]	The iSCSI port to be configured. If not entered, all ports are selected as shown in the example.

Example:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> set iscsi

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  WARNING:
  The following command might cause a loss of connections to both ports.

  Configuring iSCSI Port: 1
  --------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)            [Enabled         ]
  Port Speed (0=Auto, 1=100Mb, 2=1Gb)          [Auto            ]
  MTU Size (0=Normal, 1=Jumbo, 2=Other)        [Normal          ]
  Window Size (Min=8192B, Max=1048576B)        [32768           ]
  IPv4 Address                                 [33.33.52.96     ]
  IPv4 Subnet Mask                             [255.255.0.0     ]
  IPv4 Gateway Address                         [0.0.0.0         ]
  IPv4 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
  IPv4 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
  IPv6 Address 1                               [::              ]
  IPv6 Address 2                               [::              ]
  IPv6 Default Router                          [::              ]
  IPv6 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
  IPv6 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
  iSCSI Header Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disable)   [Disabled        ]
  iSCSI Data Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disable)     [Disabled        ]

  All attribute values for Port 1 that have been changed will now be saved.

  Configuring iSCSI Port: 2
  --------------------------
  Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)            [Enabled         ]
  Port Speed (0=Auto, 1=100Mb, 2=1Gb)          [Auto            ]
  MTU Size (0=Normal, 1=Jumbo, 2=Other)        [Normal          ]
  Window Size (Min=8192B, Max=1048576B)        [32768           ]
  IPv4 Address                                 [33.33.52.97     ]
  IPv4 Subnet Mask                             [255.255.0.0     ]
  IPv4 Gateway Address                         [0.0.0.0         ]
  IPv4 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
  IPv4 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
  IPv6 Address 1                               [::              ]
  IPv6 Address 2                               [::              ]
  IPv6 Default Router                          [::              ]
  IPv6 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
  IPv6 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
  iSCSI Header Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disable)   [Disabled        ]
  iSCSI Data Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disable)     [Disabled        ]


  All attribute values for Port 2 that have been changed will now be saved.

  Configuring iSCSI Port: 3
  --------------------------
```

```
Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)            [Enabled         ]
Port Speed (0=Auto, 1=100Mb, 2=1Gb)          [Auto            ]
MTU Size (0=Normal, 1=Jumbo, 2=Other)        [Normal          ]
Window Size (Min=8192B, Max=1048576B)        [32768           ]
IPv4 Address                                 [0.0.0.0         ]
IPv4 Subnet Mask                             [0.0.0.0         ]
IPv4 Gateway Address                         [0.0.0.0         ]
IPv4 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
IPv4 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
IPv6 Address 1                               [::              ]
IPv6 Address 2                               [::              ]
IPv6 Default Router                          [::              ]
IPv6 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
IPv6 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
iSCSI Header Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disable)   [Disabled        ]
iSCSI Data Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disable)     [Disabled        ]


All attribute values for Port 3 that have been changed will now be saved.

Configuring iSCSI Port: 4
--------------------------
Port Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable)            [Enabled         ]
Port Speed (0=Auto, 1=100Mb, 2=1Gb)          [Auto            ]
MTU Size (0=Normal, 1=Jumbo, 2=Other)        [Normal          ]
Window Size (Min=8192B, Max=1048576B)        [32768           ]
IPv4 Address                                 [0.0.0.0         ]
IPv4 Subnet Mask                             [0.0.0.0         ]
IPv4 Gateway Address                         [0.0.0.0         ]
IPv4 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
IPv4 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
IPv6 Address 1                               [::              ]
IPv6 Address 2                               [::              ]
IPv6 Default Router                          [::              ]
IPv6 TCP Port No. (Min=1024, Max=65535)      [3260            ]
IPv6 VLAN (0=Enable, 1=Disable)              [Disabled        ]
iSCSI Header Digests (0=Enable, 1=Disab
```

Set iSNS

Configures iSNS parameters for a module.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set isns`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <2> (admin) #> set isns
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
iSNS (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ] 0
iSNS Address (IPv4 or IPv6) [0.0.0.0 ] 10.3.6.33
TCP Port No. [3205 ]
All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set Mgmt

Configures the module's management port (10/100).

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set mgmt`

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> set mgmt
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will
follow. Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept
the current value. If you wish to terminate this process before
reaching the end of the list press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to
do so.
WARNING:
The following command might cause a loss of connections to the MGMT
port.
IPv4 Interface (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Enabled]
IPv4 Mode (0=Static, 1=DHCP, 2=Bootp, 3=Rarp) [Dhcp ]
IPv6 Interface (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Enabled]
IPv6 Mode (0=Manual, 1=AutoConfigure) [Manual ] 1
All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 2: The following example shows how to use the `set mgmt` command to set a static address.

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> set mgmt
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
WARNING:
The following command might cause a loss of connections to the MGMT port.
IPv4 Interface (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Enabled ]
IPv4 Mode (0=Static, 1=DHCP, 2=Bootp, 3=Rarp) [Static ]
IPv4 Address [172.17.136.86 ]
IPv4 Subnet Mask [255.255.255.0 ]
IPv4 Gateway [172.17.136.1 ]
IPv6 Interface (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set NTP

Configures the NTP parameters.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set ntp`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> set ntp
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
NTP (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ] 0
TimeZone Offset from GMT (Min=-12:00,Max=12:00) [00:00 ] -8:0
IP Address [1] (IPv4 or IPv6) [0.0.0.0 ] 207.126.97.57
IP Address [2] (IPv4 or IPv6) [0.0.0.0 ]
IP Address [3] (IPv4 or IPv6) [0.0.0.0 ]
All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set properties

Configures CLI properties for the module.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set properties`

Example:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> set properties

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  CLI Inactivty Timer (0=Disable, 1=15min, 2=60min)    [Disabled] 0
  CLI Prompt (Max=32 Characters)                       [MEZ50   ]

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set SNMP

Configures the general simple network management protocol (SNMP) properties, as well as configuring eight trap destinations.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`set snmp`	[trap_destinations]<*DEST_NUM*>]]
Keywords	[trap_destinations]	Specifies the setting of the trap destinations.

Example: The following example shows the set snmp command for setting the general properties.

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> set snmp
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
Configuring SNMP :
-----------------
Read Community [ ] Public
Trap Community [ ] Private
System Location [ ]
System Contact [ ]
Authentication Traps (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
The following example shows configuring an SNMP trap destination:
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> set snmp trap_destinations
A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 1 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ] 0
IP Address [0.0.0.0 ] 10.0.0.5
Destination Port [0 ] 1024
Trap Version [0 ] 2
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 2 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 3 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 4 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 5 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 6 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 7 :
```

```
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
Configuring SNMP Trap Destination 8 :
-------------------------------------
Destination enabled (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set system

Configures the module's system-wide parameters.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set system`

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> set system

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  System Symbolic Name (Max = 64 characters)           [MEZ50-1         ]
  Controller Lun AutoMap  (0=Enable, 1=Disable)        [Enabled         ]
  Target Access Control  (0=Enable, 1=Disable)         [Disabled        ]
  Telnet (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                         [Enabled         ]
  SSH (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                            [Enabled         ]

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> set system

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  System Symbolic Name (Max = 64 characters)           [MEZ75-1         ]
  Target Presentation Mode (0=Auto, 1=Manual)          [Auto            ]
  Controller Lun AutoMap  (0=Enable, 1=Disable)        [Enabled         ]
  Target Access Control  (0=Enable, 1=Disable)         [Disabled        ]
  Telnet (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                         [Enabled         ]
  SSH (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                            [Enabled         ]
  FTP (0=Enable, 1=Disable)                            [Enabled         ]
  System Log Level (Default,Min=0, Max=2)              [0               ]

  All attribute values that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Set VPGroups

Sets virtual port groups (VPGs) on the module. Allows you to enable and disable VPGs, and to modify the VPG name.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`set vpgroups [vpgroup index]`

Example 1: The following example enables virtual port groups 2 and 3.

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> set vpgroups
The following wizard will query for attributes before persisting
and activating the updated mapping in the system configuration.
If you wish to terminate this wizard before reaching the end of the list
press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.
Configuring VpGroup: 1
```

```
-------------------------
Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Enabled ]
VpGroup Name (Max = 64 characters) [VPGROUP_1 ]
All attribute values for VpGroup 1 that have been changed will now be saved.
Configuring VpGroup: 2
-------------------------
Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ] 0
VpGroup Name (Max = 64 characters) [VPGROUP_2 ]
All attribute values for VpGroup 2 that have been changed will now be saved.
Configuring VpGroup: 3
-------------------------
Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ] 0
VpGroup Name (Max = 64 characters) [VPGROUP_3 ]
All attribute values for VpGroup 3 that have been changed will now be saved.
Configuring VpGroup: 4
-------------------------
Status (0=Enable, 1=Disable) [Disabled ]
All attribute values for VpGroup 4 that have been changed will now be saved.
```

Example 2: The `set vpgroups` command is not presently supported by the iSCSI module

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> set vpgroups
  Usage:  set    [ alias      | chap       | fc         | features   |
                   iscsi      | isns       | mgmt       | ntp        |
                   properties | snmp       | system ]
```

Show

Displays module operational information

Authority	None	

Syntax	`show`	`chap`
		`chassis`
		`features`
		`fc [port_num]`
		`initiators [fc or iscsi]`
		`initiator_lunmask`
		`memory`
		`iscsi [port_num]`
		`isns [port_num]`
		`logs [entries]`
		`luninfo`
		`luns`
		`lunmask`
		`mgmt`
		`ntp`
		`perf [ byte | init_rbyte`
		`| init_wbyte`
		`| tgt_rbyte`
		`| tgt_wbyte ]`
		`presented_targets [fc or iscsi]`
		`properties`
		`snmp`
		`stats`
		`targets [fc or iscsi]`
		`system`
		`vpgroups [vpgroup index]`

Keywords	`chap`	Displays configured CHAP iSCSI nodes. See the "show CHAP command" (page 242)
	`fc [port_num]`	Displays FC port information. See the "show FC command" (page 242)
	`features`	Displays licensed features. See the "show features command" (page 244)

	`initiators [fc or iscsi]`	Displays SCSI initiator information: iSCSI or FC. See the "show initiators command" (page 244)
	`initiators_lunmask`	Displays initiators and the LUNs to which they are mapped. See the "show initiators LUN mask command" (page 246)
	`iscsi [port_num]`	Displays iSCSI port information and configuration. See the "show iSCSI command" (page 247)
	`isns [port_num]`	Displays the module's iSCSI name server (iSNS) configuration. "show iSNS command" (page 249)
	`logs`	Displays the module's logging information. See the "show logs command" (page 249)
	`luninfo`	Displays complete LUN information for a specified target and LUN. See the "show LUNinfo command" (page 250)
	`luns`	Displays LUN information and their targets. See the "show LUNs command" (page 251)
	`system`	Sets system parameters such as symbolic name and log level. See the "show system command" (page 261)
	`lunmask`	Displays LUN mappings. See the "show lunmask command" (page 252)
	`memory`	Displays memory usage. See the "show memory command" (page 252)
	`mgmt`	Displays the module's management port (10/100) configuration. See the "show mgmt command" (page 253)
	`ntp`	Displays the module's network time protocol (NTP) configuration. See the "show NTP command" (page 253)
	`perf [ byte | init_rbyte | init_wbyte | tgt_rbyte | tgt_wbyte ]`	Displays module's performance. See the "show perf command" (page 254)
	`presented_targets [fc or iscsi]`	Displays targets presented by the module: FC, iSCSI, or both. See the "show presented targets command" (page 255)
	`properties`	Displays module properties. See the "show properties command" (page 258)
	`snmp`	Displays the module's simple network management protocol (SNMP) properties and trap configurations. See the "show SNMP command" (page 259)
	`stats`	Displays the module statistics, both FC and iSCSI. See the "show stats command" (page 259)
	`system`	Displays module product information including serial number, software version, hardware version, configuration, and temperature. See the "show system command" (page 261)
	`targets [fc or iscsi]`	Displays targets discovered by the module: FC, iSCSI, or both. See the "show targets command" (page 262)
	`vpgroups [vpgroup index]`	Displays virtual port groups. See the "show VPGroups command" (page 262)

Show CHAP

Displays CHAP configuration for iSCSI nodes.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show chap`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>(admin) #> show chap
The following is a list of iSCSI nodes that have been configured
with CHAP 'ENABLED':
Type iSCSI Node
-------- ------------
Init iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:server1
```

Show FC

Displays FC port information for the specified port. If you do not specify a port, this command displays all ports.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show fc`	[*port_num*]
Keywords	[*port_num*]	Identifies the FC or FCoE port to display.

Example 1:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show fc

  FC Port Information
  --------------------
  FC Port                          FC1
  Port Status                      Enabled
  Port Mode                        FCP
  Link Status                      Up
  Current Link Rate                4Gb
  Programmed Link Rate             Auto
  WWNN                             20:00:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_1)
  WWPN                             21:00:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_1)
  Port ID                          00-00-ef (VPGROUP_1)
  WWNN                             20:01:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_2)
  WWPN                             21:01:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_2)
  Port ID                          00-00-e8 (VPGROUP_2)
  WWNN                             20:02:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_3)
  WWPN                             21:02:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_3)
  Port ID                          00-00-e4 (VPGROUP_3)
  WWNN                             20:03:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_4)
  WWPN                             21:03:00:c0:dd:00:00:75 (VPGROUP_4)
  Port ID                          00-00-e2 (VPGROUP_4)
  Firmware Revision No.            5.01.03
  Frame Size                       2048
  Execution Throttle               256
  Connection Mode                  Loop

  FC Port                          FC2
  Port Status                      Enabled
  Port Mode                        FCP
  Link Status                      Up
  Current Link Rate                4Gb
  Programmed Link Rate             Auto
  WWNN                             20:00:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_1)
  WWPN                             21:00:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_1)
```

```
  Port ID                          00-00-ef (VPGROUP_1)
  WWNN                             20:01:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_2)
  WWPN                             21:01:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_2)
  Port ID                          00-00-e8 (VPGROUP_2)
  WWNN                             20:02:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_3)
  WWPN                             21:02:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_3)
  Port ID                          00-00-e4 (VPGROUP_3)
  WWNN                             20:03:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_4)
  WWPN                             21:03:00:c0:dd:00:00:76 (VPGROUP_4)
  Port ID                          00-00-e2 (VPGROUP_4)
  Firmware Revision No.            5.01.03
  Frame Size                       2048
  Execution Throttle               256
  Connection Mode                  Loop

  FC Port                          FCOE1
  Port Status                      Enabled
  Port Mode                        FCP
  Link Status                      Up
  Current Link Rate                10Gb
  Programmed Link Rate             Auto
  WWNN                             20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
  WWPN                             21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
  Port ID                          ef-0d-01
  Firmware Revision No.            5.02.03
  Frame Size                       2048
  Execution Throttle               256
  Connection Mode                  Point-to-Point
  SFP Type                         10Gb
  Enode MAC Address                f4-ce-46-fb-0a-43
  Fabric Provided MAC Address      0e-fc-00-ef-0d-01
  VlanId                           5
  Priority Level                   3
  Priority GroupId                 1
  Priority GroupPercentage         60

  FC Port                          FCOE2
  Port Status                      Enabled
  Port Mode                        FCP
  Link Status                      Up
  Current Link Rate                10Gb
  Programmed Link Rate             Auto
  WWNN                             20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
  WWPN                             21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
  Port ID                          ef-09-01
  Firmware Revision No.            5.02.03
  Frame Size                       2048
  Execution Throttle               256
  Connection Mode                  Point-to-Point
  SFP Type                         10Gb
  Enode MAC Address                f4-ce-46-fb-0a-44
  Fabric Provided MAC Address      0e-fc-00-ef-09-01
  VlanId                           5
  Priority Level                   3
  Priority GroupId                 1
  Priority GroupPercentage         60
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> show fc

  FC Port Information
  ---------------------
  FC Port                          1
  Port Status                      Enabled
  Link Status                      Up
```

```
Current Link Rate                 4Gb
Programmed Link Rate              Auto
WWNN                              20:00:00:c0:dd:00:01:50
WWPN                              21:00:00:c0:dd:00:01:50
Port ID                           00-00-ef
Firmware Revision No.             5.01.03
Frame Size                        2048
Execution Throttle                256
Connection Mode                   Loop

FC Port                           2
Port Status                       Enabled
Link Status                       Up
Current Link Rate                 4Gb
Programmed Link Rate              Auto
WWNN                              20:00:00:c0:dd:00:01:51
WWPN                              21:00:00:c0:dd:00:01:51
Port ID                           00-00-ef
Firmware Revision No.             5.01.03
Frame Size                        2048
Execution Throttle                256
Connection Mode                   Loop
```

Show features

Displays any features that have been licensed.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show features`

Example:

```
MEZ50 <1>#> show features
No Feature Keys exist in the system.
```

Show initiators

Displays SCSI initiator information for iSCSI, FC, or both.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show features`	`fc` `iscsi`
Keywords	`fc`	Specifies the display of FC initiators.
	`iscsi`	Specifies the display of iSCSI initiators.

Example 1:

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> show initiators

  Initiator Information
  ----------------------
  Initiator Name    iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf10.sanbox.com
  Alias
  IP Address        33.33.52.87, 33.33.52.11
  Status            Logged In
  OS Type           Windows

  Initiator Name    iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf2.sanbox.com
  Alias
  IP Address        33.33.52.20, 33.33.52.68
  Status            Logged In
```

```
  OS Type           Windows

  Initiator Name    iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com
  Alias
  IP Address        33.33.52.17, 33.33.52.16
  Status            Logged In
  OS Type           Windows

  Initiator Name    iqn.1995-12.com.attotech:xtendsan:sanlabmac-s09
  Alias
  IP Address        0.0.0.0
  Status            Logged Out
  OS Type           Mac OS X
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show initiators

  Initiator Information
  ----------------------
  WWNN              20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d
  WWPN              21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d
  Port ID           ef-0b-01
  Status            Logged In
  Type              FCOE
  OS Type           Windows2008

  WWNN              20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f
  WWPN              21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f
  Port ID           ef-0f-01
  Status            Logged In
  Type              FCOE
  OS Type           Windows2008

  WWNN              20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53
  WWPN              21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53
  Port ID           ef-12-01
  Status            Logged In
  Type              FCOE
  OS Type           Windows

  WWNN              20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54
  WWPN              21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54
  Port ID           ef-13-01
  Status            Logged In
  Type              FCOE
  OS Type           Windows

  WWNN              20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d
  WWPN              21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d
  Port ID           ef-16-01
  Status            Logged In
  Type              FCOE
  OS Type           Windows

  WWNN              20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e
  WWPN              21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e
  Port ID           ef-17-01
  Status            Logged In
  Type              FCOE
  OS Type           Windows

  WWNN              20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77
  WWPN              10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77
  Port ID           ef-1a-01
  Status            Logged In
```

```
Type              FCOE
OS Type           Windows2008

WWNN              20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73
WWPN              10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73
Port ID           ef-1e-01
Status            Logged In
Type              FCOE
OS Type           Windows2008

WWNN              20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b
WWPN              21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b
Port ID           ef-10-01
Status            Logged In
Type              FCOE
OS Type           Windows

WWNN              20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69
WWPN              10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69
Port ID           ef-0e-01
Status            Logged In
Type              FCOE
OS Type           Windows2008

WWNN              20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d
WWPN              10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d
Port ID           ef-0a-01
Status            Logged In
Type              FCOE
OS Type           Other

WWNN              20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c
WWPN              21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c
Port ID           ef-14-01
Status            Logged In
Type              FCOE
OS Type           Windows
```

Show initiators LUN mask

Displays all LUNs mapped to a user-selected Initiator.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show initiators_lunmask`

Example 1:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show initiators_lunmask

  Index   Type    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----   -----   ----------------------
  0       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d,21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0d
  1       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f,21:00:00:c0:dd:10:f7:0f
  2       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:53
  3       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:54
  4       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5d
  5       FCOE    20:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e,21:00:00:c0:dd:18:dc:5e
  6       FCOE    20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77,10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:77
  7       FCOE    20:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73,10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73
  8       FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b,21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4b
  9       FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69,10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:69
  10      FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d,10:00:f4:ce:46:fe:62:6d
  11      FCOE    20:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c,21:00:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:4c
```

```
  Please select an Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  0

  Target(WWPN)              (LUN/VpGroup)
  ------------              -------------
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68   0/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68   9/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68   10/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68   11/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68   12/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c   0/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c   9/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c   10/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c   11/VPGROUP_1
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c   12/VPGROUP_1
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> show initiators_lunmask

  Index    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----    ----------------------
  0        iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf2.sanbox.com
  1        iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf3.sanbox.com
  2        iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:perf10.sanbox.com

  Please select an Initiator from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

  Target (WWNN,WWPN)                                    LUN Number
  ------------------                                    ----------
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38  9
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38  10
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38  11
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38  13
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c  9
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c  10
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c  11
  50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30,50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c  13
```

Show iSCSI

Displays iSCSI information for the specified port. If you do not specify the port, this command displays all ports.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show iscsi`	[*port_num*]
Keywords	[*port_num*]	The number of the iSCSI port to be displayed.

Example:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> show iscsi

  iSCSI Port Information
  ----------------------
  iSCSI Port                  GE1
  Port Status                 Enabled
  Link Status                 Up
  iSCSI Name                  iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez50.1.0
  Firmware Revision           1.0.0.0
  Current Port Speed          1Gb/FDX
  Programmed Port Speed       Auto
  MTU Size                    Normal
  Window Size                 32768
  MAC Address                 00-23-7d-f4-15-a5
```

```
IPv4 Address                33.33.52.96
IPv4 Subnet Mask            255.255.0.0
IPv4 Gateway Address        0.0.0.0
IPv4 Target TCP Port No.    3260
IPv4 VLAN                   Disabled
IPv6 Address 1              ::
IPv6 Address 2              ::
IPv6 Link Local             fe80::223:7dff:fef4:15a5
IPv6 Default Router         ::
IPv6 Target TCP Port No.    3260
IPv6 VLAN                   Disabled
iSCSI Max First Burst       65536
iSCSI Max Burst             262144
iSCSI Header Digests        Disabled
iSCSI Data Digests          Disabled

iSCSI Port                  GE2
Port Status                 Enabled
Link Status                 Up
iSCSI Name                  iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez50.1.1
Firmware Revision           1.0.0.0
Current Port Speed          1Gb/FDX
Programmed Port Speed       Auto
MTU Size                    Normal
Window Size                 32768
MAC Address                 00-23-7d-f4-15-a6
IPv4 Address                33.33.52.97
IPv4 Subnet Mask            255.255.0.0
IPv4 Gateway Address        0.0.0.0
IPv4 Target TCP Port No.    3260
IPv4 VLAN                   Disabled
IPv6 Address 1              ::
IPv6 Address 2              ::
IPv6 Link Local             fe80::223:7dff:fef4:15a6
IPv6 Default Router         ::
IPv6 Target TCP Port No.    3260
IPv6 VLAN                   Disabled
iSCSI Max First Burst       65536
iSCSI Max Burst             262144
iSCSI Header Digests        Disabled
iSCSI Data Digests          Disabled

iSCSI Port                  GE3
Port Status                 Enabled
Link Status                 Up
iSCSI Name                  iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez50.1.2
Firmware Revision           1.0.0.0
Current Port Speed          1Gb/FDX
Programmed Port Speed       Auto
MTU Size                    Normal
Window Size                 32768
MAC Address                 00-23-7d-f4-15-a7
IPv4 Address                0.0.0.0
IPv4 Subnet Mask            0.0.0.0
IPv4 Gateway Address        0.0.0.0
IPv4 Target TCP Port No.    3260
IPv4 VLAN                   Disabled
IPv6 Address 1              ::
IPv6 Address 2              ::
IPv6 Link Local             fe80::223:7dff:fef4:15a7
IPv6 Default Router         ::
IPv6 Target TCP Port No.    3260
IPv6 VLAN                   Disabled
iSCSI Max First Burst       65536
iSCSI Max Burst             262144
```

```
  iSCSI Header Digests        Disabled
  iSCSI Data Digests          Disabled

  iSCSI Port                  GE4
  Port Status                 Enabled
  Link Status                 Up
  iSCSI Name                  iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez50.1.3
  Firmware Revision           1.0.0.0
  Current Port Speed          1Gb/FDX
  Programmed Port Speed       Auto
  MTU Size                    Normal
  Window Size                 32768
  MAC Address                 00-23-7d-f4-15-a8
  IPv4 Address                0.0.0.0
  IPv4 Subnet Mask            0.0.0.0
  IPv4 Gateway Address        0.0.0.0
  IPv4 Target TCP Port No.    3260
  IPv4 VLAN                   Disabled
  IPv6 Address 1              ::
  IPv6 Address 2              ::
  IPv6 Link Local             fe80::223:7dff:fef4:15a8
  IPv6 Default Router         ::
  IPv6 Target TCP Port No.    3260
  IPv6 VLAN                   Disabled
  iSCSI Max First Burst       65536
  iSCSI Max Burst             262144
  iSCSI Header Digests        Disabled
  iSCSI Data Digests          Disabled
```

Show iSNS

Displays Internet simple name service (iSNS) configuration information for the specified iSCSI port. If you do not specify the port, this command displays the iSNS configuration information for all iSCSI ports.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show isns`	[*port_num*]
Keywords	[*port_num*]	The iSCSI port number whose iSNS configuration is to be displayed.

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show isns

  iSNS Information
  ----------------
  iSNS            Enabled
  IP Address      10.3.6.33
  TCP Port No.    3205
```

Show logs

Displays either all or a portion of the module's event log.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show logs`	[*last_x_entries*]
Keywords	[*last_x_entries*]	Shows only the last x number of module's log entries. For example, `show logs 10` displays the last ten entries in the module event log. The `show logs` command (not specifying number of entries) displays the entire module event log.

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show logs

  03/11/2011 22:18:42 UserApp    3 User has cleared the logs

  03/11/2011 22:29:23 UserApp    3 qapisetpresentedtargetchapinfo_1_svc: Chap Configuration Changed

  03/11/2011 22:31:22 UserApp    3 #1: qapisetfcinterfaceparams_1_svc: FC port configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:31:25 UserApp    3 #2: qapisetfcinterfaceparams_1_svc: FC port configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:31:26 UserApp    3 #3: qapisetfcinterfaceparams_1_svc: FC port configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:31:28 UserApp    3 #4: qapisetfcinterfaceparams_1_svc: FC port configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:35:28 UserApp    3 #3206: qapisetisns_1_svc:iSNS configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:35:36 BridgeApp  1 QLIS_HandleTeb: iSNS Connection Failed

  03/11/2011 22:35:44 BridgeApp  1 QLIS_HandleTeb: iSNS Connection Failed

  03/11/2011 22:35:55 UserApp    3 qapisetmgmintfcparams_1_svc:Management port configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:38:47 UserApp    3 qapisetntpparams_1_svc: NTP configuration changed

  03/11/2011 22:39:22 UserApp    3 qapisetcliparams_1_svc: cli settings changed

  03/11/2011 22:41:25 UserApp    3 qapisetsnmpparams_1_svc: snmp settings changed

  03/11/2011 22:43:34 UserApp    3 qapisetsnmpparams_1_svc: snmp settings changed

  03/11/2011 22:43:42 UserApp    3 qapisetsnmpparams_1_svc: snmp settings changed

  03/11/2011 22:44:18 UserApp    3 qapisetbridgebasicinfo_1_svc:Bridge configuration changed
```

Show LUNinfo

Displays complete information for a specified LUN and target.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show luninfo`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show luninfo

  Index    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----    ----------------------
  0        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  1        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c

  Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

  Index   (LUN/VpGroup)
  -----   -------------
  0       0/VPGROUP_1
  1       1/VPGROUP_1
  2       2/VPGROUP_1
  3       3/VPGROUP_1
  4       4/VPGROUP_1
  5       5/VPGROUP_1
  6       6/VPGROUP_1
  7       7/VPGROUP_1
  8       8/VPGROUP_1
  9       9/VPGROUP_1
  10      10/VPGROUP_1
  11      11/VPGROUP_1
  12      12/VPGROUP_1
  13      0/VPGROUP_2
  14      0/VPGROUP_3
  15      0/VPGROUP_4
```

```
Please select a LUN from the list above ('q' to quit):  10

LUN Information
-----------------
WWULN              60:05:08:b4:00:0f:1d:4f:00:01:50:00:00:cf:00:00
LUN Number         10
VendorId           HP
ProductId          HSV340
ProdRevLevel       0005
Portal             0
Lun Size           22528 MB
Lun State          Online

LUN Path Information
--------------------

Controller Id  WWPN,PortId / IQN,IP                 Path Status
-------------  ---------------------------------    -----------
      1        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68, 00-00-aa    Current Optimized
      2        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c, 00-00-b1    Active
```

Show LUNs

Displays LUN information for each target.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show luns`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show luns

  Target(WWPN)               VpGroup         LUN
  ------------               -------         ---
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68    VPGROUP_1       0
                             VPGROUP_1       1
                             VPGROUP_1       2
                             VPGROUP_1       3
                             VPGROUP_1       4
                             VPGROUP_1       5
                             VPGROUP_1       6
                             VPGROUP_1       7
                             VPGROUP_1       8
                             VPGROUP_1       9
                             VPGROUP_1       10
                             VPGROUP_1       11
                             VPGROUP_1       12
                             VPGROUP_2       0
                             VPGROUP_3       0
                             VPGROUP_4       0
  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c    VPGROUP_1       0
                             VPGROUP_1       1
                             VPGROUP_1       2
                             VPGROUP_1       3
                             VPGROUP_1       4
                             VPGROUP_1       5
                             VPGROUP_1       6
                             VPGROUP_1       7
                             VPGROUP_1       8
                             VPGROUP_1       9
                             VPGROUP_1       10
                             VPGROUP_1       11
                             VPGROUP_1       12
                             VPGROUP_2       0
```

```
VPGROUP_3        0
VPGROUP_4        0
```

Show lunmask

Displays all initiators mapped to a user-specified LUN.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show lunmask`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show lunmask

  Index    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----    ----------------------
  0        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  1        50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c

  Please select a Target from the list above ('q' to quit):  1

  Index   (LUN/VpGroup)
  -----   -------------
  0       0/VPGROUP_1
  1       1/VPGROUP_1
  2       2/VPGROUP_1
  3       3/VPGROUP_1
  4       4/VPGROUP_1
  5       5/VPGROUP_1
  6       6/VPGROUP_1
  7       7/VPGROUP_1
  8       8/VPGROUP_1
  9       9/VPGROUP_1
  10      10/VPGROUP_1
  11      11/VPGROUP_1
  12      12/VPGROUP_1
  13      0/VPGROUP_2
  14      0/VPGROUP_3
  15      0/VPGROUP_4

  Please select a LUN from the list above ('q' to quit):  7

  Target  50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
  LUN     Initiator
  ---     -----------------
  7       10:00:00:00:c9:95:b5:73
```

Show memory

Displays free and total physical system memory and GE port connections. Does not display information about free space in `/var/ftp/`.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show memory`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show memory

  Memory Units          Free/Total
  --------------        ----------
  Physical              85MB/916MB
```

```
  Buffer Pool           9812/9856
  Nic Buffer Pool       53427/81920
  Process Blocks        8181/8192
  Request Blocks        8181/8192
  Event Blocks          4096/4096
  Control Blocks        1024/1024
  1K Buffer Pool        4096/4096
  4K Buffer Pool        512/512
  Sessions              4096/4096

  Connections:
  10GE1                 2048/2048
  10GE2                 2048/2048
```

Show mgmt

Displays the module's management port (10/100) configuration.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show mgmt`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show mgmt

  Management Port Information
  ---------------------------
  IPv4 Interface            Enabled
  IPv4 Mode                 Static
  IPv4 IP Address           10.6.6.130
  IPv4 Subnet Mask          255.255.240.0
  IPv4 Gateway              10.6.4.201
  IPv6 Interface            Disabled
  Link Status               Up
  MAC Address               f4-ce-46-fb-0a-40
```

Show NTP

Displays the module's network time protocol (NTP) configuration.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show ntp`

Example:

```
MEZ50_02 (admin) #> show ntp

  NTP Information
  ----------------
  Mode                      Disabled
  Status                    Offline
  TimeZone Offset           00:00

MEZ50_02 (admin) #>
```

Show perf

Displays the port, read, write, initiator, or target performance in bytes per second.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show perf`	[`byte	init_rbyte	init_wbyte	tgt_rbyte	tgt_wbyte`]
Keywords	`byte`	Displays performance data (bytes per second) for all ports.
	`init_rbyte`	Displays initiator mode read performance.
	`init_wbyte`	Displays initiator mode write performance.
	`tgt_rbyte`	Displays target mode read performance.
	`tgt_wbyte`	Displays target mode write performance.

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> show perf

  WARNING: Valid data is only displayed for port(s) that are not
           associated with any configured FCIP routes.

  Port    Bytes/s   Bytes/s   Bytes/s   Bytes/s   Bytes/s
  Number  (init_r)  (init_w)  (tgt_r)   (tgt_w)   (total)
  ------  --------  --------  --------  --------  --------
  GE1     0         0         6M        6M        12M
  GE2     0         0         5M        5M        11M
  GE3     0         0         0         0         0
  GE4     0         0         0         0         0
  FC1     6M        6M        0         0         12M
  FC2     5M        5M        0         0         11M
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> show perf byte

  WARNING: Valid data is only displayed for port(s) that are not
           associated with any configured FCIP routes.

  Displaying bytes/sec (total)...  (Press any key to stop display)

  GE1     GE2     GE3     GE4     FC1     FC2
  ------------------------------------------------
  11M     10M     0       0       11M     10M
  12M     11M     0       0       12M     11M
  12M     12M     0       0       12M     12M
  12M     12M     0       0       12M     12M
  11M     11M     0       0       11M     11M
  12M     12M     0       0       12M     12M
  12M     11M     0       0       12M     11M
  12M     11M     0       0       12M     11M
  11M     10M     0       0       11M     10M
  12M     12M     0       0       12M     12M
```

Show presented targets

Displays targets presented by the module's FC, FCoE, or iSCSI or for all.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show presented targets`	`fc` `iscsi`
Keywords	`fc`	Specifies the display of FC presented targets.
	`iscsi`	Specifies the display of iSCSI presented targets.

Example 1:

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> show presented_targets

  Presented Target Information
  ----------------------------

  iSCSI Presented Targets
  -----------------------
  Name     iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da538
  Alias
  <MAPS TO>
  WWNN     50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30
  WWPN     50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:38

  Name     iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez50.1.01.50014380025da53c
  Alias    eva4k50
  <MAPS TO>
  WWNN     50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:30
  WWPN     50:01:43:80:02:5d:a5:3c
```

Example 2:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show presented_targets

  Presented Target Information
  ----------------------------

  FC/FCOE Presented Targets
  -------------------------
  WWNN      20:04:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
  WWPN      21:04:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
  Port ID   ef-0d-02
  Port      FC3
  Type      FCOE
  <MAPS TO>
  WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
  WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  VPGroup   1

  WWNN      20:04:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
  WWPN      21:04:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
  Port ID   ef-09-02
  Port      FC4
  Type      FCOE
  <MAPS TO>
  WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
  WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  VPGroup   1

  WWNN      20:05:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
  WWPN      21:05:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
  Port ID   ef-0d-03
```

```
Port      FC3
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup   1

WWNN      20:05:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
WWPN      21:05:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
Port ID   ef-09-03
Port      FC4
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup   1

WWNN      20:06:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
WWPN      21:06:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
Port ID   ef-0d-04
Port      FC3
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
VPGroup   2

WWNN      20:06:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
WWPN      21:06:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
Port ID   ef-09-04
Port      FC4
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
VPGroup   2

WWNN      20:09:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
WWPN      21:09:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
Port ID   ef-0d-05
Port      FC3
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
VPGroup   3

WWNN      20:09:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
WWPN      21:09:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
Port ID   ef-09-05
Port      FC4
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
VPGroup   3

WWNN      20:0b:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
WWPN      21:0b:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
Port ID   ef-0d-06
Port      FC3
Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
```

```
 VPGroup   4

 WWNN      20:0b:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 WWPN      21:0b:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 Port ID   ef-09-06
 Port      FC4
 Type      FCOE
<MAPS TO>
 WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
 WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
 VPGroup   4

 WWNN      20:07:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
 WWPN      21:07:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
 Port ID   ef-0d-07
 Port      FC3
 Type      FCOE
 <MAPS TO>
 WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
 WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
 VPGroup   2

 WWNN      20:07:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 WWPN      21:07:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 Port ID   ef-09-07
 Port      FC4
 Type      FCOE
 <MAPS TO>
 WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
 WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
 VPGroup   2

 WWNN      20:0a:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
 WWPN      21:0a:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
 Port ID   ef-0d-08
 Port      FC3
 Type      FCOE
 <MAPS TO>
 WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
 WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
 VPGroup   3

 WWNN      20:0a:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 WWPN      21:0a:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 Port ID   ef-09-08
 Port      FC4
 Type      FCOE
 <MAPS TO>
 WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
 WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
 VPGroup   3

 WWNN      20:0c:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
 WWPN      21:0c:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:43
 Port ID   ef-0d-09
 Port      FC3
 Type      FCOE
 <MAPS TO>
 WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
 WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
 VPGroup   4

 WWNN      20:0c:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 WWPN      21:0c:f4:ce:46:fb:0a:44
 Port ID   ef-09-09
```

```
Port       FC4
Type       FCOE
<MAPS TO>
WWNN       50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN       50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup    4


iSCSI Presented Targets
-----------------------
Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.01.5001438004c68968
Alias
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
VPGroup   1

Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.01.5001438004c6896c
Alias     foo2
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup   1

Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.02.5001438004c6896c
Alias
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup   2

Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.03.5001438004c6896c
Alias
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup   3

Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.04.5001438004c6896c
Alias
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
VPGroup   4

Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.02.5001438004c68968
Alias
<MAPS TO>
WWNN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
WWPN      50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
VPGroup   2

Name      iqn.2004-09.com.hp:fcgw.mez75.1.
```

Show properties

Displays the module's CLI properties.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show properties`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show properties

  CLI Properties
  ----------------
  Inactivty Timer   Disabled
  Prompt String     MEZ75
```

Show SNMP

Displays the module's simple network management protocol (SNMP) and any configured traps.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show snmp`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show snmp

  SNMP Configuration
  ------------------
  Read Community                public
  Trap Community                private
  System Location
  System Contact
  Authentication traps          Disabled
  System OID                    1.3.6.1.4.1.3873.1.20
  System Description            HP StorageWorks MEZ75
```

Show stats

Displays the module statistics: FC and iSCSI.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show stats`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show stats

  FC Port Statistics
  --------------------
  FC Port                           FC1
  Interrupt Count                   101689711
  Target Command Count              0
  Initiator Command Count           125680315
  Link Failure Count                0
  Loss of Sync Count                0
  Loss of Signal Count              0
  Primitive Sequence Error Count    0
  Invalid Transmission Word Count   35
  Invalid CRC Error Count           0

  FC Port                           FC2
  Interrupt Count                   122918453
  Target Command Count              0
  Initiator Command Count           124846653
  Link Failure Count                0
  Loss of Sync Count                0
  Loss of Signal Count              0
  Primitive Sequence Error Count    0
  Invalid Transmission Word Count   9
  Invalid CRC Error Count           0
```

```
FC Port                           FC3
Interrupt Count                   292953354
Target Command Count              129313203
Initiator Command Count           0
Link Failure Count                0
Loss of Sync Count                0
Loss of Signal Count              0
Primitive Sequence Error Count    0
Invalid Transmission Word Count   0
Invalid CRC Error Count           0

FC Port                           FC4
Interrupt Count                   268764874
Target Command Count              121869815
Initiator Command Count           0
Link Failure Count                0
Loss of Sync Count                0
Loss of Signal Count              0
Primitive Sequence Error Count    0
Invalid Transmission Word Count   0
Invalid CRC Error Count           0

iSCSI Port Statistics
-----------------------
iSCSI Port                        10GE1
Interrupt Count                   0
Target Command Count              0
Initiator Command Count           0
MAC Xmit Frames                   10
MAC Xmit Byte Count               780
MAC Xmit Multicast Frames         0
MAC Xmit Broadcast Frames         0
MAC Xmit Pause Frames             0
MAC Xmit Control Frames           0
MAC Xmit Deferrals                0
MAC Xmit Late Collisions          0
MAC Xmit Aborted                  0
MAC Xmit Single Collisions        0
MAC Xmit Multiple Collisions      0
MAC Xmit Collisions               0
MAC Xmit Dropped Frames           0
MAC Xmit Jumbo Frames             0
MAC Rcvd Frames                   686069
MAC Rcvd Byte Count               74913437
MAC Rcvd Unknown Control Frames   0
MAC Rcvd Pause Frames             0
MAC Rcvd Control Frames           0
MAC Rcvd Dribbles                 0
MAC Rcvd Frame Length Errors      0
MAC Rcvd Jabbers                  0
MAC Rcvd Carrier Sense Errors     0
MAC Rcvd Dropped Frames           0
MAC Rcvd CRC Errors               0
MAC Rcvd Encoding Errors          0
MAC Rcvd Length Errors Large      0
MAC Rcvd Length Errors Small      0
MAC Rcvd Multicast Frames         0
MAC Rcvd Broadcast Frames         0

PDUs Xmited                       0
Data Bytes Xmited                 780
PDUs Rcvd                         0
Data Bytes Rcvd                   74913437
I/O Completed                     0
```

```
Unexpected I/O Rcvd              0
iSCSI Format Errors              0
Header Digest Errors             0
Data Digest Errors               0
Sequence Errors                  0
IP Xmit Packets                  0
IP Xmit Byte Count               0
IP Xmit Fragments                0
IP Rcvd Packets                  0
IP Rcvd Byte Count               0
IP Rcvd Fragments                0
IP Datagram Reassembly Count     0
IP Error Packets                 0
IP Fragment Rcvd Overlap         0
IP Fragment Rcvd Out of Order    0
IP Datagram Reassembly Timeouts  0
TCP Xmit Segment Count           10
TCP Xmit Byte Count              0
TCP Rcvd Segment Count           686069
TCP Rcvd Byte Count              74913437
TCP Persist Timer Expirations    0
TCP Rxmit Timer Expired          0
TCP Rcvd Duplicate Acks          0
TCP Rcvd Pure Acks               0
TCP Xmit Delayed Acks            0
TCP Xmit Pure Acks               0
TCP Rcvd Segment Errors          0
TCP Rcvd Segment Out of Order    0
TCP Rcvd Window Probes           0
TCP Rcvd Window Updates          0
TCP ECC Error Corections         0

iSCSI Port Statistics
----------------------
iSCSI Port                       10GE2
Interrupt Count                  0
Target Command Count             0
Initiator Command Count          0
MAC Xmit Frames                  5
MAC Xmit Byte Count              390
MAC Xmit Multicast Frames        0
MAC Xmit Broadcast Frames        0
MAC Xmit Pause Frames            0
MAC Xmit Control Frames          0
MAC Xmit Deferrals               0
MAC Xmit Late Collisions         0
MAC Xmit Aborted                 0
MAC Xmit Single Collisions       0
MAC Xmit Multiple Collisions     0
MAC Xmit Collisions              0
MAC Xmit Dropped Fram
```

Show system

Displays module product information, including the serial number, hardware and software versions, port quantities, and temperature.

Authority	None
Syntax	`show system`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show system
```

```
  System Information
  --------------------
  Product Name                    HP StorageWorks MEZ75
  Symbolic Name                   MEZ75-1
  Controller Slot                 Left
  Target Presentation Mode        Auto
  Controller Lun AutoMap          Enabled
  Target Access Control           Disabled
  Serial Number                   PBGXEA1GLYG016
  HW Version                      01
  SW Version                      3.2.2.6
  Boot Loader Version             10.1.1.3
  No. of FC Ports                 4
  No. of iSCSI Ports              2
  Log Level                       0
  Telnet                          Enabled
  SSH                             Enabled
  FTP                             Enabled
  Temp (C)                        41
  Uptime                          19Days2Hrs19Mins32Secs
```

Show targets

Displays targets discovered by the module's FC, FCoE, or iSCSI ports or by all ports.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show targets`	`fc` `iscsi`
Keywords	`fc`	Specifies the display of FC targets.
	`iscsi`	Specifies the display of iSCSI targets.

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show targets

  Target Information
  --------------------
  WWNN              50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
  WWPN              50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  Port ID           00-00-aa
  State             Online

  WWNN              50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60
  WWPN              50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c
  Port ID           00-00-b1
  State             Online
```

Show VPGroups

Displays information about the modules's configured virtual port groups.

Authority	None	
Syntax	`show vpgroups`	`[vp index]`
Keywords	`vp index`	The number (1–4) of the virtual port group to be displayed.

Example 1:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> show vpgroups
```

```
  VpGroup Information
  ---------------------
  Index                     1
  VpGroup Name              VPGROUP_1
  Status                    Enabled
  WWPNs                     21:00:00:c0:dd:00:00:75
                            21:00:00:c0:dd:00:00:76

  Index                     2
  VpGroup Name              VPGROUP_2
  Status                    Enabled
  WWPNs                     21:01:00:c0:dd:00:00:75
                            21:01:00:c0:dd:00:00:76

  Index                     3
  VpGroup Name              VPGROUP_3
  Status                    Enabled
  WWPNs                     21:02:00:c0:dd:00:00:75
                            21:02:00:c0:dd:00:00:76

  Index                     4
  VpGroup Name              VPGROUP_4
  Status                    Enabled
  WWPNs                     21:03:00:c0:dd:00:00:75
                            21:03:00:c0:dd:00:00:76
```

Example 2: The iSCSI module does not presently support VPgroups.

```
MEZ50 (admin) #> show vpgroups
  Usage:  show    [ chap                | fc                |
                    features            | initiators        |
                    initiators_lunmask  | iscsi             |
                    isns                | logs              |
                    luns                | luninfo           |
                    lunmask             | memory            |
                    mgmt                | ntp               |
                    perf                | presented_targets |
                    properties          | snmp              |
                    stats               | system            |
                    targets ]
```

Shutdown

Shuts down the module.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`shutdown`

Example: This operation disables the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module, a controller power cycle is required to reactivate the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module.

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> shutdown

  Are you sure you want to shutdown the System (y/n):
```

Target

Removes an offline target from the module's database. Typically, you will use this command to remove targets from the database that are no longer connected to the module or to add a target that was offline. However, these commands are not needed by the iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules

because the targets are auto detected and the show targets displayed information can be a helpful debug aid.

Authority	Admin session	
Syntax	`target`	`add` `rm`
Keywords	`rm`	Removes a target from the module's target database.

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> target rm

  Warning: This command will cause the removal of all mappings and maskings
           associated with the target that is selected.

  Index  State    (WWNN,WWPN/iSCSI Name)
  -----  -----    ----------------------
  0      Online   50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:68
  1      Online   50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:60,50:01:43:80:04:c6:89:6c

  Please select an 'OFFLINE' Target from the list above ('q' to quit):
```

Traceroute

Prints the route a network packet takes to reach the destination specified by the user.

Authority	Admin session
Syntax	`traceroute`

Example:

```
MEZ75 (admin) #> traceroute

  A list of attributes with formatting and current values will follow.
  Enter a new value or simply press the ENTER key to accept the current value.
  If you wish to terminate this process before reaching the end of the list
  press 'q' or 'Q' and the ENTER key to do so.

  IP Address (IPv4 or IPv6)                  [0.0.0.0] 10.6.6.131
  Outbound Port (0=Mgmt, 1=GE1, 2=GE2, ...) [Mgmt   ] 0

  Tracing route to 10.6.6.131 over a maximum of 30 hops:

   1  10.6.6.131          0.1ms       0.1ms       0.1ms

  Traceroute completed in 1 hops.
```

D Using the iSCSI CLI

The CLI enables you to perform a variety of iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module management tasks through an Ethernet or serial port connection. However, HP P6000 Command View should be the primary management tool for the iSCSI and ISCSI/FCoE modules. The CLI is a supplemental interface.

Logging on to an iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module

You can either use Telnet or Secure SHell (SSH) to log on to a module, or you can log on to the switch through the serial port. To log on to the module using Telnet:

1. On the workstation, open a command line window.
2. Enter the telnet command followed by the IP address:

   = telnet <ip address>

   NOTE: This is the management port IP address of either iSCSI controller 01 or 02, and may be a static IP, a DHCP provided IP, or a default static IP.

   A Telnet window opens and prompts you to log in.
3. Enter an account name and password.

To log on to a module using SSH:

NOTE: SSH works in a way similar to Telnet, except it uses ROSA to encode transmissions to and from your workstation and the HP iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module.

1. On the workstation, open a command line window.
2. Enter the `ssh` command followed by the module mgmt port IP address:

   # ssh <ip address>

   An SSH window opens and prompts you to log in.
3. Enter an account name and password.

To log on to a switch through the serial port:

1. Configure the workstation port with the following settings, using an RJ45 to DB9 dongle (HP spares part number 663678–001) and a standard RJ45 Ethernet cable:
   - 115200 baud
   - 8-bit character
   - 1 stop bit
   - No parity, and flow control—none
2. When prompted, enter an account name and password (typically, **guest** and **password**).

Understanding the guest account

iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules come from the factory with the guest account already defined. This guest account provides access to the module and its configuration. After planning your management needs, consider changing the password for this account. For information about changing passwords, see the "passwd command" (page 228). The guest account is automatically closed after 15 minutes of inactivity. For example:

```
login as: guest
guest@172.17.136.86's password: *********

**************************************************
*             *
*   HP StorageWorks MEZ50        *
*             *
**************************************************
MEZ50 (admin) #> show system
```

```
  System Information
  --------------------
  Product Name                    HP StorageWorks MEZ50
  Symbolic Name                   MEZ50-1
  System Mode                     iSCSI Server Connectivity
  Controller Slot                 Left
  Controller Lun AutoMap          Enabled
  Target Access Control           Disabled
  Serial Number                   1808ZJ03297
  HW Version                      01
  SW Version                      3.0.3.9
  Boot Loader Version             1.1.1.9
  No. of FC Ports                 2
  No. of iSCSI Ports              4
  Telnet                          Enabled
  SSH                             Enabled
  Temp (C)                        36
MEZ50 (admin) #>
```

Working with iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module configurations

Successfully managing iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE modules with the CLI depends on effective module configurations. Key module management tasks include modifying configurations, backing up configurations, and restoring configurations.

Status viewing through the use of the show commands can be quite helpful in collecting information needed to resolve problems.

- `show fc`
- `show iscsi`
- `show perf`
- `show stats`
- `show luns`
- `show luninfo`
- `show initiators`
- `show initiators_lunmask`
- `show targets`
- `show presented_targets`
- `show system`
- `show logs nn`

NOTE: Mapping and unmapping LUNs through the CLI is likely to result in inconsistencies with HP P6000 Command View and is not recommended by HP. There may be cases where a CLI reset mappings is a more effective method of addressing these inconsistencies than using the CLI `lunmask add` or `lunmask rm` commands.

Modifying a configuration

The module has the following major areas of configuration:

- **Management port configuration** requires the use of the following commands:
  - The "set mgmt command" (page 236)
  - The "show mgmt command" (page 253)
- **iSCSI port configuration** requires using the following commands:
  - The "set iSCSI command" (page 235)
  - The "show iSCSI command" (page 247)
- **Virtual port groups configuration** requires the following commands:
  - The "set VPGroups command" (page 239)
  - The "show VPGroups command" (page 262)
- **LUN mapping** requires the use of the "show lunmask command" (page 252).

Saving and restoring iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE controller configurations

Saving and restoring a configuration helps protect your work. You can also use a saved configuration as a template for configuring other modules.

Persistent data consists of system settings, virtual port group settings, LUN mappings, discovered FC targets, and discovered iSCSI initiators. To save a module's configuration and persistent data:

1. Generate a file (`HP_StorageWorks_MEZ50_FRU.bin`) containing the saved data (see page 2-12) , by entering the `fru save` CLI command.

   This command stores the file locally on the module in an FTP directory.
2. Transfer the saved data from the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module to a workstation by executing an FTP utility on a workstation.

The following example shows an FTP transfer to get the saved module configuration data:

```
c:\> ftp 172.17.137.102
Connected to 172.17.137.102.
220 (none) FTP server (GNU inetutils 1.4.2) ready.
User (172.17.137.102:(none)): ftp
331 Guest login ok, type your name as password.
Password: ftp
230 Guest login ok, access restrictions apply.
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I.
ftp> get HP_StorageWorks_MEZ50_FRU.bin
200 PORT command successful.
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for 'HP_StorageWorks_MEZ50_FRU.bin'
(6168 bytes).
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 6168 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 6168000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit
221 Goodbye.
```

Restoring iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module configuration and persistent data

1. Transfer the saved data from a workstation to the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module by executing an FTP utility on the workstation.

   The following example shows an FTP transfer to put previously saved module configuration data on the module:

   ```
   c:\> ftp 172.17.137.102
   Connected to 172.17.137.102.
   ```

```
220 (none) FTP server (GNU inetutils 1.4.2) ready.
User (172.17.137.102:(none)): ftp
331 Guest login ok, type your name as password.
Password: ftp
230 Guest login ok, access restrictions apply.
ftp> bin
```

NOTE: Use of the CLI `fru save` does not capture all required P6000 information and a `fru restore` is likely to result in HP P6000 Command View inconsistencies which prevent normal operations. Use HP P6000 Command View for all normal save and restore operations.

```
200 Type set to I.
ftp> put HP StorageWorks MEZ50_FRU.bin
200 PORT command successful.
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for 'HP StorageWorks MEZ50_FRU.bin'.
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 6168 bytes sent in 0.00Seconds 6168000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit
221 Goodbye.
```

2. Update an iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module with the saved configuration data (see page 2-12) by executing the `fru restore` CLI command. The `fru restore` command has the following two options:
   - **Full restore** restores all module configuration parameters, including IP addresses, subnet masks, gateways, virtual port group settings, LUN mappings, and all other persistent data.
   - **Partial restore** restores only the LUN mappings and persistent data, such as discovered FC targets and iSCSI initiators.

E Simple Network Management Protocol

Simple network management protocol (SNMP) provides monitoring and trap functions for managing the module through third-party applications that support SNMP. The module firmware supports SNMP versions 1 and 2 and a QLogic management information base (MIB) (see "Management Information Base " (page 270)). You may format traps using SNMP version 1 or 2.

SNMP parameters

You can set the SNMP parameters using the CLI. (For command details, see the "set SNMP command" (page 238))

Table 33 (page 269) describes the SNMP parameters.

Table 33 SNMP parameters

Parameter	Description
`Read community`	A password that authorizes an SNMP management server to read information from the module. This is a write-only field. The value on the module and the SNMP management server must be the same. The read community password can be up to 32 characters, excluding the number sign (#), semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is password is private.
`Trap community`	A password that authorizes an SNMP management server to receive traps. This is a write-only field. The value on the module and the SNMP management server must be the same. The trap community password can be up to 32 characters, excluding the number sign (#), semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default password is private.
`System location`	Specifies the name of the module location. The name can be up to 64 characters, excluding the number sign (#), semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is undefined.
`System contact`	Specifies the name of the person to be contacted to respond to trap events. The name can be up to 64 characters, excluding the number sign (#), semicolon (;), and comma (,). The default is undefined.
`Authentication traps`	Enables or disables the generation of authentication traps in response to authentication failures. The default is disabled.

SNMP trap configuration parameters

SNMP trap configuration lets you set up to eight trap destinations. Choose from Traps 1–Trap 8 to configure each trap. Table 34 (page 269) describes the parameters for configuring an SNMP trap.

Table 34 SNMP trap configuration parameters

Parameter	Description
`Trap n enabled`	Enables or disables trap n. If disabled, the trap is not configured.
`Trap address*`	Specifies the IP address to which the SNMP traps are sent. A maximum of eight trap addresses are supported. The default address for traps is 0.0.0.0.
`Trap port*`	Port number on which the trap is sent. The default is 162. If the trap destination is not enabled, then this value is 0 (zero). Most SNMP managers and management software listen on this port for SNMP traps.
`Trap version`	Specifies the SNMP version (1 or 2) with which to format traps.
* Trap address (other than 0.0.0.0.) and trap port combinations must be unique. For example, if trap 1 and trap 2 have the same address, then they must have different port values. Similarly, if trap 1 and trap 2 have the same port value, they must have different addresses.	

Management Information Base

This section describes the QLogic management information base (MIB).

Network port table

The network port table contains a list of network ports that are operational on the module. The entries in this table include the management port (labeled MGMT), and the Gigabit Ethernet ports (labeled GE1 and GE2).

qsrNwPortTable	
Syntax	`SEQUENCE OF QsrNwPortEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Entries in this table include the management port, and the iSCSI ports on the module.

qsrNwPortEntry	
Syntax	`QsrNwPortEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Each entry (row) contains information about a specific network port.

A network port entry consists of the following sequence of objects:

`qsrNwPortRole`	`QsrPortRole`
`qsrNwPortIndex`	`unsigned32`
`qsrNwPortAddressMode`	`INTEGER`
`qsrIPAddressType`	`InetAddressType`
`qsrIPAddress`	`InetAddress`
`qsrNetMask`	`InetAddress`
`qsrGateway`	`InetAddress`
`qsrMacAddress`	`MacAddress`
`qsrNwLinkStatus`	`QsrLinkStatus`
`qsrNwLinkRate`	`QsrLinkRate`

qsrNwPortRole	
Syntax	`QsrPortRole`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Operational role of this port: management port or iSCSI port.

qsrNwPortIndex	
Syntax	`Unsigned32`
Access	Not accessible
Description	A positive integer indexing each network port in a given role.

qsrNwPortAddressMode	

Syntax	`INTEGER`
	`1 = Static`
	`2 = DHCP`
	`3 = Bootp`
	`4 = RARP`

Access	Read-only
Description	Method by which the port gets its IP address.

qsrIPAddressType	
Syntax	`InetAddressType`
Access	Read-only
Description	IP address type: ipv4 or ipv6.

qsrIPAddress	
Syntax	`InetAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	IP address of the port.

qsrNetMask	
Syntax	`InetAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	Subnet mask for this port.

qsrGateway	
Syntax	`InetAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	Gateway for this port.

qsrMacAddress	
Syntax	`IMacAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	MAC address for this port.

qstNwLinkStatus	
Syntax	`QsrLinkStatus`
Access	Read-only
Description	Operational link status for this port.

qsrNwLinkRate	
Syntax	QsrLinkRate
Access	Read-only
Description	Operational link rate for this port.

FC port table

This table contains a list of the Fibre Channel (FC) ports on the module. There are as many entries in this table as there are FC ports on the module.

qsrFcPortTable	
Syntax	SEQUENCE OF QsrFcPortEntry
Access	Not accessible
Description	A list of the FC ports on the module. The table contains as many entries as there are FC ports on the module.

qsrFcPortEntry	
Syntax	QsrFcPortEntry
Access	Not accessible
Description	Each entry (row) contains information about a specific FC port.

An FC port entry consists of the following sequence of objects:

qsrFcPortRole	QsrPortRole
qsrFcPortIndex	unsigned32
qsrFcPortNodeWwn	PhysAddress
qsrFcPortWwn	PhysAddress
qsrFcPortId	PhysAddress
qsrFcPortType	Unsigned32
qsrFcLinkStatus	QsrLinkStatus
qsrFcLinkRate	QsrLinkRate

qsrFcPortRole	
Syntax	QsrPortRole
Access	Not accessible
Description	Operational role of this port: FCP mode or frame shuttle mode.

qsrFcPortIndex	
Syntax	Unsigned32
Access	Not accessible
Description	A positive integer indexing each FC port in a given role.

qsrFcPortNodeWwn	
Syntax	`PhysAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	World wide name of the node that contains this port.

qsrFcPortWwn	
Syntax	`PhysAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	World wide name for this port.

qsrFcPortId	
Syntax	`PhysAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	Interface's 24-bit FC address identifier.

qsrFcPortType	
Syntax	`Unsigned32`
Access	Read-only
Description	Type of FC port, as indicated by the use of the appropriate value assigned by IANA. The IANA-maintained registry for FC port types is located here: www.iana.org/assignments/fc-port-types

qsrFcLinkStatus	
Syntax	`QsrLinkStatus`
Access	Read-only
Description	Current link status for this port.

qsrFcLinkRate	
Syntax	`QsrLinkRate`
Access	Read-only
Description	Current link rate for this port.

Initiator object table

The initiator object table is a list of the iSCSI initiators that have been discovered by the module. There are as many entries in this table as there are iSCSI initiators on the module.

qsrIsInitTable	
Syntax	`SEQUENCE OF QsrIsInitEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Entries in this table contain Information about initiators.

qsrIsInitEntry	
Syntax	`QsrIsInitEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Each entry (row) contains information about a specific iSCSI initiator.

An iSCSI initiator information entry consists of the following sequence of the object:

`qsrIsInitIndex`	`Unsigned32`
`qsrIsInitName`	`SnmpAdminString`
`qsrIsInitAlias`	`SnmpAdminString`
`qsrIsInitAddressType`	`InetAddressType`
`qsrIsInitAddress`	`InetAddress`
`qsrIsInitStatus`	`INTEGER`
`qsrIsInitOsType`	`SnmpAdminString`
`qsrIsInitChapEnabled`	`INTEGER`

qsrIsInitIndex	
Syntax	`Unsigned32`
Access	Not accessible
Description	An arbitrary positive integer denoting each iSCSI initiator discovered by the module.

qsrIsInitName OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Not accessible
Description	iSCSI name of the initiator.

qsrIsInitAlias OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Read-only
Description	Alias for the iSCSI initiator.

qsrIsInitAddressType	
Syntax	`InetAddressType`
Access	Read-only
Description	Type of iSCSI initiator's IP address (IPv4 or IPv6).

qsrIsInitAddress	
Syntax	`InetAddress`
Access	Read-only
Description	IP address of the iSCSI initiator.

qsrIsInitStatus	

Syntax	`Integer:`
	`1 = unknown,`
	`2 = loggedIn,`
	`3 = loggedOut,`
	`4 = recovery`

Access	Read-only
Description	Status of the iSCSI initiator, that is, whether or not it is logged in to the module.

qsrIsInitOsType	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Read-only
Description	The type of the iSCSI initiator's operating system.

qsrIsInitChapEnabled	
Syntax	Integer: `0` = enabled; `2` = disabled
Access	Read-only
Description	A value indicating whether CHAP is enabled or not for this iSCSI initiator.

LUN table

These tables contain information about the logical unit number (LUN) list.

qsrLunTable	
Syntax	`SEQUENCE OF QsrLunEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	A list of the LUNs on the FC targets discovered by the module. There are as many entries in this table as there are FC targets on the module.

qsrLunEntry	
Syntax	`QsrLunEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Each entry (row) contains information about a specific LUN. This table extends `scsiDscLunTable` in `QLOGIC-SCSI-MIB`. The entries in this table show other attributes of the LUN.

The `QsrLunEntry` contains of following sequences of objects.

`qsrLunWwuln`	`PhysAddress`
`qsrLunVendorId`	`SnmpAdminString`
`qsrLunProductId`	`SnmpAdminString`
`qsrLunProdRevLevel`	`SnmpAdminString`
`qsrLunSize`	`Unsigned32`
`qsrLunState`	`INTEGER`

qsrLunVPGroupid	INTEGER
qsrLunVPGroupname	SnmpAdminString

qsrLunWwuln	
Syntax	PhysAddress
Access	Read-only
Description	The worldwide unique LUN name (WWULN) for the LUN.

qsrLunVendorId	
Syntax	SnmpAdminString
Access	Read-only
Description	Vendor ID for the LUN.

qsrLunProductId	
Syntax	SnmpAdminString
Access	Read-only
Description	Product ID for the LUN

qsrLunProdRevLevel	
Syntax	SnmpAdminString
Access	Read-only
Description	Product revision level for the LUN

qsrLunSize OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	Unsigned32
Access	Read-only
Description	Size of the LUN (in megabytes)

qsrLunState	
Syntax	Integer 1 = online, 2 = offline, 3 = reserved
Access	Read-only
Description	State of the LUN (online or offline)

qsrLunVPGroupid	
Syntax	Integer
Access	Read-only
Description	ID of the VP group to which this LUN belongs

qsrLunVPGroupname OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	SnmpAdminString
Access	Read-only
Description	VP group name to which this LUN belongs

VP group table

This table contains a list of virtual port groups (VPGs). There are four entries in this table at any point of time.

qsrVPGroupTable	
Syntax	SEQUENCE OF QsrVPGroupEntry
Access	Not accessible
Description	Table for the VP group

qsrVPGroupEntry OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	QsrVPGroupEntry
Access	Not accessible
Description	Each entry in the VP group table
Index	{ qsrVPGroupIndex } ::= { qsrVPGroupTable 1 }

The QsrVPGroupEntry contains the following sequence of objects:

qsrVPGroupIndex	Unsigned32
qsrVPGroupId	INTEGER
qsrVPGroupName	SnmpAdminString
qsrVPGroupWWNN	VpGroupWwnnAndWwpn
qsrVPGroupWWPN	VpGroupWwnnAndWwpn
qsrVPGroupStatus	INTEGER

qsrVPGroupIndex OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	Unsigned32
Access	Read-only
Description	VP group index.

qsrVPGroupId OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	Integer
Access	Read-only
Description	VP group ID.

qsrVPGroupName	
Syntax	SnmpAdminString

Access	Read-only
Description	VP group name or host group name.

qsrVPGroupWWNN	
Syntax	`VpGroupWwnnAndWwpn`
Access	Read-only
Description	Worldwide port number (WWPN)

qsrVPGroupStatus OBJECT-TYPE	
Syntax	`Integer: 0` = enabled; `1` = disabled
Access	Read-only
Description	Maintain the status of the VP group (enabled/disabled)

Sensor table

The sensor table lists all the sensors on the module. Each table row specifies a single sensor.

qsrSensorTable	
Syntax	`SEQUENCE OF QsrSensorEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	List of all the sensors on the module. The table contains as many entries (rows) as there are sensors.

qsrSensorEntry	
Syntax	`QsrSensorEntry`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Each entry (row) corresponds to a single sensor.

A sensor entry consists of the following sequence of objects:

```
qsrSensorType                   INTEGER
qsrSensorIndex                  Unsigned32
qsrSensorUnits                  INTEGER
qsrSensorValue                  Integer32
qsrUpperThreshold               Integer32
qsrLowerThreshold               Integer32
qsrSensorState                  INTEGER
```

qsrSensorType	
Syntax	`INTEGER` `Temperature = 1`
Access	Not accessible
Description	Type of data being measured by this sensor.

qsrSensorIndex	
Syntax	`Unsigned32`
Access	Not accessible
Description	A positive integer identifying each sensor of a given type.

qsrSensorUnits	
Syntax	`INTEGER` `Celsius = 1`
Access	Read-only
Description	Unit of measurement for the sensor.

qsrSensorValue	
Syntax	`Integer32`
Access	Read-only
Description	Current value of the sensor.

qsrUpperThreshold	
Syntax	`Integer32`
Access	Read-only
Description	Upper-level threshold for this sensor.

qsrLowerThreshold	
Syntax	`Integer32`
Access	Read-only
Description	Lower-level threshold for this sensor.

qsrSensorState	
Syntax	`INTEGER`
Access	Read-only
Description	State of this sensor, indicating the health of the system: `Unknown` = The sensor value/thresholds cannot be determined. `Normal` = The sensor value is within normal operational limits. `Warning` = The sensor value is approaching a threshold. `Critical` = The sensor value has crossed a threshold.

Notifications

The module provides the notification types described in this section.

NOTE: Every notification uses `qsrBladeSlot` as one of the objects. This determines the originator module for the same notification.

System information objects

System information objects provide the system serial number, version numbers (hardware/software/agent), and number of ports (FC/GE).

qsrSerialNumber	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Read-only
Description	System serial number.

qsrHwVersion	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Read-only
Description	System hardware version number.

qsrSwVersion	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Read-only
Description	System software (firmware) version number.

qsrNoOfFcPorts	
Syntax	`Unsigned32`
Access	Read-only
Description	Quantity of FC ports on the system.

qsrNoOfGbEPorts	
Syntax	`Unsigned32`
Access	Read-only
Description	Quantity of gigabit Ethernet ports on the system.

qsrAgentVersion	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Read-only
Description	Version number of the agent software on the system.

Notification objects

This section defines the objects used in notifications.

qsrEventSeverity	
Syntax	`INTEGER`

Access	Accessible for notify
Description	Indicates the severity of the event. The value clear specifies that a condition that caused an earlier trap is no longer present.

qsrEventDescription	
Syntax	`SnmpAdminString`
Access	Accessible for notify
Description	A textual description of the event that occurred.

qsrEventTimeStamp	
Syntax	`DateAndTime`
Access	Accessible for notify
Description	Indicates when the event occurred.

Agent startup notification

The agent startup notification indicates that the agent on the module has started running.

`qsrAgentStartup` uses the `qsrEventTimeStamp` object.

Agent shutdown notification

The agent shutdown notification indicates that the agent on the module is shutting down.

`qsrAgentShutdown` uses the `qsrEventTimeStamp` object.

Network port down notification

The network port down notification indicates that the specified network port is down. The next time the port comes up, this event is sent with the `qsrEventSeverity` object set to `clear`.

`qsrNwPortDown` uses the following objects:

- `qsrNwLinkStatus`
- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrEventSeverity`

Network notifications are sent for the following events:

- Management port: down or up
- iSCSI port: down or up
- Port number (1–4)

FC port down notification

The FC port down notification indicates that the specified FC port is down. The next time the port comes up, this event is sent with the `qsrEventSeverity` object set to `clear`.

`qsrFcPortDown` uses the following objects:

- `qsrFcLinkStatus`
- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrEventSeverity`

FC notifications are sent for the following events:

- Fibre Channel port: down or up
- down or up Port number (1–4)

Target device discovery

The Fibre Channel target device discovery notification indicates that the specified Fibre Channel target is online or offline.

`qsrDscTgtStatusChanged` uses the following objects:

- `qsrBladeSlot`
- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrFcTgtState`
- `qsrEventSeverity`

FC target device discovery notifications are sent for the following event:

- FC Target
  - State: Discovered, went offline, or went online
  - Target WWPN

Target presentation (mapping)

The target presentation notification indicates that the specified target has been presented (mapped) or unpresented (unmapped).

`qsrPresTgtMapped` uses the following objects:

- `qsrBladeSlot`
- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrPresTgtMapped`
- `qsrPresTgtUnmapped`
- `qsrEventSeverity`

Target presentation notifications are sent for the following event:

- Target Presentation
  - State: Presented (mapped) or unpresented (unmapped)
  - Target name

VP group notification

The VP group notification indicates that the specified VP group is enabled or disabled. It also represents change in the name of the VP group.

`qsrVPGroupStatusChanged` uses the following objects:

- `qsrBladeSlot`
- `qsrVPGroupIndex`
- `qsrVPGroupStatus`
- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrEventSeverity`

VP group notifications are sent for the following events:

- Change in name of a VP group
- Enabling and disabling a VP group

Sensor notification

The sensor notification indicates that the state for the specified sensor is not normal. When the sensor returns to the normal state, this event is sent with the `qsrEventSeverity` object set to `clear`.

`qsrSensorNotification` uses the following objects:

- `qsrSensorValue`
- `qsrSensorState`
- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrEventSeverity`

Sensor notifications are sent for the following events:

- Over Temperature; sensor number (1 of 1)
- Temperature returned to normal; sensor number (1 of 1)
  -

Generic notification

The generic notification reports events other than the defined event types. It provides a description object that identifies the event in clear text.

`qsrGenericEvent` uses the following objects:

- `qsrEventTimeStamp`
- `qsrEventSeverity`
- `qsrEventDescription`

Generic notifications are sent for the following events:

- FC port configuration change; port number (1 of 4)
- iSCSI port configuration change; port number (1 of 4)
- iSNS configuration change
- NTP configuration change
- Module configuration change
- Management port configuration change
- Firmware upgrade complete
- Reboot module

F iSCSI and iSCSI/FCoE module log messages

This appendix provides details about messages logged to a file. The message log is persistent because it is maintained across module power cycles and reboots. Information in Table 35 (page 284) is organized as follows:

- The **ID** column specifies the message identification numbers in ascending order.
- The **Log Message** column indicates the message text displayed in the iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module's CLI. Note that:
  - Log messages for the iSCSI driver module are common to both iSCSI ports. Log messages beginning with `#0` denote iSCSI port 1 (GE1) and log messages beginning with `#1` denote iSCSI port 2 (GE2).
  - Log messages for the FC driver module are common to both FC ports. Log messages beginning with `#0` denote FC port 1 (FC1) and log messages beginning with `#1` denote FC port 2 (FC2).
- The **Module Type** column specifies the message reporting module, where:
  - **App** = Application module
  - **FC** = FC driver
  - **iSCSI** = iSCSI driver
  - **System** = System module
  - **TOE** = TCP/IP offload engine module
  - **User** = User module
- The **Msg. Type** column specifies the log message type, where:
  - **Error** = Error log message
  - **Fatal** = Fatal log message
  - **Info** = Informational log message
- The **Description** column provides additional information about the log message.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages

ID	Log message	Module Type	Msg Type	Description
40967	`QLBA_NullDoorbell: driver unloaded, port disabled`	App	Error	NULL doorbell routine for unloaded drivers. When a driver is unloaded, the doorbell routine is redirected to this NULL routine.
40996	`QLBA_ProcessTrb: Processing unsupported ordered tag command`	App	Error	Processing unsupported ordered tag task management command.
41004	`QLBA_ProcessTrb: Processing unsupported head of queue tag command`	App	Error	Processing unsupported head-of-queue task management command.
41058	`QLBA_CreateTargetDeviceObject: Too many devices`	App	Error	Unable to create an object for the target device; exceeded the maximum number of target devices.
41060	`QLBA_CreateTargetNodeObject: Too many devices`	App	Error	Unable to create an object for the target node; exceeded the maximum number of target devices.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

41067	QLBA_CreateLunObject: LunObject memory unavailable	App	Error	Memory unavailable for LUN object.
41077	QLBA_CreateInitiatorObject: Too many initiators	App	Error	Unable to create an object for initiator object; exceeded the maximum number of initiators.
41096	QLBA_DisplayTargetOperationStatus: PCI Error, Status 0x%.2x	App	Error	Process control block status indicates that a peripheral component interface/interconnect (PCI) error occurred during a target operation.
41106	QLBA_DisplayInitiatorOperationStatus: DMA Error, Status 0x%.2x	App	Error	Process control block status indicates that a direct memory access (DMA) error occurred during an initiator operation.
41107	QLBA_DisplayInitiatorOperationStatus: Transport Error, Status 0x%.2x	App	Error	Process control block status indicates that a transport error (protocol) occurred during an initiator operation.
41111	QLBA_DisplayInitiatorOperationStatus: Data Overrun, Status 0x%.2x	App	Error	Process control block status indicates that a data overrun error occurred during an initiator operation.
41234	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Operation failed. Initiator 0x%x, TPB status 0x%x	App	Error	iSCSI login failed between receipt of protocol data unit (PDU) and request for the data segment.
41238	QLKV_ValidateLoginTransitCsgNsgVersion failed (status 0x%x)	App	Error	iSCSI login failed due to unsupported version number in received login PDU.
41257	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Invalid initiator name. Initiator:	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU contains invalid initiator name. The format and character set used to form the initiator name is invalid.
41265	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Target not configured for Portal	App	Error	iSCSI target login was attempted to a portal (iSCSI1 or iSCSI2) on which the target is not presented.
41267	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Target not found. Target name:	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU received for a target with a target name unknown to the module.
41268	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Missing target name	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU received without a target name for a normal session.
41270	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: TSIH is 0 but InitiatorName key/value not provided	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU received without an initiator name key/value.
41272	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: CONN_STATE_IN_LOGIN, Unknown InitTaskTag	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU received with an incorrect initiator task tag for a session which is partially logged in. This would occur if a login PDU other than the initial login PDU used an initiator task tag which was different than the initiator task tag provided in the initial login PDU.
41283	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: TSIH 0x%x out of range	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU was received with a target session identifying handle (TSIH) out of range. This would occur if the iSCSI initiator attempting the login failed to used the TSIH value provided in the Target Login Response PDU (module is target) in subsequent login PDUs.
41284	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Session does not exist, invalid TSIH 0x%x	App	Error	iSCSI login PDU was received with an invalid TSIH value. The TSIH is invalid because there is no session with that TSIH value. This would occur if the iSCSI initiator attempting the login failed to used the TSIH value provided in the target login response PDU (module is target) in subsequent login PDUs.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

41353	`QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Session does not exist, invalid TSIH 0x%x`	App	Error	iSCSI login rejected due to a CHAP authentication error.
41354	`QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Unexpected CHAP key detected`	App	Error	iSCSI login rejected due to a CHAP key error.
41508	`QLBI_SetPortInfo: QLUT_AllocatePortalObject failed (PortType 0x%x, PortId 0x%x)`	App	Error	Failed to allocate an object for Set Port Info IOCTL processing: PortType: 0 = FC, 1 = iSCSIPortId: 0 = FC1 or iSCSI1(GE1), 1 = FC2 or iSCSI2 (GE2)
41626	`QLBI_GetLunInfo: INQUIRY failed, TPB status 0x%x`	App	Error	Inquiry command failed. The Inquiry command was issued by the module as part of its discovery process.
41629	`QLBI_GetLunInfo: INQUIRY failed, TPB status 0x%x`	App	Error	Pass-Through command for Inquiry command for page 83 failed. The Inquiry command was issued by the module as part of its discovery process.
41635	`QLBI_Passthru: Invalid data length %d bytes`	App	Error	Pass-Through command for Read Capacity command failed. The Read Capacity command was issued by the module as part of its discovery process.
41636	`QLBI_GetLunInfo: INQUIRY failed, TPB status 0x%x`	App	Error	Read Capacity command failed. The Read Capacity command was issued by the module as part of its discovery process.
41696	`QLBI_GetLunInfo: INQUIRY failed, TPB status 0x%x`	App	Error	Pass-Through command issued by management application (such as GUI) was aborted.
41700	`QLBI_Passthru: Invalid CDB length %d bytes`	App	Error	Pass-Through command issued by management application (such as GUI) failed due to invalid command descriptor block (CDB) length.
41701	`QLBI_Passthru: Invalid data length %d bytes`	App	Error	Pass-Through command issued by management application (such as GUI) failed due to invalid data length.
41717	`QLBI_Passthru: Invalid data length %d bytes`	App	Error	Pass-Through command issued by management application (such as GUI) was interrupted or timed out.
41750	`QLBI_Ioctl: ERROR: Operation (0x%x) not supported in this mode`	App	Error	IOCTL operation unsupported. Operation code provided in log message.
41768	`QLBI_GetLunList: REPORT LUNS command failed`	App	Error	Report LUNs command failed. The Report LUNs command was issued by the module as part of its discovery process.
41769	`QLBI_GetLunList: REPORT LUNS command failed with CHECK CONDITION, SCSI STATUS 0x%02X`	App	Error	Report LUNs command failed with check condition status. The Report LUNs command was issued by the module as part of its discovery process.
41771	`QLBI_GetLunList: Lun allocation failed for LunId %d`	App	Error	Failed to allocate LUN object; out of resources.
41994	`QLFC_Login: VpIndex (%d) out of range`	App	Error	Login attempted using FC virtual port (VP) index that is out-of-range (range = 0–31). Index reported in log message.
41995	`QLFC_Login: VP Index 0x%x not configured`	App	Error	Login attempted using FC VP index that has not been configured. Operation attempted on an unconfigured VP.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

42002	QLFC_Login: Can't open connection	App	Error	Attempting login but FC connection cannot be opened.
42024	QLFC_Logout: No active path to device. WWPN: %.2X%.2X%.2X%.2X%.2X%.2X%.2X%.2X	App	Error	Attempting logout of device for which there is no active path (WWPN not found).
42027	QLFC_Logout: VP Index 0x%x not configured	App	Error	Logout attempted using FC VP index that has not been configured. Operation attempted on an unconfigured VP.
42068	QLFC_HandleTeb: System Error	App	Error	Event notification; FC processor encountered a system error (unrecoverable firmware error).
42069	QLFC_HandleTeb: Driver Fatal Error	App	Error	Event notification; FC driver encountered a fatal error.
42072	QLFC_HandleTeb: Driver Fatal Error	App	Error	Event notification; FC port logged out.
42242	QLIS_AllocateSessionObject: Out of session resources	App	Error	Failed to allocate object for iSCSI session; out of session resources.
42252	QLIS_EnqueueiScsiPdu: Duplicate PDU, CmdSN %d (0x%x), dropping it	App	Error	Received iSCSI PDU with duplicate command sequence number (CmdSN). Command PDU will be dropped.
42258	QLIS_InstantiateSession: Can't add Initiator to the database	App	Error	Unable to allocate iSCSI initiator object while instantiating session.
42259	QLIS_InstantiateSession: Maximum number (%d) of allowed hosts already logged in	App	Error	iSCSI session login rejected because the maximum number of allowed hosts are already logged in.
42404	QLIS_InstantiateSession: Maximum number (%d) of allowed hosts already logged in	App	Error	Failed to execute iSCSI Command PDU because its CmdSN is out-of-range. Log message contains the incorrect CmdSN, the valid CmdSN range, the first byte of the CDB, and the data length.
42648	QLIS_HandleTeb: Driver Fatal Error	App	Error	Event notification; iSCSI driver encountered a fatal error.
42649	QLIS_HandleTeb: Unload Driver	App	Error	Event notification; an IOCTL request was received to unload the iSCSI driver.
42654	QLIS_HandleTeb: iSNS Connection Failed	App	Error	Event notification; attempt to connect to the iSNS server failed.
43265	QLUT_AllocateTpbExtension: TPB allocation failed	App	Error	Failed to allocate memory for TPB extension.
43267	QLUT_AllocateTpbExtension: Alloc of DSD failed for buffer len %d	App	Error	Failed to allocate data segment descriptor (DSD) (buffer length %d).
43268	QLUT_AllocateTpbExtension: Data buffer allocation failed (length %d)	App	Error	Failed to allocate data buffer (length %d).
53254	System Booting Up.	App	Info	Module is booting up.
53357	QLBA_ProcessTpb: De-compression failed. Disabling compression temporarily	App	Info	Decompression failed. Disabling compression temporarily.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

53584	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: [0x%x] SES_STATE_LOGGED_IN NORMAL	App	Info	iSCSI session full feature login.
53585	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: [0x%x] SES_STATE_LOGGED_IN DISCOVERY	App	Info	iSCSI session discovery login.
53586	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Initiator: %s	App	Info	iSCSI login of Initiator: %s.
53587	QLIS_LoginPduContinue: Target: %s	App	Info	iSCSI login of Target: %s.
54274	QLFC_Login: Origin 0x%x, VP Index 0x%x, Id 0x%x	App	Info	FC login occurred, origin xx (1 = adapter, 2 = target, 3 = initiator), VP (virtual port) xx, ID (loop ID) *xx*.
54275	QLFC_Login: Port ID %.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC login occurred with port ID *xx.xx.xx*.
54276	QLFC_Login: Node Name %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC login occurred with WWNN *xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx*.
54277	QLFC_Login: Port Name %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC login occurred with WWPN *xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx*.
54306	QLFC_Logout: Origin 0x%x, VP Index 0x%x, Id 0x%x	App	Info	QLFC_Logout: Origin 0x%x, VP Index 0x%x, Id 0x%x
54307	QLFC_Logout: Port ID %.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC Logout: Port ID %.2x%.2x%.2x.
54308	QLFC_Logout: Node Name %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC Logout: Node Name *xx xx xx xx xx xx xx xx*.
54309	QLFC_Logout: Port Name %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC Logout: Port Name *xx xx xx xx xx xx xx xx*.
54359	QLFC_Logout: Port Name %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x	App	Info	FC login event notification, VP (virtual port) *xx*.
54683	QLIS_OpenConnectionNotification: Target connection opened (Port %d, DDB %d)	App	Info	iSCSI target connection opened for port %d, data description block (DDB) %d.
54938	QLIS_OpenConnectionNotification: Target connection opened (Port %d, DDB %d)	App	Info	Event notification; iSCSI open connection request.
54939	QLIS_HandleTeb: UTM_EC_CLOSE_CONNECTION or UTM_EC_CONNECTION_CLOSED	App	Info	Event notification; iSCSI close connection request or connection closed.
54940	QLIS_HandleTeb: UTM_EC_CLOSE_CONNECTION or UTM_EC_CONNECTION_CLOSED	App	Info	Event notification; iSCSI connection closed.
54941	QLIS_HandleTeb:iSNS Server Open Connection succeeded	App	Info	Event notification; connection opened with iSNS server.
54943	QLIS_HandleTeb: UTM_EC_ISNS_SCN	App	Info	Event notification; iSNS registered state change notification (RSCN) received.
54945	QLIS_HandleTeb: UTM_EC_ISNS_CLIENT_DISCOVERED	App	Info	Event notification; iSNS client discovered.
69652	#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, invalid SRAM	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor SRAM test failed.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

69653	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, fail reboot`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor failed diagnostic reboot.
69654	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, invalid NVRAM`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor failed NVRAM diagnostic.
69655	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, invalid DRAM`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor failed DRAM diagnostic.
69656	`#%d: qlutm_init: Failed to return diagnostic result to Bridge`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor failed to return diagnostic results.
69941	`#%d: QLUtmProcessResponseQueue: Invalid handle %x EntryType %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	Response queue entry contains an invalid handle.
69951	`#%d: QLSetNvram: QLRebootTimer failed AF %x RS %x Time %d`	iSCSI	Fatal	Set NVRAM reboot timer failed.
69964	`#%d: QLDisable: QLRebootTimer failed AF %x RS %x Time %d`	iSCSI	Fatal	Port disable reboot timer failed.
69966	`#%d: QLEnable: QLRebootTimer failed AF %x RS %x Time %d`	iSCSI	Fatal	Port enable reboot timer failed.
70224	`#%d: QLProcSrblessiSNSResponse: Invalid handle %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSNS response contains an invalid handle.
70400	`#%d: QLInitializeDevice: QLStartAdapter failed`	iSCSI	Fatal	Start iSCSI processor failed.
70417	`#%d: QLInitializeAdapter: QLInitializeFW failed`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor firmware initialization failed.
70432	`#%d: QLDoInterruptServiceRoutine: PortFatal interrupt. PortFatalErrorStatus %08x CSR %08x AS %x AF %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor port fatal error.
70448	`#%d: QLStartAdapter: QLRebootTimer failed AF %x RS %x Time %d`	iSCSI	Fatal	Start iSCSI processor reboot timer failed.
70489	`#%d: QLIsrDecodeMailbox: System Error 8002 MB[1-7] %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor fatal system error.
70501	`#%d: QLProcessResponseQueue: Invalid entry type in response queue %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	Response queue invalid entry type.
70502	`#%d: QLProcessResponseQueue: Invalid handle %x EntryType %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	Response queue invalid handle for specified entry type.
70524	`#%d: QLProcessAen: Invalid event %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	Asynchronous event for unknown event type.
70544	`#%d: QLRebootTimer: Reboot failed!`	iSCSI	Fatal	Reboot timer failed.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

70563	`#%d: QLRebootTimer: Reboot failed!`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI driver missed iSCSI processor heartbeat. iSCSI processor rebooted.
70564	`#%d: QLRebootTimer: Reboot failed!`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor failed to complete operation before timeout.
70609	`#%d: QLRebootTimer: Reboot failed!`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor system error restart.
70610	`#%d: QLProcessSystemError: RebootHba failed`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor reboot failed.
70784	`#%d: QLConfigChip: invalid NVRAM`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI processor NVRAM invalid (checksum error).
70835	`#%d: QLStartFw: MBOX_CMD_SET_FLASH failed %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI controller Set Flash command failed.
70836	`#%d: QLStartFw: Invalid Fw loader state 0x%x`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI controller failed to load firmware.
70837	`#%d: QLStartFw: Load Fw loader timeout`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI controller firmware load operation timed out.
70938	`#%d: ql_adapter_up: Failed to initialize adapter`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI controller failed to initialize.
72351	`#%d: QLProcSrblessiSNSResponse: Invalid handle %x`	iSCSI	Fatal	iSCSI controller reported that an SNS response had an invalid handle.
73990	`#%d: QLUtmIoctlEnable: Initialize FW failed`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor failed firmware initialization.
74056	`#%d: QLRunDiag: MBOX Diag test internal loopback failed %x %x`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor failed the internal loopback test.
74057	`#%d: QLRunDiag: MBOX Diag test external loopback failed %x %x`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor failed the external loopback test.
74068	`#%d: QLUtmReceiveScsiCmd: Invalid ATIO Continuation type %x`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor reported an invalid Accept Target I/O (ATIO) Continuation type *x*.
74069	`#%d: QLUtmProcessResponseQueue: Immediate data addr %08x:%08x in unsupported PduType`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor reported an Immediate data address (*xxxxxxxx:xxxxxxxx*) in an unsupported PDU Type.
74241	`#%d: QLiSNSEnableCallback: iSNS Server TCP Connect failed`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor could not connect with the iSCSI name server (iSNS).
74577	`#%d: QLIsrDecodeMailbox: NVRAM invalid`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor reported that the iSCSI port NVRAM contains invalid data (checksum error).
74580	`#%d: QLIsrDecodeMailbox: AEN %04x, Duplicate IP address detected, MB[1-5] %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor reported a duplicate IP address was detected (address *xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx xxxx*).
74587	`#%d: QLIsrDecodeMailbox: Link down`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor reported a link down condition.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

74656	`#%d: QLReadyTimer: Adapter missed heartbeat for %d seconds. Time left %d`	iSCSI	Error	Driver failed to receive a heartbeat from the iSCSI processor for the specified number of seconds.
74659	`#%d: QLReadyTimer: Adapter missed heartbeat for 0x%x seconds`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor (adapter) failed to provide a heartbeat for *x* seconds.
74660	`#%d: QLReadyTimer: Abort pTpb=%p failed, DrvCount 0x%x`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor failed to complete an abort request.
74661	`#%d: QLTimer: Abort pTpb=%p, Type %x, Timeout 0x%x DrvCount 0x%x, DdbIndex 0x%x`	iSCSI	Error	Driver timed out an iSCSI processor operation and is aborting the operation.
74663	`#%d: QLReadyTimer: MBOX_CMD %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x timed out`	iSCSI	Error	Driver timed out an iSCSI processor mailbox command.
74665	`#%d: QLReadyTimer: QLiSNSReenable failed.`	iSCSI	Error	Driver timed out while attempting to reconnect with the iSNS.
74705	`#%d: QLProcessSystemError: Restart RISC`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor was restarted.
74746	`#%d: QLInitializeFW: MBOX_CMD_INITIALIZE_FIRMWARE failed %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x %04x`	iSCSI	Error	iSCSI processor rejected the firmware initialize command.
74784	`#%d: QLUpdateInitiatorData: No more room in Initiator Database.`	iSCSI	Error	Driver's initiator database is full. The driver is capable of storing 1024 iSCSI initiators in its database. Use the CLI or GUI to remove unwanted/unused iSCSI initiators.
74800	`#%d: QLSetTargetData: No more room in Target Database.`	iSCSI	Error	Driver's target database is full. Use the CLI or GUI to remove unwanted/unused iSCSI targets.
75008	`#%d: ql_process_error: OB_TCP_IOCB_RSP_W returned DdbInx 0x%x pTpb %p`	iSCSI	Error	TCP retry for a frame failed on the connection `ddbIndex`. `Tpb` contains the frame memory address.
86347	`#%d: QLDisable: Restart RISC`	iSCSI	Info	Restart iSCSI processor (RISC).
86349	`#%d: QLEnable: Restart RISC to update EEPROM`	iSCSI	Info	EEPROM updated, restart iSCSI processor (RISC).
86874	`#%d: QLIsrDecodeMailbox: Link up`	iSCSI	Info	Link up reported by iSCSI processor for GE1 or GE 2.
87346	`#%d: QLGetFwStateCallback: link 100Mb FDX`	iSCSI	Info	iSCSI controller reported a link speed/configuration of 100 Mb full-duplex (FDX).
87348	`#%d: QLGetFwStateCallback: link 1000Mb FDX`	iSCSI	Info	iSCSI controller reported a link speed/configuration of 1000 Mb FDX.
87350	`#%d: QLGetFwStateCallback: Invalid link speed 0x%x`	iSCSI	Info	iSCSI controller reported an invalid link speed.
102419	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, port 1 invalid SRAM`	FC	Fatal	FC1 processor SRAM test failed.
102420	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, port 1 POST failed`	FC	Fatal	FC1 processor power-on self-test (POST) failed.
102421	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, port 2 invalid SRAM`	FC	Fatal	FC2 processor SRAM test failed.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

102422	`#%d: qlutm_init: Diagnostic failed, port 2 POST failed`	FC	Fatal	FC2 processor POST failed.
102423	`#%d: qlutm_init: Failed to return diagnostic result to Bridge`	FC	Fatal	FC processor failed to return diagnostic results.
102656	`#%d: QLInitializeAdapter: Reset ISP failed`	FC	Fatal	FC processor failed reset.
102657	`#%d: QLInitializeAdapter: Load RISC code failed`	FC	Fatal	FC processor firmware load failed.
102658	`#%d: QLInitializeAdapter: Load ISP2322 receive sequencer code failed`	FC	Fatal	FC processor receive sequencer code load failed.
102659	`#%d: QLInitializeAdapter: Load ISP2322 transmit sequencer code failed`	FC	Fatal	FC processor transmit sequencer code load failed.
102662	`#%d: QLInitializeAdapter: Verify Checksum command failed (%x)`	FC	Fatal	FC processor firmware checksum failed.
102680	`#%d: QLInitializeFW: FAILED`	FC	Fatal	FC processor firmware initialization failed.
102688	`#%d: QLInterruptServiceRoutine: Risc pause %x with parity error hccr %x, Disable adapter`	FC	Fatal	FC processor paused due to internal parity error.
102689	`#%d: QLInterruptServiceRoutine: Invalid interrupt status: %x`	FC	Fatal	FC processor returned an invalid interrupt status.
102716	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: System error event (%x), MB1=%x, MB2=%x, MB3=%x, MB4=%x, MB5=%x, MB6=%x, MB7=%x`	FC	Fatal	FC processor system error.
102746	`#%d: QLProcessResponseQueue: Invalid handle %x, type %x`	FC	Fatal	Response queue entry contains an invalid handle.
102752	`#%d: QLTimer: Ext Ram parity error exceed limit cnt 0x%x, limit 0x%x, Disabled adapter`	FC	Fatal	FC processor external SRAM parity error count exceeded limit; FC port disabled.
102755	`#%d: QLTimer: Heartbeat failed`	FC	Fatal	FC processor heartbeat failed.
102800	`#%d: QLRestartRisc: restart RISC`	FC	Fatal	FC processor being restarted.`
106583	`#%d: QLUtmReceiveIo: Path invalid/FW No resource count %x`	FC	Error	FC processor received a SCSI command for an unknown target path or has run out of resources to execute additional commands.
106589	`#%d: QLIoctlEnable: Adapter disabled`	FC	Error	FC processor was disabled by an IOCTL request to the driver.
106590	`#%d: QLIoctlEnable: Initialize FW error`	FC	Error	FC processor firmware failed initialization. The request to initialize was received by the driver in an IOCTL request.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

106592	`#%d: QLIoctlRunDiag: Diagnostic loopback command failed %x % %x %x`	FC	Error	FC processor failed the external loopback test.
106593	`#%d: QLIoctlDisable: Re-initialize adapter failed`	FC	Error	FC processor failed to re-initialize in response to an IOCTL disable request.
106803	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: Link down (%x)`	FC	Error	FC processor reported a link down condition.
106813	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: Unexpected async event (%x), MB1=%x, MB2=%x, MB3=%x, MB4=%x, MB5=%x, MB6=%x, MB7=%x`	FC	Error	FC processor reported an unexpected asynchronous event. The mailbox registers provide status, event code, and data related to the event.
106847	`#%d: QLProcessResponseQueue: Invalid EntryStatus %x, type %x`	FC	Error	FC controller reported an invalid Entry Status %x, type %x.
106851	`#%d: QLTimer: Heartbeat failed`	FC	Error	FC controller failed to provide a heartbeat.
106853	`#%d: QLTimer: Link error count (0x%x) exceeded, link down`	FC	Error	Driver has determined that the FC link is unreliable and unusable due to the number of errors encountered. The link has been taken down.
106912	`#%d: QLReserveLoopId: out of loop Ids`	FC	Error	FC processor was unable to obtain the number of loop IDs required. This failure occurs only when the FC processor is running multi-ID firmware.
106928	`#%d: QLMarkDeviceOffline: Device Id: %x marked offline, cLinkDownTimeout = %x, cPortDownRetryCount=%x`	FC	Error	Driver was unable to re-establish connection to the target within the timeout and retry counts, and is therefore marking it *offline*.
106948	`#%d: QLSnsGetAllNext: Name server login FAILED %x`	FC	Error	FC processor is unable to log into the FC fabric name server.
107029	`#%d: QLUpdateDeviceData: out of slots in host database`	FC	Error	Driver's host (initiator) database is full.
107030	`#%d: QLUpdateDeviceData: out of slots in target database`	FC	Error	Driver's target database is full.
107041	`#%d: QLUpdateDeviceDatabase 0x%x: GET_ID failed %x`	FC	Error	Driver's host (initiator) database is full. Maximum host database is 64.
107056	#%d: QLUpdateDeviceDatabase 0x%x: out of `slots in host database`	FC	Error	Drivers host (initiator) database is full.
107078	`#%d: QLUpdatePort 0x%x: out of slots in host database`	FC	Error	Driver was unable to re-establish connection to the target within the timeout and retry counts, and is therefore marking it *offline*.
107984	`#%d: QLWriteFlashDword: Write fails at addr 0x%x data 0x%x`	FC	Error	FC controller failed a Flash write (address x data x).
108032	`#%d: QLGetVpDatabase: MBOX_CMD_GET_VP_DATABASE for VP %d fatal error`	FC	Error	FC controller failed the Get VP Database command (for virtual port `%d`).
108033	`#%d: QLGetVpDatabase: MBOX_CMD_GET_VP_DATABASE for VP %d failed %x`	FC	Error	FC controller failed the Get VP Database command (for virtual port `%d`) with status *x*.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

108049	`#%d: QLVerifyMenloFw: EXECUTE_COMMAND_IOCB failed MB0 %x MB1 %x`	FC	Error	FC controller reported failure status for an Execute IOCB (input/output control block) command.
108050	`#%d: QLVerifyMenloFw: EXECUTE_COMMAND_IOCB fatal error`	FC	Error	FC controller reported a fatal error while processing an Execute IOCB command.
108064	`#%d: QLGetFwState: Get Firmware State failed 0-3 %x %x %x %x`	FC	Error	FC controller reported failure status for a Get Firmware State command.
118882	`#%d: QLIoctlDisable: Reset adapter`	FC	Info	Request to reset the FC processor (adapter) received from IOCTL interface.
119088	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: LIP occurred (%x): mailbox1 = %x`	FC	Info	FC loop initialization process (LIP) occurred. The LIP type is reported, as is the contents of the FC processor's mailbox 1 register.
119089	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: LIP reset occurred (%x): mailbox1 = %x`	FC	Info	FC LIP reset occurred. The LIP reset type is reported, as is the contents of the FC processor's mailbox 1 register.
119090	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: Link up (%x) mailbox1 = %x`	FC	Info	FC link up occurred. Event status is reported, as is the contents of the FC processor's mailbox 1 register.
119092	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: Link mode up (%x): RunTimeMode=%x`	FC	Info	FC link up occurred. Event status is reported, as is the RunTimeMode (0 = loop, 1 = point-to-point).
119093	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: RSCN update (%x) rscnInfo: %x`	FC	Info	An RSCN was received. Event status is reported, as is the RSCN information.
119097	`#%d: QLIsrEventHandler: Port update (%x) mb1-3 %x %x %x`	FC	Info	FC port update. Event status is reported, as is the contents of the FC processor's mailbox 1, 2, and 3 registers.
139265	`QBRPC_Initialize: Entered`	User	Error	RPC (remote procedure call) server initialization entry point.
139266	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetBridge Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get System API memory allocation failed.
139267	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetBridgeAdv Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get System Advanced API memory allocation failed.
139268	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetMgmt Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get Management API memory allocation failed.
139269	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetIscsi Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get iSCSI API memory allocation failed.
139270	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetIscsiAdv Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get iSCSI advanced API memory allocation failed.
139271	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetIsns Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get iSNS API memory allocation failed.
139272	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetFcIntfc Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get FC Interface API memory allocation failed.
139273	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetFcAdv Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Get FC Advanced API memory allocation failed.
139280	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetFcSfp Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get FC SFP API.
139281	`QBRPC_Initialize:GetLog Mem Allocation error`	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get Log API.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

139282	QBRPC_Initialize:GetStats Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get Statistics API.
139283	QBRPC_Initialize:InitListMem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get Initiator List API.
139284	QBRPC_Initialize:TargetList Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get Target List API.
139285	QBRPC_Initialize:LunList MemAllocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get LUN List API.
139286	QBRPC_Initialize:PresTarget Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get Presented Targets List API.
139287	QBRPC_Initialize:LunMask Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Get LUN Mask API.
139288	QBRPC_Initialize:Init Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Initiator API.
139289	QBRPC_Initialize:TgtDevice Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Target Device API.
139296	QBRPC_Initialize:FcTgt Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for FC Target API.
139297	QBRPC_Initialize:BridgeStatus Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for System Status API.
139298	QBRPC_Initialize:Diag Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Diagnostic API.
139299	QBRPC_Initialize:DiagLog Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Diagnostic Log API.
139300	QBRPC_Initialize:FruImage Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for FRU Image API.
139301	QBRPC_Initialize:OemMfg Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for OEM Manufacturing API.
139302	QBRPC_Initialize:Status Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for Status API.
139303	QBRPC_Initialize:TcpIpStats Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for TCP/IP Statistics API.
139304	QBRPC_Initialize:NtpStats Mem Allocation error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for NTP Status API.
139305	QBRPC_Initialize:LunList MemAlloc error	User	Error	Failed memory allocation for LUN List API.
139315	QBRPC_FreeResources:Entered	User	Error	RPC free resources entry point.
139553	checkDuplicateIp: Detected Error %08x %08x%04x	User	Error	Detected duplicate IP address for management port.
151842	FW Upgrade performed: new version is: %d.%d.%d.%d	User	Info	A firmware upgrade was performed, the new version is: *d.d.d.d.*
151843	REBOOT/SHUTDOWN Command from user. Code=%d	User	Info	User issued a REBOOT or SHUTDOWN command.
151889	#%d: qapisetfcinterfaceparams_1_svc: FC port configuration changed	User	Info	FC port configuration has changed.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

151890	#%d: qapisetiscsiinterfaceparams_1_svc: iSCSI port configuration changed	User	Info	iSCSI port configuration has changed.
151891	#%d: qapisetisns_1_svc:iSNS configuration changed	User	Info	iSNS configuration has changed.
151892	qapisetntpparams_1_svc: NTP configuration changed	User	Info	NTP configuration has changed.
151893	#%d: qapisetvlanparams_1_svc: VLAN configuration changed	User	Info	VLAN configuration has changed.
151894	qapisetlunmask_1_svc: Lunmask added for LUN %d	User	Info	LUN mask was added for LUN %d.
151895	qapisetlunmask_1_svc: Lunmask removed for LUN %d	User	Info	LUN mask was removed for LUN %d.
151896	qapisetmgmintfcparams_1_svc:Management port configuration changed	User	Info	Management port configuration has changed.
151897	qapisetbridgebasicinfo_1_svc:Bridge configuration changed	User	Info	Module configuration has changed.
151908	GE%d: Port status changed by user to ENABLED.	User	Info	GE port %d was enabled user.
151909	GE%d: Port status changed by user to DISABLED.	User	Info	GE port %d was disabled by user.
151910	FC%d: Port status changed by user to ENABLED.	User	Info	FC port %d was enabled by user.
151911	FC%d: Port status changed by user to DISABLED.	User	Info	FC port %d was disabled by user.
151912	qapimaptargetdevice_1_svc: Target WWPN: %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x mapped to iSCSI portal %d.	User	Info	Target at WWPN: *xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx* has been mapped to iSCSI portal %d.
151913	qapimaptargetdevice_1_svc: Target WWPN: %.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x%.2x unmapped from iSCSI portal %d.	User	Info	Target at WWPN: *xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx* has been unmapped from iSCSI portal %d.
152082	qapiaddmodifyinitiator_1_svc : Initiator Configuration Changed	User	Info	Initiators configuration has changed.
152083	qapiremoveinitiator_1_svc : Initiator Removed	User	Info	Initiator has been removed.
152129	sysTempMon: Left PCM Installed	User	Info	Left power and cooling module (PCM) is or has been installed.
152130	sysTempMon: Left PCM Un-installed	User	Info	Left PCM is or has been uninstalled.
152131	sysTempMon: Right PCM Installed	User	Info	Right PCM is or has been installed.
152132	sysTempMon: Right PCM Un-installed	User	Info	Right PCM is or has been uninstalled.

Table 35 iSCSI or iSCSI/FCoE module log messages *(continued)*

152133	`sysTempMon: Power for Left PCM Plugged-in`	User	Info	Left PCM is connected AC power.
152134	`sysTempMon: Power for Left PCM Un-plugged`	User	Info	Left PCM is not connected to AC power (unplugged).
152135	`sysTempMon: Power for Right PCM Plugged-in`	User	Info	Right PCM is connected AC power.
152136	`sysTempMon: Power for Right PCM Un-plugged`	User	Info	Right PCM is not connected to AC power (unplugged).
152137	`sysTempMon: Slot 1 (R1) PCM Fan%d faulty`	User	Info	Left PCM (#1) is reporting a faulty fan.
152138	`sysTempMon: Slot 2 (R2) PCM Fan%d faulty`	User	Info	Left PCM (#1) is reporting a healthy fan.
152139	`sysTempMon: Slot 1 (R1) PCM Fan%d healthy`	User	Info	Right PCM (#2) is reporting a faulty fan.
152140	`sysTempMon: Slot 2 (R2) PCM Fan%d healthy`	User	Info	Right PCM (#2) is reporting a healthy fan.
152141	`sysTempMon: Over Temperature Front: %dC Rear: %dC CPU1: %dC CPU2: %dC`	User	Info	Module has detected an over temperature, Front: `%dC` Rear: `%dC` CPU1: `%dC` CPU2: `%dC`.
152142	`sysTempMon: Setting the fan speed to high`	User	Info	Fan(s) speed has been set to high.
152143	`sysTempMon: Setting the fan speed to normal`	User	Info	Fan(s) speed has been set to normal.
152144	`sysTempMon: Temperature back to safe value. Front: %dC Rear: %dC CPU1: %dC CPU2: %dC`	User	Info	Module temperature has returned to normal operating range, Front: `%dC` Rear: `%dC` CPU1: `%dC` CPU2: `%dC`.
152145	`sysTempMon: Critical Temperature, Shutting Down Front: %dC Rear: %dC CPU1: %dC CPU2: %dC`	User	Info	Module has reached a critical temperature ad is shutting down, Front: `%dC` Rear: `%dC` CPU1: `%dC` CPU2: `%dC`.
200721	`QL3022:ql3xxx_probe: Adapter eth#%d, Invalid NVRAM parameters`	TOE	Fatal	A GE port (`eth#%d`) has invalid NVRAM parameters.
233473	`"memory monitor: Detected Uncorrectable Ecc %08lx system is rebooting in 5 secs\n"`	System	Fatal	Uncorrectable memory error detected at address provided in log message.
233474	`"Failed to register interrupt handler!\n"`	System	Fatal	Attempt to register the interrupt handler failed.
233475	`"%s class_simple_create failed\n"`	System	Fatal	Failed `class_simple_create` system call from memory monitor initialization routine.
237572	`"Failed to kill sys killer %d\n"`	System	Error	Failed to kill system task.
237573	`Temperature over high threshold %d`	System	Error	Module temperature has exceeded the high temperature threshold.
249862	`Temperature is back to normal range %d`	System	Info	Module temperature has returned to the normal operating range.

Glossary

This glossary defines terms used in this guide or related to this product and is not a comprehensive glossary of computer terms.

Symbols and numbers

3U A unit of measurement representing three "U" spaces. "U" spacing is used to designate panel or enclosure heights. Three "U" spaces is equivalent to 5.25 inches (133 mm).
See also rack-mounting unit.

µm A symbol for micrometer; one millionth of a meter. For example, 50 µm is equivalent to 0.000050 m.

A

active member of a virtual disk family A simulated disk drive created by the controllers as storage for one or more hosts. An active member of a virtual disk family is accessible by one or more hosts for normal storage. An active virtual disk member and its snapshot, if one exists, constitute a virtual disk family. An active member of a virtual disk family is the only necessary member of a virtual disk family.
See also virtual disk , virtual disk copy, virtual disk family .

adapter *See* controller.

AL_PA Arbitrated loop physical address. A 1-byte value the arbitrated loop topology uses to identify the loop ports. This value becomes the last byte of the address identifier for each public port on the loop.

allocation policy Storage system rules that govern how virtual disks are created. Allocate Completely and Allocate on Demand are the two rules used in creating virtual disks.

- Allocate Completely—The space a virtual disk requires on the physical disks is reserved, even if the virtual disk is not currently using the space.
- Allocate on Demand—The space a virtual disk requires on the physical disks is not reserved until needed.

ALUA Asymmetric logical unit access. Operating systems that support asymmetric logical unit access work with the EVA's active/active functionality to enable any virtual disk to be accessed through either of the array's two controllers.

ambient temperature The air temperature in the area where a system is installed. Also called intake temperature or room temperature.

ANSI American National Standards Institute. A non-governmental organization that develops standards (such as SCSI I/O interface standards and Fibre Channel interface standards) used voluntarily by many manufacturers within the United States.

arbitrated loop A Fibre Channel topology that links multiple ports (up to 126) together on a single shared simplex media. Transmissions can only occur between a single pair of nodes at any given time. Arbitration is the scheme that determines which node has control of the loop at any given moment.

arbitrated loop physical address *See* AL_PA.

arbitrated loop topology *See* arbitrated loop.

array A synonym of storage array, storage system, and virtual array. A group of disks in one or more disk enclosures combined with controller software that presents disk storage capacity as one or more virtual disks.

array controller *See* controller.

array controller failover The process that takes place when one controller assumes the workload of a failed companion controller.

array-based management A management structure in which HP P6000 Command View is installed on the management module within the EVA controller enclosure.

asynchronous Events scheduled as the result of a signal requesting the event or that which is without any specified time relation.

B

backplane An electronic printed circuit board that distributes data, control, power, and other signals among components within an enclosure.

bad block A data block that contains a physical defect.

bad block replacement A replacement routine that substitutes defect-free disk blocks for those found to have defects. This process takes place in the controller and is transparent to the host.

bail lock The part of the power supply AC receptacle that engages the AC power cord connector to ensure that the cord cannot be accidentally disconnected.

battery A rechargeable unit mounted within a controller enclosure that supplies backup power to the cache module in case of primary power shortage.

baud The maximum rate of signal state changes per second on a communication circuit. If each signal state change corresponds to a code bit, then the baud rate and the bit rate are the same. It is also possible for signal state changes to correspond to more than one code bit so the baud rate may be lower than the code bit rate.

bay The physical location of a component, such as a drive, I/O module, or power supply in a disk enclosure. Each bay is numbered to define its location.

bidirectional An array that contains both source and destination virtual disks. A bidirectional configuration allows multidirectional I/O flow among several arrays.

block Also called a sector. The smallest collection of consecutive bytes addressable on a disk drive. In integrated storage elements, a block contains 512 bytes of data, error codes, flags, and the block address header.

blower *See* fan.

C

cabinet An alternate term used for a rack.

cable assembly A fiber optic cable that has connectors installed on one or both ends. General use of these cable assemblies includes the interconnection of multimode fiber optic cable assemblies with either LC or SC type connectors.

- When there is a connector on only one end of the cable, the cable assembly is referred to as a pigtail.
- When there is a connector on each end of the cable, the cable assembly is referred to as a jumper.

CAC Corrective action code. An HP P6000 Command View graphical user interface (GUI) display component that defines the action required to correct a problem.
See also read caching, mirrored caching, write caching.

cache High-speed memory that sets aside data as an intermediate data buffer between a host and the storage media. The purpose of cache is to improve performance.

cache battery *See* battery.

carrier A drive-enclosure-compatible assembly containing a disk drive or other storage devices.

client An intelligent device that requests the services from other intelligent devices. In the context of HP P6000 Command View, a client is a computer used to access the software remotely using a supported browser.

clone A full copy of a volume usable by an application.

communication LUN *See* console LUN.

condition report A three-element code generated by the EMU in the form where e.t. is the element type (a hexadecimal number), en. Is the element number (a decimal number), and ec is the condition code (a decimal number).

console LUN A SCSI-3 virtual object that makes a controller pair accessible by the host before any virtual disks are created. *Also* called a communication LUN.

console LUN ID The ID that can be assigned when a host operating system requires a unique ID. The console LUN ID is assigned by the user, usually when the storage system is initialized.

container Virtual disk space that is preallocated for later use as a snapclone, snapshot, or mirrorclone.

controller A hardware/software device that manages communications host systems and other devices. Controllers typically differ by the type of interface to the host and provide functions beyond those the devices support.

controller enclosure A unit that holds one or more controllers, power supplies, fans, transceivers, and connectors.

controller event A significant occurrence involving any storage system hardware or software component reported by the controller to HP P6000 Command View.

controller pair Two connected controller modules that control a disk array.

corrective action code *See* CAC.

CRITICAL Condition A drive enclosure EMU condition that occurs when one or more drive enclosure elements have failed or are operating outside of their specifications. The failure of the element makes continued normal operation of at least some elements in the enclosure impossible. Some enclosure elements may be able to continue normal operations. Only an UNRECOVERABLE condition has precedence. This condition has precedence over NONCRITICAL errors and an INFORMATION condition.

CRU Customer replaceable unit. A storage system element that a user can replace without using special tools or techniques, or special training.

customer replaceable unit *See* CRU.

D

data entry mode The state in which controller information can be displayed or controller configuration data can be entered. On the Enterprise Storage System, the controller mode is active when the LCD on the HSV Controller OCP is Flashing.

data replication group failover An operation that reverses data replication direction so that the destination becomes the source and the source becomes the destination. Failovers can be planned or unplanned and can occur between DR groups or managed sets (which are sets of DR groups).

default disk group The disk group created when the system is initialized. The disk group must contain a minimum of eight disks. The maximum is the number of installed disks.

Detailed Fault View An HSV Controller OCP display that permits a user to view detailed information about a controller fault.

device channel A channel used to connect storage devices to a host I/O bus adapter or intelligent controller.

device ports The controller pair device ports connected to the storage system's physical disk drive array through the Fibre Channel drive enclosure. *Also* called a device-side port.

device-side ports *See* device ports.

DIMM Dual Inline Memory Module. A small circuit board holding memory chips.

dirty data The write-back cached data that has not been written to storage media even though the host operation processing the data has completed.

disk drive A carrier-mounted storage device supporting random access to fixed size blocks of data.

disk drive blank A carrier that replaces a disk drive to control airflow within a drive enclosure whenever there is less than a full complement of storage devices.

disk drive enclosure A unit that holds storage system devices such as disk drives, power supplies, fans, I/O modules, and transceivers.

disk failure protection A method by which a controller pair reserves drive capacity to take over the functionality of a failed or failing physical disk. For each disk group, the controllers reserve space in the physical disk pool equivalent to the selected number of physical disk drives.

disk group A named group of disks selected from all the available disks in a disk array. One or more virtual disks can be created from a disk group. Also refers to the physical disk locations associated with a parity group.

disk migration state A physical disk drive operating state. A physical disk drive can be in a stable or migration state:

- Stable—The state in which the physical disk drive has no failure nor is a failure predicted.
- Migration—The state in which the disk drive is failing, or failure is predicted to be imminent. Data is then moved off the disk onto other disk drives in the same disk group.

disk replacement delay The time that elapses during a drive failure and when the controller starts searching for spare disk space. Drive replacement seldom starts immediately in case the "failure" was a glitch or temporary condition.

drive enclosure event A significant operational occurrence involving a hardware or software component in the drive enclosure. The drive enclosure EMU reports these events to the controller for processing.

dual power supply configuration *See* redundant power configuration.

dual-loop A configuration where each drive is connected to a pair of controllers through two loops. These two Fibre Channel loops constitute a loop pair.

dynamic capacity expansion A storage system feature that provides the ability to increase the size of an existing virtual disk. Before using this feature, you must ensure that your operating system supports capacity expansion of a virtual disk (or LUN).

E

EIA Electronic Industries Alliance. A standards organization specializing in the electrical and functional characteristics of interface equipment.

EIP Event Information Packet. The event information packet is an HSV element hexadecimal character display that defines how an event was detected. Also called the EIP type.

electromagnetic interference *See* EMI.

electrostatic discharge *See* ESD.

element In a disk enclosure, a device such as a power supply, disk, fan/blower, or I/O module. The object can be controllled, interrogated, or described by the enclosure services process.

EMI Electromagnetic Interference. The impairment of a signal by an electromagnetic disturbance.

EMU Environmental Monitoring Unit. An element which monitors the status of an enclosure, including the power, air temperature, and blower status. The EMU detects problems and displays and reports these conditions to a user and the controller. In some cases, the EMU implements corrective action.

enclosure A unit used to hold various storage system devices such as disk drives, controllers, power supplies, I/O modules, or fans/blowers.

enclosure address bus An Enterprise storage system bus that interconnects and identifies controller enclosures and disk drive enclosures by their physical location. Enclosures within a reporting group can exchange environmental data. This bus uses enclosure ID expansion cables to assign enclosure numbers to each enclosure. Communications over this bus do not involve the Fibre Channel drive enclosure bus and are, therefore, classified as out-of-band communications.

enclosure number (En) One of the vertical rack-mounting positions where the enclosure is located. The positions are numbered sequentially in decimal numbers starting from the bottom of the cabinet. Each disk enclosure has its own enclosure number. A controller pair shares an enclosure number. If the system has an expansion rack, the enclosures in the expansion rack are numbered from 15 to 24, starting at the bottom.

enclosure services Those services that establish the mechanical environment, electrical environment, and external indicators and controls for the proper operation and maintenance of devices with an enclosure as described in the SES SCSI-3 Enclosure Services Command Set (SES), Rev 8b, American National Standard for Information Services.

Enclosure Services Interface *See* ESI.

Enclosure Services Processor *See* ESP.

Enterprise Virtual Array The Enterprise Virtual Array is a product that consists of one or more storage systems. Each storage system consists of a pair of HSV controllers and the disk drives they manage. A storage system within the Enterprise Virtual Array can be formally referred to as an Enterprise storage system, or generically referred to as the storage system.

environmental monitoring unit *See* EMU.

error code The portion of an EMU condition report that defines a problem.

ESD Electrostatic Discharge. The emission of a potentially harmful static electric voltage as a result of improper grounding.

ESI Enclosure Services Interface. The SCSI-3 engineering services interface implementation developed for HP products. A bus that connects the EMU to the disk drives.

ESP Enclosure Services Processor. An EMU that implements an enclosure's services process.

event Any significant change in the state of the Enterprise storage system hardware or software component reported by the controller to HP P6000 Command View.

Event Information Packet *See* EIP.

Event Number *See* Evt No..

Evt No. Event Number. A sequential number assigned to each Software Code Identification (SWCID) event. It is a decimal number in the range 0-255.

exabyte A unit of storage capacity that is the equivalent of 2^{60} bytes or 1,152,921,504,606,846,976 bytes. One exabyte is equivalent to 1,024 petabytes.

HP P6000 Command View GUI The graphical user interface (GUI) through which a user can control and monitor a storage system. HP P6000 Command View can be installed on more than one storage management server in a fabric. Each installation is a management agent. The client for the agent is a standard browser.

F

fabric A network of Fibre Channel switches or hubs and other devices.

fabric port A port which is capable of supporting an attached arbitrated loop. This port on a loop will have the AL_PA hexadecimal address 00 (loop ID 7E), giving the fabric the highest priority access to the loop. A loop port is the gateway to the fabric for the node ports on a loop.

failover *See* array controller failover or data replication group failover.

failsafe A safe state that devices automatically enter after a malfunction. Failsafe DR groups stop accepting host input and stop logging write history if a group member becomes unavailable.

fan The variable speed airflow device that cools an enclosure or component by forcing ambient air into an enclosure or component and forcing heated air out the other side.

FATA Fibre Attached Technology Adapted disk drive.

Fault Management Code *See* FMC.

FC HBA Fibre Channel Host Bus Adapter.
See also FCA.

FCA Fibre Channel Adapter. An adapter used to connect the host server to the fabric. *Also* called a Host Bus Adapter (HBA) or a Fibre Channel Host Bus Adapter (FC HBA).

FCC Federal Communications Commission. The federal agency responsible for establishing standards and approving electronic devices within the United States.

FCoE Fibre Channel over Ethernet.

FCP Fibre Channel Protocol.

fiber The optical media used to implement Fibre Channel.

fiber optic cable A transmission medium designed to transmit digital signals in the form of pulses of light. Fiber optic cable is noted for its properties of electrical isolation and resistance to electrostatic contamination.

fiber optics The technology where light is transmitted through glass or plastic (optical) threads (fibers) for data communication or signaling purposes.

fibre The international spelling that refers to the Fibre Channel standards for optical media.

Fibre Channel A data transfer architecture designed for mass storage devices and other peripheral devices that require high bandwidth.

Fibre Channel adapter *See* FCA.

Fibre Channel drive enclosure An enclosure that provides twelve-port central interconnect for Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loops following the ANSI Fibre Channel disk enclosure standard.

Fibre Channel Loop Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop. The American National Standards Institute's (ANSI) document that specifies arbitrated loop topology operation.

field replaceable unit *See* FRU.

flush The act of writing dirty data from cache to a storage media.

FMC Fault Management Code. The HP P6000 Command View display of the Enterprise Storage System error condition information.

form factor A storage industry dimensional standard for 3.5inch (89 mm) and 5.25inch (133 mm) high storage devices. Device heights are specified as low-profile (1inch or 25.4 mm), half-height (1.6inch or 41 mm), and full-height (5.25inch or 133 mm).

FPGA Field Programmable Gate Array. A programmable device with an internal array of logic blocks surrounded by a ring of programmable I/O blocks connected together through a programmable interconnect.

frequency The number of cycles that occur in one second expressed in Hertz (Hz). Thus, 1 Hz is equivalent to one cycle per second.

FRU Field Replaceable Unit. An assembly component that is designed to be replaced on site, without the system having to be returned to the manufacturer for repair.

G

general purpose server A server that runs customer applications, such as file and print services.

Giga (G) The notation to represent 10^9 or 1 billion (1,000,000,000).

gigabaud An encoded bit transmission rate of one billion (10^9) bits per second.

gray-color The convention of applying an alloy or gray color to a CRU tab, lever, or handle to identify the unit as warm-swappable.

H

HBA Host Bus Adapter.
See also FCA.

host A computer that runs user applications and uses (or can potentially use) one or more virtual disks created and presented by the controller pair.

Host bus adapter *See* FCA.

host computer *See* host.

host link indicator The HSV Controller display that indicates the status of the storage system Fibre Channel links.

host port A connection point to one or more hosts through a Fibre Channel fabric. A host is a computer that runs user applications and that uses (or can potentially use) one or more of the virtual disks that are created and presented by the controller pair.

host-side ports *See* host port.

hot-pluggable The ability to add and remove elements or devices to a system or appliance while the appliance is running and have the operating system automatically recognize the change.

hub A communications infrastructure device to which nodes on a multi-point bus or loop are physically connected. It is used to improve the manageability of physical cables.

I

I/O module Input/Output module. The enclosure element that is the Fibre Channel drive enclosure interface to the host or controller.

IDX A 2-digit decimal number portion of the HSV controller termination code display that defines one of 48 locations in the Termination Code array that contains information about a specific event.

in-band communication The communication that uses the same communications channel as the operational data.

INFORMATION condition A drive enclosure EMU condition report that may require action. This condition is for information only and does not indicate the failure of an element. All condition reports have precedence over an INFORMATION condition.

initialization A configuration step that binds the controllers together and establishes preliminary data structures on the array. Initialization also sets up the first disk group, called the default disk group, and makes the array ready for use.

Input/Output module *See* I/O module.

intake temperature *See* ambient temperature.

interface A set of protocols used between components such as cables, connectors, and signal levels.

J

JBOD Just a Bunch of Disks.

K

K Kilo. A scientific notation denoting a multiplier of one thousand (1,000).

KB Kilobyte. A unit of measurement defining either storage or memory capacity.

1. For storage, a KB is a capacity of 1,000 (10^3) bytes of data.
2. For memory, a KB is a capacity of 1,024 (2^{10}) bytes of data.

L

LAN Local area network. A group of computers and associated devices that share a common communications line and typically share the resources of a single processor or server within a small geographic area.

laser A device that amplifies light waves and concentrates them in a narrow, very intense beam.

Last Fault View An HSV Controller display defining the last reported fault condition.

Last Termination Error Array *See* LTEA.

LED Light Emitting Diode. A semiconductor diode used in an electronic display that emits light when a voltage is applied to it. A visual indicator.

License Key A WWN-encoded sequence that is obtained from the license key fulfillment website.

light emitting diode *See* LED.

link

1. A connection of ports on fibre channel devices.
2. A full duplex connection to a fabric or a simplex connection of loop devices.

logon A procedure whereby a user or network connection is identified as being an authorized network user or participant.

loop *See* arbitrated loop.

loop ID Seven-bit values numbered contiguous from 0 to 126 decimal that represent the 127 valid AL_PA values on a loop (not all 256 hexadecimal values are allowed as AL_PA values per Fibre Channel).

loop pair A Fibre Channel attachment a controller and physical disk drives. Physical disk drives connect to controllers through paired Fibre Channel arbitrated loops. There are two loop pairs, designated loop pair 1 and loop pair 2. Each loop pair consists of two loops (called loop A and loop B) that operate independently during normal operation, but provide mutual backup in case one loop fails.

LTEA Last termination event array. A two-digit HSV Controller number that identifies a specific event that terminated an operation. The valid numbers range from 00 to 47.

LUN Logical unit number. A LUN results from mapping a SCSI logical unit number, port ID, and LDEV ID to a RAID group. The size of the LUN is determined by the emulation mode of the LDEV and the number of LDEVs associated with the LUN. For example, a LUN associated with two OPEN-3 LDEVs has a size of 4,693 MB.

M

management agent The HP P6000 Command View software that controls and monitors the Enterprise storage system. The software can exist on more than one management server in a fabric. Each installation is a management agent.

management agent event A significant occurrence to or within the management agent software, or an initialized storage cell controlled or monitored by the management agent.

management server A server on which management software is installed, such as HP P6000 Command View and HP Replication Solutions Manager.

MB Megabtye. A term defining either:

- A data transfer rate.
- A measure of either storage or memory capacity of 1,048,576 (2^{20}) bytes.

See also MB.

Mb Megabit. A term defining a data transfer rate.
See also Mbps.

MBps Megabytes per second. A measure of bandwidth or data transfers occurring at a rate of 1,000,000 (10^6) bytes per second.

Mbps Megabits per second. A measure of bandwidth or data transfers occurring at a rate of 1,000,000 (10^6) bits per second.

mean time between failures *See* MTBF.

Mega A notation denoting a multiplier of 1 million (1,000,000).

metadata The data in the first sectors of a disk drive that the system uses to identify virtual disk members.

micro meter *See* µm.

mirrored caching A process in which half of each controller's write cache mirrors the companion controller's write cache. The total memory available for cached write data is reduced by half, but the level of protection is greater.

mirroring The act of creating an exact copy or image of data.

MTBF Mean time between failures. The average time from start of use to first failure in a large population of identical systems, components, or devices.

multi-mode fiber A fiber optic cable with a diameter large enough (50 microns or more) to allow multiple streams of light to travel different paths from the transmitter to the receiver. This transmission mode enables bidirectional transmissions.

N

near-online storage On-site storage of data on media that takes slightly longer to access than online storage kept on high-speed disk drives.

Network Storage Controller *See* NSC.

node port A device port that can operate on the arbitrated loop topology.

non-OFC (Open Fibre Control) A laser transceiver whose lower-intensity output does not require special open Fibre Channel mechanisms for eye protection. The Enterprise storage system transceivers are non-OFC compatible.

NONCRITICAL Condition A drive enclosure EMU condition report that occurs when one or more elements inside the enclosure have failed or are operating outside of their specifications. The failure does not affect continued normal operation of the enclosure. All devices in the enclosure continue to operate according to their specifications. The ability of the devices to operate correctly may be reduced if additional failures occur. UNRECOVERABLE and CRITICAL errors have precedence over this condition. This condition has precedence over INFORMATION condition. Early correction can prevent the loss of data.

NSC Network Storage Controller. The HSV Controllers used by the Enterprise storage system.

NVRAM Nonvolatile Random Access Memory. Memory whose contents are not lost when a system is turned Off or if there is a power failure. This is achieved through the use of UPS batteries or implementation technology such as flash memory. NVRAM is commonly used to store important configuration parameters.

O

occupancy alarm level A percentage of the total disk group capacity in blocks. When the number of blocks in the disk group that contain user data reaches this level, an event code is generated. The alarm level is specified by the user.

OCP Operator Control Panel. The element that displays the controller's status using indicators and an LCD. Information selection and data entry is controlled by the OCP push-button.

online storage An allotment of storage space that is available for immediate use, such as a peripheral device that is turned on and connected to a server.

operator control panel *See* OCP.

P

param The portion of the HSV controller termination code display that defines:

- The two-character parameter identifier that is a decimal number in the 0 through 31 range.
- The eight-character parameter code that is a hexadecimal number.

See also IDX, TC.

password A security interlock where the purpose is to allow:

- A management agent to control only certain storage systems
- Only certain management agents to control a storage system

PDM Power distribution module. A thermal circuit breaker-equipped power strip that distributes power from a PDU to Enterprise Storage System elements.

PDU Power distribution unit. The rack device that distributes conditioned AC or DC power within a rack.

petabyte A unit of storage capacity that is the equivalent of 2^{50}, 1,125,899,906,842,624 bytes or 1,024 terabytes.

physical disk A disk drive mounted in a drive enclosure that communicates with a controller pair through the device-side Fibre Channel loops. A physical disk is hardware with embedded software, as opposed to a virtual disk, which is constructed by the controllers. Only the controllers can communicate directly with the physical disks.

The physical disks, in aggregate, are called the array and constitute the storage pool from which the controllers create virtual disks.

physical disk array *See* array.

port A physical connection that allows data to pass between a host and a disk array.

port-colored Pertaining to the application of the color of port or red wine to a CRU tab, lever, or handle to identify the unit as hot-pluggable.

port_name A 64-bit unique identifier assigned to each Fibre Channel port. The port_name is communicated during the login and port discovery processes.

power distribution module *See* PDM.

power distribution unit *See* PDU.

power supply An element that develops DC voltages for operating the storage system elements from either an AC or DC source.

preferred address An AL_PA which a node port attempts to acquire during loop initialization.

preferred path A preference for which controller of the controller pair manages the virtual disk. This preference is set by the user when creating the virtual disk. A host can change the preferred path of a virtual disk at any time. The primary purpose of preferring a path is load balancing.

protocol The conventions or rules for the format and timing of messages sent and received.

pushbutton A button that is engaged or disengaged when it is pressed.

Q

quiesce The act of rendering bus activity inactive or dormant. For example, "quiesce the SCSI bus operations during a device warm-swap."

R

rack A floorstanding structure primarily designed for, and capable of, holding and supporting storage system equipment. All racks provide for the mounting of panels per Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) *Standard RS310C*.

rack-mounting unit A measurement for rack heights based upon a repeating hole pattern. It is expressed as "U" spacing or panel heights. Repeating hole patterns are spaced every 44.45 mm (1.75 inches) and based on EIA's *Standard RS310C*. For example, a 3U unit is 133.35 mm (5.25 inches)high, and a 4U unit is 177.79 mm (7.0 inches) high.

read ahead caching A cache management method used to decrease the subsystem response time to a read request by allowing the controller to satisfy the request from the cache memory rather than from the disk drives.

read caching A cache method used to decrease subsystem response times to a read request by allowing the controller to satisfy the request from the cache memory rather than from the disk drives. Reading data from cache memory is faster than reading data from a disk. The read cache is specified as either On or Off for each virtual disk. The default state is on.

reconstruction The process of regenerating the contents of a failed member data. The reconstruction process writes the data to a spare set disk and incorporates the spare set disk into the mirrorset, striped mirrorset or RAID set from which the failed member came.

redundancy

1. Element Redundancy—The degree to which logical or physical elements are protected by having another element that can take over in case of failure. For example, each loop of a device-side loop pair normally works independently but can take over for the other in case of failure.
2. Data Redundancy—The level to which user data is protected. Redundancy is directly proportional to cost in terms of storage usage; the greater the level of data protection, the more storage space is required.

redundant power configuration

A capability of the Enterprise storage system racks and enclosures to allow continuous system operation by preventing single points of power failure.

- For a rack, two AC power sources and two power conditioning units distribute primary and redundant AC power to enclosure power supplies.
- For a controller or drive enclosure, two power supplies ensure that the DC power is available even when there is a failure of one supply, one AC source, or one power conditioning unit. Implementing the redundant power configuration provides protection against the loss or corruption of data.

reporting group

An Enterprise Storage System controller pair and the associated disk drive enclosures. The Enterprise Storage System controller assigns a unique decimal reporting group number to each EMU on its loops. Each EMU collects disk drive environmental information from its own sub-enclosure and broadcasts the data over the enclosure address bus to all members of the reporting group. Information from enclosures in other reporting groups is ignored.

RoHS

Reduction of Hazardous Substances.

room temperature

See ambient temperature.

RPO

Recovery point objective. The maximum age of the data you want the ability to restore in the event of a disaster. For example, if your RPO is six hours, you want to be able to restore systems back to the state they were in as of no longer than six hours ago. To achieve this objective, you need to make backups or other data copies at least every six hours.

S

SCSI

1. Small Computer System Interface. An American National Standards Institute (ANSI) interface which defines the physical and electrical parameters of a parallel I/O bus used to connect computers and a maximum of 16 bus elements.
2. The communication protocol used a controller pair and the hosts. Specifically, the protocol is Fibre Channel drive enclosure or SCSI on Fibre Channel. SCSI is the higher command-level protocol and Fibre Channel is the low-level transmission protocol. The controllers have full support for SCSI-2; additionally, they support some elements of SCSI-3.

SCSI-3

The ANSI standard that defines the operation and function of Fibre Channel systems.

SCSI-3 Enclosure Services

See SES.

selective presentation

The process whereby a controller presents a virtual disk only to the host computer which is authorized access.

serial transmission

A method of transmission where each bit of information is sent sequentially on a single channel, not simultaneously on all channels as occurs in parallel transmission.

SES

SCSI-3 Enclosures Services. Those services that establish the mechanical environment, electrical environment, and external indicators and controls for the proper operation and maintenance of devices within an enclosure.

SFP

Small form-factor pluggable transceiver.

solid state disk (SSD)

A high-performance storage device that contains no moving parts. SSD components include either DRAM or EEPROM memory boards, a memory bus board, a CPU, and a battery card.

SSN

Storage System Name. An HP P6000 Command View-assigned, unique 20-character name that identifies a specific storage system.

storage carrier

See carrier.

storage pool

The aggregated blocks of available storage in the total physical disk array.

storage system

See array.

Storage System Name

See SSN.

switch

An electronic component that switches network traffic from one connection to another.

T

TB Terabyte. A term defining either:

- A data transfer rate.
- A measure of either storage or memory capacity of 1,099,5111,627,776 (2^{40}) bytes.

See also TBps.

TBps Terabytes per second. A data transfer rate of 1,000,000,000,000 (10^{12}) bytes per second.

TC Termination Code. An Enterprise Storage System controller 8-character hexadecimal display that defines a problem causing controller operations to halt.

Termination Code *See* TC.

termination event The occurrences that cause a storage system to cease operation.

terminator Interconnected elements that form the ends of the transmission lines in the enclosure address bus.

topology An interconnection scheme that allows multiple Fibre Channel ports to communicate. Point-to-point and arbitrated loop are examples of Fibre Channel topologies.

transceiver The device that converts electrical signals to optical signals where the fiber cables connect to the Fibre Channel elements such as hubs, controllers, or adapters.

U

UID Unit identification.

uninitialized system A state in which the storage system is not ready for use.

UNRECOVERABLE condition A drive enclosure EMU condition report that occurs when one or more elements inside the enclosure have failed and have disabled the enclosure. The enclosure may be incapable of recovering or bypassing the failure and will require repairs to correct the condition. This is the highest level condition and has precedence over all other errors and requires immediate corrective action.

unwritten cached data *Also* known as unflushed data.
See also dirty data.

UPS Uninterruptible Power Supply. A battery-operated power supply guaranteed to provide power to an electrical device in the event of an unexpected interruption to the primary power supply. Uninterruptible power supplies are usually rated by the amount of voltage supplied and the length of time the voltage is supplied.

UUID Unique Universal Identifier. A unique 128-bit identifier for each component of an array. UUIDs are internal system values that users cannot modify.

V

virtual disk Variable disk capacity that is defined and managed by the array controller and presented to hosts as a disk. Can be called Vdisk in the user interface.

virtual disk copy A clone or exact replica of another virtual disk at a particular point in time. Only an active virtual disk can be copied. A copy immediately becomes the active disk of its own virtual disk family.
See also active member of a virtual disk family.

virtual disk family A virtual disk and its snapshot, if a snapshot exists, constitute a family. The original virtual disk is called the active disk. When you first create a virtual disk family, the only member is the active disk.
See also active member of a virtual disk family, virtual disk copy.

Vraid The level to which user data is protected. Redundancy is directly proportional to cost in terms of storage usage; the greater the level of data protection, the more storage space is required.

Vraid0 Optimized for I/O speed and efficient use of physical disk space, but provides no data redundancy.

Vraid1 Optimized for data redundancy and I/O speed, but uses the most physical disk space.

Vraid5 Provides a balance of data redundancy, I/O speed, and efficient use of physical disk space.

Vraid6 Offers the features of Vraid5 while providing more protection for an additional drive failure, but uses additional physical disk space.

W

World Wide Name *See* WWN.

write back caching A controller process that notifies the host that the write operation is complete when the data is written to the cache. This occurs before transferring the data to the disk. Write back caching improves response time since the write operation completes as soon as the data reaches the cache. As soon as possible after caching the data, the controller then writes the data to the disk drives.

write caching A process when the host sends a write request to the controller, and the controller places the data in the controller cache module. As soon as possible, the controller transfers the data to the physical disk drives.

WWN World Wide Name. A unique identifier assigned to a Fibre Channel device.

Index

D

E

F

G

H

T

U